



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

1 Chronicles

Version 65

[en]

Copyrights and Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2022-08-18

Version: 65

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2022-08-18

Version: 40

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text

Date: 2022-08-18

Version: 39

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2022-08-03

Version: 2.1.28

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2022-08-03

Version: 0.28

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2022-08-18

Version: 32

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2022-08-18

Version: 35

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links

Date: 2022-08-18

Version: 17

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	12
1 Chronicles	12
Introduction to 1 Chronicles	13
1 Chronicles 1	15
1 Chronicles 2	70
1 Chronicles 3	126
1 Chronicles 4	151
1 Chronicles 5	195
1 Chronicles 6	222
1 Chronicles 7	304
1 Chronicles 8	345
1 Chronicles 9	386
1 Chronicles 10	431
1 Chronicles 11	446
1 Chronicles 12	494
1 Chronicles 13	538
1 Chronicles 14	556
1 Chronicles 15	574
1 Chronicles 16	604
1 Chronicles 17	648
1 Chronicles 18	684
1 Chronicles 19	702
1 Chronicles 20	722
1 Chronicles 21	734
1 Chronicles 22	767
1 Chronicles 23	790
1 Chronicles 24	823
1 Chronicles 25	858
1 Chronicles 26	890
1 Chronicles 27	925
1 Chronicles 28	963
1 Chronicles 29	996
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	1030
Abstract Nouns	1031
Active or Passive	1033
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1036
Background Information	1039
Biblical Distance	1042
Biblical Money	1045
Direct and Indirect Quotations	1047
Doublet	1049
Ellipsis	1051
Euphemism	1054
Exclamations	1056
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	1058
First, Second or Third Person	1060
Forms of You	1062
Hebrew Months	1063

How to Translate Names	1066
Hyperbole	1070
Idiom	1074
Introduction of a New Event	1076
Merism	1079
Metaphor	1081
Metonymy	1087
Nominal Adjectives	1089
Numbers	1091
Ordinal Numbers	1094
Parallelism	1097
Personification	1100
Poetry	1102
Quotes within Quotes	1105
Reflexive Pronouns	1108
Rhetorical Question	1111
Simile	1114
Symbolic Action	1117
Symbolic Language	1119
Synecdoche	1121
Textual Variants	1123
Translate Unknowns	1125
Verse Bridges	1128
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	1130
Aaron	1131
Abiathar	1132
Abijah	1133
Abimelech	1134
Abner	1135
Abraham, Abram	1136
Absalom	1137
Adam	1138
Adonijah	1139
adversary, enemy	1140
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	1141
afflict, affliction, distress	1142
Ahaz	1143
Ahaziah	1144
Ahijah	1145
altar	1146
Amaziah	1147
amen, truly	1148
Ammon, Ammonite	1149
Amnon	1150
Amorite	1151
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	1152
appoint, appointed	1154
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of	1155
Asa	1156
Asaph	1157
Asher	1158
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community	1159

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	1160
Athaliah	1161
atonement lid	1162
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian	1163
Balaam	1164
barley	1165
Bashan	1166
Beersheba	1167
Benaiah	1168
Benjamin, Benjaminite	1169
Beth Shemesh	1170
Bethel	1171
Bethuel	1172
Bilhah	1173
bless, blessed, blessing	1174
blood	1176
Boaz	1178
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee	1179
bread	1180
bronze	1181
brother	1182
burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	1184
burnt offering, offering by fire	1185
call, call out	1186
camel	1188
Canaan, Canaanite	1189
captive, captivate, captivity, catch	1190
cedar, cedarwood	1191
cherub	1192
chief, leader	1193
clean, wash	1194
column, pillar	1196
comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted	1197
command, commandment	1198
confirm, confirmation, legal	1199
consecrate, consecrated, consecration	1200
consume, devour	1201
court, courtyard	1202
covenant	1203
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love	1205
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	1206
curtain	1207
cut off, cut down	1208
David	1209
declare, proclaim, announce	1211
decree, decreed	1212
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue	1213
devour	1214
die, dead, deadly, death	1215
dominion	1217
drink offering	1218
earth, land	1219

Edom, Edomite, Idumea	1220
Egypt, Egyptian	1221
Elam, Elamites	1222
elder, older, old	1223
Eleazar	1224
Elijah	1225
Enoch	1226
ephod	1227
Ephraim, Ephraimite	1228
Esau	1229
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever	1230
Ethiopia, Ethiopian	1232
evil, wicked, unpleasant	1233
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	1235
exile, exiled	1236
Ezekiel	1237
face, facial	1238
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy	1240
family, household	1242
famine	1243
fast, fasting	1244
fear, afraid, frighten	1245
feast, feasting	1246
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	1247
firstborn	1248
flock, herd	1249
forsake, forsaken, leave	1250
found, founder, foundation	1251
frankincense	1252
freewill offering	1253
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	1254
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	1255
generation	1256
Geshur, Geshurites	1257
Gibeon, Gibeonite	1258
Gilead, Gileadite	1259
Girgashites	1260
glory, glorious, glorify	1261
God	1263
gold, golden	1265
Goliath	1266
good, right, pleasant, better, best	1267
grain offering	1269
Greece, Grecian	1270
Ham	1271
Hananiah	1272
hand	1273
Haran	1275
harp, harpist	1276
head	1277
heart	1278
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1279

Hilkiah	1281
Hittite	1282
Hivite	1283
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1284
hope, hoped	1286
horse, warhorse, horseback	1287
horseman	1288
Hoshea	1289
house, household	1290
inherit, inheritance, heir	1291
iniquity	1293
Isaiah	1294
Israel, Israelites	1295
Issachar	1297
Jacob, Israel	1298
Japheth	1299
Jebus, Jebusite	1300
Jehoiada	1301
Jehoiakim	1302
Jehoshaphat	1303
Jehu	1304
Jeremiah	1305
Jericho	1306
Jeroboam	1307
Jerusalem	1308
Jesse	1310
Joab	1311
Joel	1312
Jordan River, Jordan	1313
Joseph (OT)	1314
Joshua	1315
Josiah	1316
Jotham	1317
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad	1318
Judah	1320
Judea, Judah	1321
judge, judgment	1322
Kedar	1324
Kerethites	1325
king, kingship	1326
kingdom	1327
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1329
Korah, Korahite	1331
lamb, Lamb of God	1332
Lamech	1334
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God	1335
Levi, Levite	1337
life, live, living, alive	1338
lord, Lord, master, sir	1340
lots, casting lots	1342
Maacah	1343
majesty	1344

Mede, Medes, Media	1345
messenger	1346
Micah	1347
Michael	1348
might, mighty, mighty works	1349
miracle, wonder, sign	1350
Miriam	1352
Moab, Moabite	1353
Moses	1354
mourn, mourner, weeping	1355
Naaman	1356
Nahor	1357
name	1358
Naphtali	1359
Nathan	1360
nation	1361
Nebuchadnezzar	1363
new moon	1364
Noah	1365
Obadiah	1366
oil	1367
Omri	1368
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	1369
oversee, overseer, keeper	1370
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1371
people, people group	1372
Philistines	1374
Phinehas	1375
power, powerful, powerfully	1376
praise, praised, praiseworthy	1378
pray, prayer	1379
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1380
priest, priesthood	1382
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials,	1384
promise, promised	1385
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1386
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1388
prostrate, bow down, worship	1389
Rabbah	1390
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,	1391
redeem, redeemer, redemption	1393
Rehoboam	1394
reign, rule	1395
remnant	1396
rest, rested, restless	1397
restore, restoration	1398
return, turn back	1399
Rimmon	1400
robe, robed	1401
Sabbath	1402
sackcloth	1404
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1405

Samuel	1407
sanctuary	1408
Saul (OT)	1409
scribe	1410
seed, semen	1411
seek, search, look for	1412
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women	1413
set apart	1416
Seth	1417
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	1418
Shem	1420
silver	1421
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1422
Solomon	1424
son	1425
spirit, wind, breath	1427
statute	1429
storehouse	1430
strength, strengthen, strong	1431
stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel	1433
sword, swordsmen	1434
tabernacle	1435
Tarshish	1436
teach, teaching, untaught	1437
temple, house, house of God	1438
Terah	1440
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence	1441
thresh	1443
threshold, doorway	1444
throne, enthroned	1445
to minister, ministry	1446
transgress, transgression	1447
tremble, stagger, shake	1448
trespass	1449
trumpet, trumpeters	1450
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1451
Tyre, Tyrians	1452
understand, understanding, thinking	1453
Ur	1454
Uriah	1455
walk, walked	1456
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware	1457
wheat	1458
wine, wineskin, new wine	1459
wise men, advisor	1460
work, works, deeds	1461
Yahweh	1462
Zadok	1464
Zechariah (OT)	1465
Zedekiah	1466
Zephaniah	1467
Zerubbabel	1468

Zion, Mount Zion	1469
Contributors	1470
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	1470
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	1476
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	1477
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	1478
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	1478
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors	1479



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

1 Chronicles

Introduction to 1 Chronicles

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of 1 Chronicles

Lists of descendants (1:1-9:44)

- From Adam to Jacob (1:1-2:2)
- Jacob's descendants (2:2-9:44)

Saul dies and David begins to reign (10:1-29:30)

- Saul dies (10:1-14)
- David captures Jerusalem (11:1-9)
- David's mighty men (11:10-12:40)
- David prospers (13:1-22:1)
- David prepares for Solomon to build the temple (22:2-29:30)

What are the Books of 1 and 2 Chronicles about?

The Book of 1 Chronicles retells the line of descendants from Adam to Saul. It then gives the history of Israel during the time of David. The Book of 2 Chronicles gives the history of Israel beginning with Solomon. It ends when the Babylonian army attacks Judah and takes some of the people to Babylon. The writers of Chronicles probably wrote these books for the Jews who returned from exile in Babylon. The purpose was to teach the people to avoid disobeying God as their ancestors did.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators can use the traditional title "1 Chronicles" or "First Chronicles." You may also call this book "The Events of the Kings of Judah and Israel, Book 1" or "The First Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah and Israel."

Who wrote 1 and 2 Chronicles?

The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles are unknown. They mention that they used other books when writing Chronicles. The names of these other books are "The Chronicles of Samuel the Seer," "The Chronicles of Nathan the Seer," "The Chronicles of Gad the Seer," "The History of Nathan the Prophet," "The Chronicles of Shemaiah the Prophet and Iddo," "The Story of the Prophet Iddo" and "The books of the kings of Judah and Israel."

Why are there multiple books that give the history of the kings of Israel?

The books of Chronicles and the books of Kings tell much of the same history, but they are not exactly the same. The writers of Chronicles wrote mostly about the kings of Judah who were faithful to Yahweh and his covenant. The writers wanted the Jews to think carefully about David and Solomon. They also wanted the Jews to think about how Jehoshaphat, Hezekiah, and Josiah caused their ancestors to repent and to worship Yahweh. The writers wanted to encourage the Jews and their leaders to obey the law and to honor God's covenant with them. (See: [covenant](#))

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Why did God punish the people of Israel?

God punished the people of Israel because they disobeyed him and worshiped false gods. God punished them with disease, disasters, and defeat in battle. However, God forgave them and caused them to prosper again if they repented and obeyed him. The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles continually reminded the readers that God punished his people because they disobeyed. They wanted the readers to understand that they must obey God.

Why are alliances with foreign countries seen as evil in these books?

Yahweh led and protected the nation of Israel. The people of Israel should have trusted him instead of relying on other nations to protect them.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What is the meaning of the term “Israel”?

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. Jacob was the son of Isaac. God changed Jacob’s name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah.

What does it mean to “seek God”?

The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles often wrote about “seeking God.” To “seek God” means to make an effort to please and honor God. It can also mean to ask God for help. It does not imply that God is hidden. (See: [Metaphor](#))

What does the phrase “to this day” mean?

The writers used the phrase “to this day” to refer to the time when they were writing. The translator should be aware that “to this day” refers to a time already passed. The translator might decide to say, “to this day, at the time when this is being written,” or, “to this day, at the time of writing.” This Hebrew phrase occurs in 1 Chronicles 4:41, 43; 5:26; 13:11; 20:26; 21:10; 35:25.

1 Chronicles 1

1 Chronicles 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter gives the genealogies of Abraham, Esau and the early kings of Edom.

1 Chronicles 1:1

Adam ... Seth ... Enosh

These are all names of men. Each man was the father or ancestor of the next man in the list. If your language has a specific way to mark this kind of list, you can use it here. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Seth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Seth was Adam's son](#)

ULT

¹ Adam, [Seth](#), Enosh,

UST

¹ The first person God created was Adam. [Seth was Adam's son](#). Enosh was Seth's son.

1 Chronicles 1:2

Kenan ... Mahalalel ... Jared

These are all names of men. Each man was the father or ancestor of the next man in the list. If your language has a specific way to mark this kind of list, you can use it here. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

² Kenan, Mahalalel, Jared,

UST

² Kenan was Enosh's son. Mahalalel was Kenan's son. Jared was Mahalalel's son.

1 Chronicles 1:3

Enoch ... Methuselah ... Lamech

These are all names of men. Each man was the father or ancestor of the next man in the list. If your language has a specific way to mark this kind of list, you can use it here. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Enoch](#)
- [Lamech](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Enoch was Jared's son](#)
- [Lamech was Methuselah's son](#)

ULT

³ [Enoch](#), Methuselah, [Lamech](#),

UST

³ [Enoch was Jared's son](#). Methuselah was Enoch's son. [Lamech was Methuselah's son](#).

1 Chronicles 1:4

The sons of Noah were Shem, Ham, and Japheth

Some versions, including the ULT and UST, include “The sons of” in order to make it clear that Shem, Ham, and Japheth were brothers to each other and sons of Noah. Otherwise, the reader would assume that each person represented one generation farther away from Noah, their ancestor.

Noah

Noah was Lamech’s son. Alternate translation: “Lamech’s son Noah”

Translation Words - ULT

- Noah
- Shem
- Ham
- and Japheth

Translation Words - UST

- Noah was Lamech’s son...were Noah’s sons
- Shem
- Ham
- and Japheth

ULT

⁴ Noah, Shem, Ham, and Japheth. ^[1]

UST

⁴ Noah was Lamech’s son. Shem, Ham, and Japheth were Noah’s sons.

1 Chronicles 1:5

Gomer ... Magog ... Madai ... Javan ... Tubal ... Meshek ... Tiras

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Japheth](#)
- [and Madai](#)
- [and Javan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Japheth's](#)
- [sons were](#)
- [Madai](#)
- [Javan](#)

ULT

⁵ [The sons of Japheth](#): Gomer, and Magog, [and Madai, and Javan](#), and Tubal, and Meshek, and Tiras.

UST

⁵ [Japheth's sons were](#) Gomer, Magog, [Madai, Javan](#), Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras.

1 Chronicles 1:6

Ashkenaz ... Riphath ... Togarmah

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)

ULT

⁶ [And the sons of](#) Gomer: Ashkenaz, and Diphath, and Togarmah. ^[2]

UST

⁶ Gomer's [sons were](#) Ashkenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah.

1 Chronicles 1:7

Elishah ... Tarshish

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kittites ... Rodanites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rodanites

This name is sometimes spelled "Dodanites." (See: [Textual Variants](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [Javan](#)
- [and Tarshish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Javan's](#)
- [sons were](#)
- [Tarshish](#)

ULT

⁷ [And the sons of Javan](#): Elishah, and [Tarshish](#), the Kittites, and the Rodanites.

UST

⁷ [Javan's sons were](#) Elishah, [Tarshish](#), Kittim, and Rodanim.

1 Chronicles 1:8

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- Ham
- Cush

Translation Words - UST

- Ham's
- sons were
- Cush

ULT

⁸ The sons of Ham: Cush and Egypt, Put and Canaan.

UST

⁸ Ham's sons were Cush, Egypt, Put, and Canaan.

1 Chronicles 1:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- And the sons of
- Cush

Translation Words - UST

- Cush's
- sons were
- sons were

ULT

⁹ And the sons of Cush: Seba, and Havilah, and Sabta, and Raamah, and Sabteka. And the sons of Raamah: Sheba and Dedan.

UST

⁹ Cush's sons were Seba, Havilah, Sabta, Raamah, and Sabteka. Raamah's sons were Sheba and Dedan.

1 Chronicles 1:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a mighty one

Translation Words - UST

- a mighty warrior

ULT

¹⁰ And Cush fathered Nimrod; he began to be a mighty one on the earth.

UST

¹⁰ Another son of Cush was Nimrod. When he grew up, he became a mighty warrior on the earth.

1 Chronicles 1:11

Ludites ... Anamites ... Lehabites ... Naphtuhites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹¹ And Egypt fathered the Ludites, and the Anamites, and the Lehabites, and the Naphtuhites,

UST

¹¹ Egypt was the ancestor of the Lud, the Anam, the Lehab, the Naphtuh,

1 Chronicles 1:12

Pathrusites ... Kasluhites ... Philistines ... Caphtorites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

from whom the Philistines came

Alternate translation: "the ancestors of the Philistines"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)
- [came](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The Philistines](#)
- [descended](#)

ULT

¹² and the Pathrusites, and the Kasluhites (from whom [the Philistines came](#)), and the Caphtorites.

UST

¹² the Pathrus, the Kasluh, and the Caphtor people groups. [The Philistines descended](#) from the Kasluh people group.

1 Chronicles 1:13

Canaan ... Sidon

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hittites

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [first](#)

ULT

¹³ And Canaan fathered Sidon, [his firstborn](#), and Heth,

UST

¹³ Canaan's [first](#) son was Sidon. He was also the ancestor of the Hittites,

1 Chronicles 1:14

Jebusites ... Amorites ... Girgashites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Jebusites](#)
- [the Amorites](#)
- [the Girgashites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Jebusites](#)
- [the Amorites](#)
- [the Girgashites](#)

ULT

¹⁴ and [the Jebusites](#), and [the Amorites](#),
and [the Girgashites](#),

UST

¹⁴ [the Jebusites](#), [the Amorites](#), [the Girgashites](#),

1 Chronicles 1:15

Hivites ... Arkites ... Sinites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Hivites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Hivites](#)

ULT

¹⁵ and [the Hivites](#), and the Arkites, and the Sinites,

UST

¹⁵ [the Hivites](#), the Arkites, the Sinites,

1 Chronicles 1:16

Arvadites ... Zemarites ... Hamathites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁶ and the Arvadites, and the Zemarites,
and the Hamathites.

UST

¹⁶ the Arvadites, the Zemarites, and the
Hamathites.

1 Chronicles 1:17

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Shem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Shem's](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

¹⁷ [The sons of Shem](#): Elam, and Ashur, and Arpachshad, and Lud, and Aram, and Uz, and Hul, and Gether, and Meshek.

UST

¹⁷ [Shem's sons were](#) Elam, Ashur, Arphaxad, Lud, and Aram. Aram's sons were Uz, Hul, Gether, and Meshech.

1 Chronicles 1:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

18 And Arpachshad fathered Shelah,
and Shelah fathered Eber.

UST

18 Arphachshad was the father of
Shelah. Shelah was the father of Eber.

1 Chronicles 1:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- The name of
- his brother

Translation Words - UST

- sons
- The name of...was
- Peleg's brother

ULT

¹⁹ And to Eber were born two sons. The name of the one, Peleg, for in his days the earth was divided. And the name of his brother, Joktan.

UST

¹⁹ Eber had two sons. The name of the first was Peleg, which sounds like the word that means 'divided' because during the time that he lived, God had divided the people on the earth into various language groups. Peleg's brother was Joktan.

1 Chronicles 1:20

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁰ And Joktan fathered Almodad, and Sheleph, and Hazarmaveth, and Jerah,

UST

²⁰ Joktan was the ancestor of Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah,

1 Chronicles 1:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²¹ and Hadoram, and Uzal, and Diklah,

UST

²¹ Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah,

1 Chronicles 1:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²² and Obal, and Abimael, and Sheba,

UST

²² Obal, Abimael, Sheba,

1 Chronicles 1:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- the descendants of

ULT

²³ and Ophir, and Havilah, and Jobab; all these, the sons of Joktan.

UST

²³ Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab. All these were the descendants of Joktan.

1 Chronicles 1:24

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Shem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [These are the descendants of Shem, in order from him to Abraham](#)

ULT

²⁴ [Shem](#), Arpachshad, Shelah,

UST

²⁴ [These are the descendants of Shem, in order from him to Abraham:](#)
Arphaxad, Shelah,

1 Chronicles 1:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁵ Eber, Peleg, Reu,

UST

²⁵ Eber, Peleg, Reu,

1 Chronicles 1:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Nahor
- Terah

Translation Words - UST

- Nahor
- Terah

ULT

²⁶ Serug, Nahor, Terah,

UST

²⁶ Serug, Nahor, Terah,

1 Chronicles 1:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham](#)

ULT

²⁷ Abram, that is, [Abraham](#).

UST

²⁷ and Abram, whose name God later changed to [Abraham](#).

1 Chronicles 1:28

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Abraham](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham's](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

²⁸ [The sons of Abraham](#): Isaac and Ishmael.

UST

²⁸ [Abraham's sons were](#) Isaac and Ishmael.

1 Chronicles 1:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- their generations
- the firstborn of
- then Kedar

Translation Words - UST

- their family lines
- The firstborn son of...was
- then his other sons Kedar

ULT

²⁹ These, **their generations**: the **firstborn of** Ishmael, Nebaioth; **then Kedar**, and Adbeel, and Mibsam,

UST

²⁹ These were **their family lines**: **The firstborn son of** Ishmael, the son of Abraham's slave wife Hagar, **was** Nebaioth, **then his other sons Kedar**, Adbeel, Mibsam,

1 Chronicles 1:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³⁰ Mishma, and Dumah, Massa, Hadad,
and Tema,

UST

³⁰ Mishma, Dumah, Massa, Hadad,
Tema,

1 Chronicles 1:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- sons

ULT

³¹ Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah. These were the sons of Ishmael.

UST

³¹ Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah. Ishmael had twelve sons.

1 Chronicles 1:32

General Information:

All of the names here except for Keturah are names of men. Keturah is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [And the sons of](#)
- [Abraham](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [After Abraham's wife Sarah died, he took a...with Abraham](#)
- [sons](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

³² [And the sons of](#) Keturah, the concubine of [Abraham](#): she bore Zimran, and Jokshan, and Medan, and Midian, and Ishbak, and Shuah. [And the sons of](#) Jokshan: Sheba and Dedan.

UST

³² [After Abraham's wife Sarah died, he took a](#) concubine named Keturah. Her [sons with Abraham](#) were Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah. Jokshan's [sons were](#) Sheba and Dedan.

1 Chronicles 1:33

General Information:

All of the names here except for Keturah are names of men. Keturah is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [and Hanok](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [descendants](#)
- [Hanok](#)

ULT

³³ [And the sons of](#) Midian: Ephah, and Epher, [and Hanok](#), and Abida, and Eldaah; all these, [the sons of](#) Keturah.

UST

³³ Midian's [sons were](#) Ephah, Epher, [Hanok](#), Abida, and Eldaah. All these were Keturah's [descendants](#).

1 Chronicles 1:34

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- The sons of
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham
- and...sons were
- Esau

ULT

³⁴ And Abraham fathered Isaac. The sons of Isaac: Esau and Israel.

UST

³⁴ Abraham had his son Isaac by his wife Sarah, and Isaac's sons were Esau and Jacob, whose name God later changed to Israel.

1 Chronicles 1:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- Esau
- and Korah

Translation Words - UST

- Esau's
- sons were
- and Korah

ULT

³⁵ The sons of Esau: Eliphaz, Reuel, and Jeush, and Jalam, and Korah.

UST

³⁵ Esau's sons were Eliphaz, Reuel, Jeush, Jalam, and Korah.

1 Chronicles 1:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of

Translation Words - UST

- sons were

ULT

³⁶ The sons of Eliphaz: Teman, and Omar, Zepho, and Gatam, Kenaz, and Timna, and Amalek.

UST

³⁶ Eliphaz's sons were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, Kenaz, Timna, and Amalek.

1 Chronicles 1:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of

Translation Words - UST

- sons were

ULT

³⁷ The sons of Reuel: Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah.

UST

³⁷ Reuel's sons were Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah.

1 Chronicles 1:38

General Information:

All of the names in this verse are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)

ULT

³⁸ [And the sons of](#) Seir: Lotan, and Shobal, and Zibeon, and Anah, and Dishon, and Ezer, and Dishan.

UST

³⁸ Another descendant of Esau was Seir. Seir's [sons were](#) Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan.

1 Chronicles 1:39

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men, except for Timna. Timna is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)

ULT

³⁹ [And the sons of](#) Lotan: Hori and Homam. And the sister of Lotan: Timna.

UST

³⁹ Lotan's [sons were](#) Hori and Homam, and Lotan's sister was Timna.

1 Chronicles 1:40

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ [The sons of](#) Shobal: Alian, and Manahath, and Ebal, Shephi, and Onam. [And the sons of](#) Zibeon: Aiah and Anah.

UST

⁴⁰ Shobal's [sons were](#) Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam. Zibeon's [sons were](#) Aiah and Anah.

1 Chronicles 1:41

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son was](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

⁴¹ [The sons of](#) Anah: Dishon. [And the sons of](#) Dishon: Hemdan, and Eshban, and Ithran, and Keran.

UST

⁴¹ Anah's [son was](#) Dishon. Dishon's [sons were](#) Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran.

1 Chronicles 1:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- The sons of

Translation Words - UST

- sons were
- sons were

ULT

⁴² The sons of Ezer: Bilhan, and Zaavan, and Akan. The sons of Dishan: Uz and Aran.

UST

⁴² Ezer's sons were Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan. Dishan's sons were Uz and Aran.

1 Chronicles 1:43

Edom ... Dinhabah

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bela ... Beor

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the kings
- a king
- over the sons of
- son of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- are the kings
- any kings
- over
- son of
- Israel

ULT

⁴³ And these, the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before the face of a king reigned over the sons of Israel: Bela, son of Beor. And the name of his city: Dinhabah.

UST

⁴³ These are the kings who ruled the region of Edom (where Seir's descendants lived) before any kings ruled over Israel: Bela son of Beor, and his city's name was Dinhabah.

1 Chronicles 1:44

Bela ... Jobab ... Zerah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bozrah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...died](#)
- [son of](#)
- [and...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When...died](#)
- [son of](#)
- [became the king](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ And Bela [died](#), and Jobab [son of](#) Zerah from Bozrah [reigned](#) in his place.

UST

⁴⁴ [When](#) Bela [died](#), Jobab [son of](#) Zerah, from the city of Bozrah, [became the king](#).

1 Chronicles 1:45

Jobab ... Husham

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Husham of the land of the Temanites reigned in his place

Alternate translation: "Husham, from the land where Teman's descendants lived, reigned after him"

Temanites

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...died](#)
- [and...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When...died](#)
- [became the king](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ And Jobab [died](#), and Husham from the land of the Temanites [reigned](#) in his place.

UST

⁴⁵ [When](#) Jobab [died](#), Husham [became the king](#). He was from the region where the Teman people group lived.

1 Chronicles 1:46

Husham ... Hadad ... Bedad

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Avith

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...died](#)
- [son of](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [and...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When...died](#)
- [son of](#)
- [became the king](#)
- [Moab](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ And Husham [died](#), and Hadad [son of](#) Bedad, who struck down Midian in the field of [Moab](#), [reigned](#) in his place. And the name of his city: Avith.

UST

⁴⁶ [When](#) Husham [died](#), Hadad [son of](#) Bedad, [became the king](#). His city's name was Avith. Hadad's army defeated the army of the Midian people group in the region of [Moab](#).

1 Chronicles 1:47

Hadad ... Samlah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Masrekah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...died](#)
- [and...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When...died](#)
- [became the king](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ And Hadad [died](#), and Samlah from Masrekah [reigned](#) in his place.

UST

⁴⁷ [When](#) Hadad [died](#), Samlah [became the king](#). He was from the city of Masrekah.

1 Chronicles 1:48

Samlah ... Shaul

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rehoboth

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...died](#)
- [Shaul](#)
- [and...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When...died](#)
- [Shaul](#)
- [became the king](#)

ULT

48 And Samlah [died](#), and [Shaul](#) from Rehoboth of the river [reigned](#) in his place.

UST

48 [When](#) Samlah [died](#), [Shaul](#) became the [king](#). He was from the city of Rehoboth Hannahar.

1 Chronicles 1:49

Shaul ... Baal-Hanan ... Akbor

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Shaul
- And...died
- son of
- and...reigned

Translation Words - UST

- When...died
- Shaul
- son of
- became the king

ULT

⁴⁹ And **Shaul died**, and Baal-Hanan son of Akbor **reigned** in his place.

UST

⁴⁹ **When Shaul died**, Baal-Hanan son of Akbor **became the king**.

1 Chronicles 1:50

Baal-Hanan ... Akbor ... Hadad ... Me-Zahab

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Pau

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mehetabel ... Matred

These are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...died](#)
- [and...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When...died](#)
- [became the king](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ And Baal-Hanan [died](#), and Hadad [reigned](#) in his place. And the name of his city: Pai. And the name of his wife: Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred, the daughter of Me-Zahab.

UST

⁵⁰ [When](#) Baal-Hanan [died](#), Hadar [became the king](#). His city's name was Pau. His wife's name was Mehetabel; she was the daughter of Matred and the granddaughter of Me-Zahab.

1 Chronicles 1:51

Hadad ... Timna ... Alvah ... Jetheth

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Edom

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then...died](#)

ULT

⁵¹ And Hadad [died](#). And the chiefs of Edom were Chief Timna, Chief Alvah, Chief Jetheth,

UST

⁵¹ Then Hadad [died](#). The chiefs of the Edom people group were Chiefs Timna, Alvah, Jetheth,

1 Chronicles 1:52

Oholibamah ... Elah ... Pinon

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵² Chief Oholibamah, Chief Elah, Chief Pinon,

UST

⁵² Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon,

1 Chronicles 1:53

Kenaz ... Teman ... Mibzar

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵³ Chief Kenaz, Chief Teman, Chief Mibzar,

UST

⁵³ Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar,

1 Chronicles 1:54

Magdiel ... Iram

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Edom

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵⁴ Chief Magdiel, Chief Iram. These, the chiefs of Edom.

UST

⁵⁴ Magdiel, and Iram. These were the chiefs of Edom.

1 Chronicles 2

1 Chronicles 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of Judah, son of Jacob.

1 Chronicles 2:1

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Levi
- and Judah
- Issachar

Translation Words - UST

- the sons of
- Israel (also known as Jacob)
- Levi
- Judah
- Issachar

ULT

¹ These were the sons of Israel: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun,

UST

¹ The following were the sons of Israel (also known as Jacob): Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Zebulun,

1 Chronicles 2:2

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph
- and Benjamin
- Naphtali
- and Asher

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph
- Benjamin
- Naphtali
- and Asher

ULT

² Dan, Joseph, and Benjamin, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.

UST

² Dan, Joseph, Benjamin, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.

1 Chronicles 2:3

Er ... Onan ... Shelah ... Shua ... Judah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who were born to him by Shua's daughter, a Canaanite woman

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "his sons whom Shua's daughter, a Canaanite woman, bore" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents his judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh judged" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Yahweh killed him

The reader should understand that Yahweh may have had a person kill Er. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Judah \(2\)](#)
- [the Canaanite](#)
- [the firstborn of](#)
- [wicked](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and he killed him](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah's](#)
- [Judah's \(2\)](#)
- [sons were](#)
- [from the Canaan people group](#)
- [oldest son](#)
- [he did something...very wicked](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [so Yahweh caused him to die](#)

ULT

³ [The sons of Judah](#): Er, and Onan, and Shelah; three were born to him by Bath-shua [the Canaanite](#). And Er, [the firstborn of Judah](#), was [wicked](#) in the eyes of Yahweh, and he killed him.

UST

³ [Judah's sons were](#) Er, Onan, and Shelah. Judah had them with Bath-Shua [from the Canaan people group](#). When [Judah's oldest son](#) Er grew up, [he did something](#) that Yahweh considered to be [very wicked](#), so Yahweh caused him to die.

1 Chronicles 2:4

Tamar

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

daughter-in-law

This refers to the wife of his son.

Perez ... Zerah ... Judah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

bore him Perez and Zerah

Alternate translation: "gave birth to his sons Perez and Zerah"

five sons

"5 sons" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah](#)
- [had...sons](#)

ULT

⁴ And Tamar, his daughter-in-law, bore to him Perez and Zerah. All [the sons of Judah](#), five.

UST

⁴ Judah and his daughter-in-law Tamar had twin boys named Perez and Zerah. So altogether [Judah](#) had five [sons](#).

1 Chronicles 2:5

Perez ... Hezron ... Hamul

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)

ULT

⁵ [The sons of](#) Perez: Hezron and Hamul.

UST

⁵ Perez's [sons were](#) Hezron and Hamul.

1 Chronicles 2:6

Zerah ... Zimri ... Ethan ... Heman ... Kalkol ... Darda

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had...sons](#)

ULT

⁶ [And the sons of](#) Zerah: Zimri, and Ethan, and Heman, and Kalkol, and Dara. All of them, five.

UST

⁶ Zerah had five [sons](#): Zimri, Ethan, Heman, Kalkol, and Darda.

1 Chronicles 2:7

Karmi ... Achar

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

what was reserved for God

what God had said he wanted the people to destroy

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [violated](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had a son named](#)
- [the people of Israel](#)
- [he stole some of the things](#)

ULT

⁷ [And the sons of](#) Karmi: Achar, the troubler of [Israel](#) who [violated](#) the ban. ^[1]

UST

⁷ Zimri had a son named Karmi. Karmi [had a son named](#) Achar. Achar (whose name sounds like “trouble”) caused [the people of Israel](#) to experience much trouble, because [he stole some of the things](#) that were to be destroyed because they were dedicated to God.

1 Chronicles 2:8

Ethan ... Azariah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son was](#)

ULT

⁸ [And the sons of](#) Ethan: Azariah.

UST

⁸ Ethan's [son was](#) Azariah.

1 Chronicles 2:9

Hezron ... Jerahmeel ... Ram ... Caleb

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [three sons](#)

ULT

⁹ [And the sons of](#) Hezron who were born to him: Jerahmeel, and Ram, and Caleb.

UST

⁹ Hezron had [three sons](#): Jerahmeel, Ram, and Caleb.

1 Chronicles 2:10

Ram ... Amminadab ... Nahshon ... Judah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- the tribe of
- Judah

ULT

10 And Ram fathered Amminadab, and Amminadab fathered Nahshon, leader of [the sons of Judah](#).

UST

10 Ram was the father of Amminadab, and Amminadab was the father of Nahshon. Nahshon was a leader of [the tribe of Judah](#).

1 Chronicles 2:11

Nahshon ... Salmon ... Boaz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Boaz](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Boaz](#)

ULT

¹¹ And Nahshon fathered Salmon, and Salmon fathered [Boaz](#).

UST

¹¹ Nahshon was the father of Salmon. Salmon was the father of [Boaz](#).

1 Chronicles 2:12

Boaz ... Obed ... Jesse

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Boaz](#)
- [Jesse](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Boaz](#)
- [Jesse](#)

ULT

¹² [And Boaz](#) fathered Obed, and Obed fathered [Jesse](#).

UST

¹² [Boaz](#) was the father of Obed. Obed was the father of [Jesse](#).

1 Chronicles 2:13

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the second ... the third

The word "son" is understood. Also, the numbers are in ordinal form. Alternate translation: "the second son ... the third son" (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Jesse](#)
- [his firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesse](#)
- [his son...first](#)

ULT

¹³ And Jesse fathered his firstborn, Eliab, and Abinadab the second, and Shimea the third,

UST

¹³ Jesse had his son Eliab first, Abinadab second, Shimea third.

1 Chronicles 2:14

Nethanel ... Raddai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the fourth ... the fifth

The word "son" is understood. Also, the numbers are in ordinal form. Alternate translation: "the fourth son ... the fifth son" (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

ULT

¹⁴ Nethanel the fourth, Raddai the fifth,

UST

¹⁴ Nethanel fourth, Raddai fifth,

1 Chronicles 2:15

Ozem ... David

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the sixth ... the seventh

The word "son" is understood. Also, the numbers are in ordinal form. Alternate translation: "the sixth son ... the seventh son" (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [then David](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Ozem the sixth, [David](#) the seventh,

UST

¹⁵ Ozem sixth, [then David](#) last.

1 Chronicles 2:16

General Information:

All names here except Zeruiah and Abigail are the names of men. Zeruiah and Abigail are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [and Joab](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [Joab](#)

ULT

16 and their sisters: Zeruiah and Abigail. [And the sons of](#) Zeruiah: Abishai, [and Joab](#), and Asahel, three.

UST

16 Their sisters were Zeruiah and Abigail. Zeruiah's three [sons were](#) Abishai, [Joab](#), and Asahel.

1 Chronicles 2:17

Amasa ... Jether

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jether the Ishmaelite

Alternate translation: "Jether, a descendant of Ishmael"

Translation Words - ULT

- [and the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [father was](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And Abigail bore Amasa, [and the father of](#) Amasa: Jether the Ishmaelite.

UST

¹⁷ Abigail had Amasa. Amasa's [father was](#) Jether, a descendant of Ishmael.

1 Chronicles 2:18

Caleb ... Hezron ... Jeshar ... Shobab ... Ardon

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Azubah ... Jerioth

These are names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- her sons

Translation Words - UST

- third son
- The sons

ULT

18 And Caleb son of Hezron had children with Azubah, a wife, and with Jerioth. And these, her sons: Jeshar, and Shobab, and Ardon.

UST

18 Hezron's third son Caleb had sons with one of his wives, Azubah. The sons were Jeshar, Shobab, and Ardon. (The other wife's name was Jerioth.)

1 Chronicles 2:19

Caleb ... Hur

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Azubah ... Ephrath

These are names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When...died](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And Azubah **died**, and Caleb took for himself Ephrath. And she bore to him Hur.

UST

¹⁹ **When** Azubah **died**, Caleb married Ephrath. They had a son named Hur.

1 Chronicles 2:20

Hur ... Uri ... Bezalel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁰ And Hur fathered Uri, and Uri fathered Bezalel.

UST

²⁰ Hur was the father of Uri. Uri was the father of Bezalel.

1 Chronicles 2:21

General Information:

All names in this list are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

bore him

Alternate translation: "gave birth to"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the father of](#)
- [a son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sixty years old](#)
- [from the region of](#)

ULT

²¹ And afterward Hezron went into the daughter of Makir [the father of](#) Gilead, and he took her. And he was [a son of](#) 60 years. And she bore to him Segub.

UST

²¹ Later, when Hezron was [sixty years old](#), he had sexual intercourse with a daughter of Makir [from the region of](#) Gilead and married her. Hezron's new wife gave birth to their son Segub.

1 Chronicles 2:22

Segub ... Jair

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

land of Gilead

People gave the land the name of the man.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Gilead](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Gilead](#)

ULT

²² And Segub fathered Jair. And there were to him 23 cities in the land of [Gilead](#).

UST

²² Segub was the father of Jair. Jair controlled 23 cities in the region of [Gilead](#).

1 Chronicles 2:23

Geshur ... Aram

These are names of people groups named after ancestors. Translate "Aram" as in [1 Chronicles 1:17](#).

Havvoth Jair and Kenath

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Makir ... Gilead

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Geshur](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the armies of Geshur and Aram](#)
- [were descendants of](#)
- [from the region of](#)

ULT

²³ And [Geshur](#) and Aram took from them Havvoth-Jair, Kenath, and its daughters, 60 towns. All these, [the sons of Makir](#), [the father of](#) Gilead.

UST

²³ But [the armies of Geshur and Aram](#) captured from Jair the cities of Havvoth-Jair, Kenath, and the nearby towns; sixty towns altogether. All the people who lived there [were descendants of Makir from the region of](#) Gilead.

1 Chronicles 2:24

Hezron ... Caleb ... Ashhur ... Tekoa

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Caleb went in to Ephrathah

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Caleb had sexual relations with Ephrathah" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Ephrathah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

bore him

Alternate translation: "gave birth to his son"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abijah](#)
- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abijah](#)
- [who became the father of](#)

ULT

²⁴ And after the death of Hezron in Caleb Ephrathah, then the wife of Hezron, [Abijah](#), then she bore to him Ashhur, [the father of Tekoa](#). ^[2]

UST

²⁴ Shortly after Hezron died in Caleb-Ephrathah, [Abijah](#), Hezron's widow, gave birth to Ashhur, [who became the father of Tekoa](#).

1 Chronicles 2:25

Jerahmeel ... Hezron ... Ram ... Bunah, Oren, Ozem, and Ahijah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the firstborn of
- Ahijah

Translation Words - UST

- oldest son was
- sons
- and Ahijah

ULT

²⁵ And [the sons of](#) Jerahmeel, [the firstborn of](#) Hezron, were the firstborn Ram, and Bunah, and Oren, and Ozem, [Ahijah](#).

UST

²⁵ Hezron's [oldest son was](#) Jerahmeel. His [sons](#) were Ram (the oldest), Bunah, Oren, Ozem, [and Ahijah](#).

1 Chronicles 2:26

Jerahmeel ... Onam

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Atarah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁶ And there was another wife of Jerahmeel, and her name, Atarah. She, the mother of Onam.

UST

²⁶ Jerahmeel had another wife named Atarah. She was Onam's mother.

1 Chronicles 2:27

Ram ... Jerahmeel ... Maaz, Jamin, and Eker

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the firstborn of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The sons of](#)
- [oldest son](#)

ULT

²⁷ And [the sons of](#) Ram, [the firstborn of](#) Jerahmeel, were Maaz, and Jamin, and Eker.

UST

²⁷ [The sons of](#) Ram, Jerahmeel's [oldest son](#), were Maaz, Jamin, and Eker.

1 Chronicles 2:28

Onam ... Shammai ... Jada ... Nadab ... Abishur

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

²⁸ And [the sons of](#) Onam were Shammai and Jada. [And the sons of](#) Shammai: Nadab and Abishur.

UST

²⁸ Onam's [sons](#) were Shammai and Jada. Shammai's [sons were](#) Nadab and Abishur.

1 Chronicles 2:29

Abishur ... Ahban ... Molid

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Abihail

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁹ And the name of the wife of Abishur: Abihail. And she bore to him Ahban and Molid.

UST

²⁹ Abishur's wife was Abihail. Their sons were Ahban and Molid.

1 Chronicles 2:30

Nadab ... Seled ... Appaim

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- sons
- And...died

Translation Words - UST

- sons were
- childless
- died

ULT

³⁰ And the sons of Nadab: Seled and Appaim. And Seled died without sons.

UST

³⁰ Nadab's sons were Seled and Appaim. Seled died childless.

1 Chronicles 2:31

Appaim ... Ishi ... Sheshan ... Ahlai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [And the sons of](#)
- [And the sons of](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [son was](#)
- [son was](#)
- [son was](#) (2)

ULT

³¹ [And the sons of](#) Appaim: Ishi. [And the sons of](#) Ishi: Sheshan. [And the sons of](#) Sheshan: Ahlai.

UST

³¹ Appaim's [son was](#) Ishi; Ishi's [son was](#) Sheshan. Sheshan's [son was](#) Ahlai.

1 Chronicles 2:32

Jada ... Shammai ... Jether ... Jonathan

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- sons
- the brother of
- And...died

Translation Words - UST

- The sons of...were
- childless
- brother
- died

ULT

³² And the sons of Jada, the brother of Shammai: Jether and Jonathan. And Jether died without sons.

UST

³² The sons of Jada (Shammai's brother) were Jether and Jonathan. Jether died childless.

1 Chronicles 2:33

Jonathan ... Peleth ... Zaza ... Jerahmeel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [the descendants of](#)

ULT

³³ [And the sons of](#) Jonathan: Peleth and Zaza. These were [the sons of](#) Jerahmeel.

UST

³³ Jonathan's [sons were](#) Peleth and Zaza. These were [the descendants of](#) Jerahmeel.

1 Chronicles 2:34

Sheshan ... Jarha

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- a servant

Translation Words - UST

- any sons
- a servant

ULT

³⁴ And there were not to Sheshan sons, but only daughters. And to Sheshan a servant, an Egyptian, and his name, Jarha.

UST

³⁴ Sheshan did not have any sons; he only had daughters. He had a servant from Egypt whose name was Jarha.

1 Chronicles 2:35

Sheshan ... Jarha ... Attai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

bore him

Alternate translation: "gave birth to his son"

Translation Words - ULT

- [his servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his servant](#)

ULT

³⁵ And Sheshan gave his daughter to Jarha [his servant](#) for a wife. And she bore to him Attai.

UST

³⁵ Sheshan arranged for his daughter to marry Jarha [his servant](#). She and Jarha had a son: Attai.

1 Chronicles 2:36

Attai ... Nathan ... Zabad

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Nathan](#)
- [and Nathan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Nathan](#)
- [Nathan](#)

ULT

³⁶ And Attai fathered [Nathan](#), and [Nathan](#) fathered Zabad.

UST

³⁶ Attai was the father of [Nathan](#). [Nathan](#) was the father of Zabad.

1 Chronicles 2:37

Zabad ... Ephlal ... Obed

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁷ And Zabad fathered Ephlal, and Ephlal fathered Obed.

UST

³⁷ Zabad was the father of Ephlal. Ephlal was the father of Obed.

1 Chronicles 2:38

Obed ... Jehu ... Azariah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehu
- and Jehu

Translation Words - UST

- Jehu
- Jehu

ULT

³⁸ And Obed fathered Jehu, and Jehu fathered Azariah.

UST

³⁸ Obed was the father of Jehu. Jehu was the father of Azariah.

1 Chronicles 2:39

Azariah ... Helez ... Eleasah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁹ And Azariah fathered Helez, and Helez fathered Eleasah.

UST

³⁹ Azariah was the father of Helez. Helez was the father of Eleasah.

1 Chronicles 2:40

Eleasah ... Sismai ... Shallum

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴⁰ And Eleasah fathered Sismai, and Sismai fathered Shallum.

UST

⁴⁰ Eleasah was the father of Sismai. Sismai was the father of Shallum.

1 Chronicles 2:41

Shallum ... Jekamiah ... Elishama

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴¹ And Shallum fathered Jekamiah, and Jekamiah fathered Elishama.

UST

⁴¹ Shallum was the father of Jekamiah. Jekamiah was the father of Elishama.

1 Chronicles 2:42

Caleb ... Jerahmeel ... Mesha ... Ziph ... Mareshah ... Hebron

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the father of Hebron

Some versions read, "the founder of the clan of Hebron"

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- And the sons of
- the brother of
- his firstborn
- the father of
- the father of

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- oldest
- son was
- Ziph was the father of
- was the father of
- was the father of

ULT

⁴² And the sons of Caleb, the brother of Jerahmeel: Mesha his firstborn; he, the father of Ziph. And the sons of Mareshah, the father of Hebron.

UST

⁴² Jerahmeel's brother was Caleb. Caleb's oldest son was Mesha. Mesha was the father of Ziph. Ziph was the father of Mareshah. Mareshah was the father of Hebron.

1 Chronicles 2:43

Hebron ... Korah, Tappuah, Rekem, and Shema

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [Korah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [Korah](#)

ULT

⁴³ [And the sons of](#) Hebron: [Korah](#), and Tappuah, and Rekem, and Shema.

UST

⁴³ Hebron's [sons were](#) [Korah](#), Tappuah, Rekem, and Shema.

1 Chronicles 2:44

Shema ... Raham ... Jorkeam ... Rekem ... Shammai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the father of Raham, the father of Jorkeam ... the father of Shammai

Some versions read, "the founder of the clan of Hebron ... the founder of the clan of Raham, the founder of the clan of Jorkeam ... the founder of the clan of Shammai."

Translation Words - ULT

- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Raham was the father of](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ And Shema fathered Raham, [the father of](#) Jorkeam. And Rekem fathered Shammai.

UST

⁴⁴ Shema was the father of Raham. [Raham was the father of](#) Jorkeam. Rekem was the father of Shammai.

1 Chronicles 2:45

Shammai ... Maon ... Beth Zur

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the son of](#)
- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son was](#)
- [was the father of](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ [And the son of](#) Shammai: Maon, and Maon [the father of](#) Beth Zur.

UST

⁴⁵ Shammai's [son was](#) Maon. Maon [was the father of](#) Beth Zur.

1 Chronicles 2:46

Caleb ... Haran ... Moza ... Gazez

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ephah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴⁶ And Ephah, the concubine of Caleb, bore Haran, and Moza, and Gazez. And Haran fathered Gazez.

UST

⁴⁶ Caleb had a slave wife named Ephah. She gave birth to Haran, Moza, and Gazez. Haran had a son whom he also named Gazez.

1 Chronicles 2:47

Jahdai ... Regem, Jotham, Geshan, Pelet, Ephah, and Shaaph

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [and Jotham](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [Jotham](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ [And the sons of](#) Jahdai: Regem, [and Jotham](#), and Geshan, and Pelet, and Ephah, and Shaaph.

UST

⁴⁷ Jahdai's [sons were](#): Regem, [Jotham](#), Geshan, Pelet, Ephah, and Shaaph.

1 Chronicles 2:48

Caleb ... Sheber ... Tirhanah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Maakah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Maakah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [named Maacah](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ The concubine of Caleb, [Maakah](#), bore Sheber and Tirhanah.

UST

⁴⁸ Caleb had another slave wife [named Maacah](#). She gave birth to Sheber and Tirhanah.

1 Chronicles 2:49

She also bore

Alternate translation: "She also gave birth to""

Shaaph ... Madmannah ... Sheva ... Makbenah ... Gibeah ... Caleb

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Aksah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the father of
- the father of
- the father of...and

Translation Words - UST

- who was the father of
- who was the father of
- and

ULT

⁴⁹ And she bore Shaaph [the father of](#) Madmannah, Sheva [the father of](#) Makbenah [and the father of](#) Gibeah. And the daughter of Caleb, Aksah.

UST

⁴⁹ She also gave birth to Shaaph ([who was the father of](#) Madmannah), Sheva ([who was the father of](#) Makbenah [and](#) Gibeah). Caleb's daughter was Aksah.

1 Chronicles 2:50

Hur ... Shobal

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ephrathah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

father of Kiriath Jearim

Kiriath Jearim is the name of a town. The name of the town is a metonym for the people who live in the town. Alternate translation: "founder of Kiriath Jearim" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [The son of](#)
- [the firstborn of](#)
- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ These were [the sons of](#) Caleb. [The son of Hur, the firstborn of](#) Ephrathah: Shobal [the father of](#) Kiriath Jearim,

UST

⁵⁰⁻⁵¹ These people were also descendants of Caleb: Caleb had another wife whose name was Ephrathah. Their oldest son was Hur. Hur's sons were Shobal, Salma, and Hareph. Shobal started the city of Kiriath Jearim. Salma started the city of Bethlehem. Hareph started the city of Beth Gader.

1 Chronicles 2:51

Salma ... Hareph

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

father of Bethlehem ... father of Beth Gader

Bethlehem and Beth Gader are the names of towns. The names of the towns are metonyms for the people who live in the towns.

Alternate translation: "founder of Bethlehem ... founder of Beth Gader" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the father of](#)
- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

⁵¹ Salma [the father of](#) Bethlehem, Hareph [the father of](#) Beth Gader.

UST

⁵⁰⁻⁵¹ These people were also descendants of Caleb: Caleb had another wife whose name was Ephrathah. Their oldest son was Hur. Hur's sons were Shobal, Salma, and Hareph. Shobal started the city of Kiriath Jearim. Salma started the city of Bethlehem. Hareph started the city of Beth Gader.

1 Chronicles 2:52

General Information:

See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Shobal the father of Kiriath Jearim

Shobal is the name of a man, and Kiriath Jearim is the name of a town. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 2:50](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Manahathites

This is the name of a clan.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons](#)
- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The descendants of](#)
- [who was the father of](#)

ULT

⁵² And [the sons](#) of Shobal, [the father of](#) Kiriath Jearim, were Haroeh, half of the Menuhoth,

UST

⁵² [The descendants of](#) Shobal ([who was the father of](#) Kiriath-Jearim) were Haroeh and half of the Manahath people group.

1 Chronicles 2:53

Ithrites, Puthites, Shumathites ... Mishraites ... Zorathites ... Eshtaolites

These are the names of clans.

Translation Words - ULT

- and the clans of
- came

Translation Words - UST

- His descendants also included clans that lived in
- came

ULT

⁵³ and the clans of Kiriath Jearim: the Ithrites, and the Puthites, and the Shumathites, and the Mishraites. From these came the Zorathites and Eshtaolites.

UST

⁵³ His descendants also included clans that lived in Kiriath Jearim: Ithri, Put, Shumath, and Mishra. The Zorath clan and the Eshtaol clan came from these other clans.

1 Chronicles 2:54

Salma

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bethlehem

This is the name of a town where Salma's descendants settled and represents the people living in that town. Alternate translation: "the people of Bethlehem" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Netophathites ... Atroth Beth Joab ... Manahathites ... Zorites

These are names of clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [descendants were](#)

ULT

⁵⁴ [The sons of](#) Salma: Bethlehem, and the Netophathites, Atroth Beth Joab, and half of the Manahathites, the Zorites.

UST

⁵⁴ Salma's [descendants were](#) the people of Bethlehem, the clan of Netophath, the clan of Atroth Beth Joab, and the half the clan of Manahath, who were also Zorites.

1 Chronicles 2:55

Jabez

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Tirathites ... Shimeathites ... Sucathites ... Kenites

These are names of clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Kenites who came from Hammath

Alternate translation: "the Kenites who descended from Hamath"

Hammath ... Rekab

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the clans of](#)
- [the scribes](#)
- [the father of](#)
- [the house of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The families...were](#)
- [who wrote and copied important documents](#)
- [the ancestor of](#)
- [the family of](#)

ULT

55 [And the clans of the scribes](#) lived at Jabez: the Tirathites, the Shimeathites, and the Sucathites. These, the Kenites who came from Hammath, [the father of the house of](#) Rekab.

2:7 ^[1] instead of .

2:24 ^[2] .

UST

55 [The families who wrote and copied important documents](#) and who lived in the town of Jabez [were](#) the clan of Tirath, the clan of Shimeath, and the clan of Sucath. They were all from the Kenite people group who descended from Hammath, [the ancestor of the family of](#) Rekab.

1 Chronicles 3

1 Chronicles 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of King David.

1 Chronicles 3:1

David

David was a son of Jesse, who was a descendant of Judah (1 Chronicles 2:15).

Ahinoam ... Abigail

These are the names of women who were David's wives. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Daniel

This man has the same name as an Israelite prophet but is a different person.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [David](#)
- [Amnon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the sons of](#)
- [King David](#)
- [Amnon](#)

ULT

¹ And these were [the sons of David](#) who were born to him in Hebron: the firstborn [Amnon](#) by Ahinoam the Jezreelite; the second Daniel by Abigail the Carmelite;

UST

¹ The following were [the sons of King David](#) who were born in the city of Hebron: His oldest son was [Amnon](#), whose mother Ahinoam was from the city of Jezreel. His second son was Daniel, whose mother Abigail was from the city of Carmel.

1 Chronicles 3:2

Maakah ... Haggith

These are the names of women who were David's wives. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Talmai

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- the son of
- the son of
- Maakah
- the king of
- Geshur
- Adonijah

Translation Words - UST

- Absalom
- whose mother was
- whose mother was
- Maacah
- the king who ruled
- in the city of Geshur
- Adonijah

ULT

² the third [Absalom, the son of Maakah](#), the daughter of Talmai [the king of Geshur](#); the fourth [Adonijah, the son of Haggith](#);

UST

² His third son was [Absalom, whose mother was Maacah](#), the daughter of Talmai, [the king who ruled in the city of Geshur](#). His fourth son was [Adonijah, whose mother was Haggith](#).

1 Chronicles 3:3

Abital ... Eglah

These are the names of women who were David's wives. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shephatiah ... Ithream

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³ the fifth Shephatiah by Abital; the sixth Ithream by Eglah, his wife.

UST

³ His fifth son was Shephatiah, whose mother was Abital. His sixth son was Ithream. David had him with his wife Eglah.

1 Chronicles 3:4

where he reigned seven years and six months

This can also be translated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "David reigned there seven years and six months"

thirty-three years

"33 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and he reigned](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David ruled](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁴ Six were born to him in Hebron, [and he reigned](#) there seven years and six months. Then 33 years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#).

UST

⁴ All six were born in Hebron, where [David ruled](#) for seven and one-half years. After that, David ruled [in Jerusalem](#) for 33 years.

1 Chronicles 3:5

Ammiel ... Shammua ... Shobab ... Nathan

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [and Nathan](#)
- [and Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [and Solomon](#)

ULT

⁵ And these were born to him [in Jerusalem](#): Shimea, and Shobab, [and Nathan](#), [and Solomon](#), four by Bathshua, the daughter of Ammiel; ^[1]

UST

⁵ The following were born to David [in Jerusalem](#). Bathshua, the daughter of Ammiel, gave birth to four of his sons: Shammua, Shobab, [Nathan](#), [and Solomon](#).

1 Chronicles 3:6

Ibhar, Elishua, Eliphelet

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶ and Ibhar, and Elishua, and Eliphelet,

UST

⁶ Other sons were Ibhar, Elishua,
Elphelet,

1 Chronicles 3:7

Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷ and Nogah, and Nepheg, and Japhia,

UST

⁷ Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia,

1 Chronicles 3:8

Elishama ... Eliada ... Eliphelet

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁸ and Elishama, and Eliada, and Eliphelet; nine.

UST

⁸ Elishama, Eliada, and Eliphelet, nine in all.

1 Chronicles 3:9

Tamar

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- sons of
- David

Translation Words - UST

- sons
- also gave birth to sons
- David's

ULT

⁹ All the sons of David, besides sons of concubines, and Tamar their sister.

UST

⁹ In addition to all those sons, David's slave wives also gave birth to sons. They all had a sister named Tamar.

1 Chronicles 3:10

General Information:

This is the beginning of the list of David's descendants who became king. All of the names in this list are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Solomon's son was Rehoboam. Rehoboam's son was Abijah

Solomon had more than one son. The same is true of other men in the list. Alternate translation: "Solomon was the father of Rehoboam. Rehoboam was the father of Abijah"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the son of](#)
- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Abijah](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's](#)
- [son was](#)
- [Rehoboam's son was](#)
- [Abijah's son was](#)
- [Asa's son was](#)
- [King Rehoboam](#)
- [King Abijah](#)
- [King Asa](#)
- [King Jehoshaphat](#)

ULT

¹⁰ [And the son of Solomon, Rehoboam; Abijah his son; Asa his son; Jehoshaphat his son;](#)

UST

¹⁰ [Solomon's son was King Rehoboam. Rehoboam's son was King Abijah. Abijah's son was King Asa. Asa's son was King Jehoshaphat.](#)

1 Chronicles 3:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- his son
- his son
- Ahaziah

Translation Words - UST

- Jehoshaphat's son was
- Joram's son was
- Ahaziah's son was
- King Ahaziah

ULT

¹¹Joram his son; Ahaziah his son; Joash his son;

UST

¹¹Jehoshaphat's son was King Joram. Joram's son was King Ahaziah. Ahaziah's son was King Joash.

1 Chronicles 3:12

Azariah

This was another name for Uzziah, the better-known name for this king. Translators may decide to use “Uzziah” everywhere for this king.

Translation Words - ULT

- Amaziah
- his son
- his son
- his son
- Jotham

Translation Words - UST

- Joash’s son was
- Amaziah’s son was
- Azariah’s son was
- King Amaziah
- King Jotham

ULT

¹² Amaziah his son; Azariah his son;
Jotham his son;

UST

¹² Joash’s son was King Amaziah.
Amaziah’s son was King Azariah.
Azariah’s son was King Jotham.

1 Chronicles 3:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahaz
- his son
- his son
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- Jotham's son was
- Ahaz's son was
- Hezekiah's son was
- King Ahaz

ULT

¹³ Ahaz his son; Hezekiah his son;
Manasseh his son;

UST

¹³ Jotham's son was King Ahaz. Ahaz's son was King Hezekiah. Hezekiah's son was King Manasseh.

1 Chronicles 3:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- his son
- Josiah

Translation Words - UST

- Manasseh's son was
- Amon's son was
- King Josiah

ULT

¹⁴ Amon his son; Josiah his son.

UST

¹⁴ Manasseh's son was King Amon.
Amon's son was King Josiah.

1 Chronicles 3:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- Josiah
- Jehoiakim
- Zedekiah

Translation Words - UST

- Josiah
- had four sons
- Jehoiakim
- Zedekiah

ULT

¹⁵ And the sons of Josiah: the firstborn Johanan, the second Jehoiakim, the third Zedekiah, the fourth Shallum.

UST

¹⁵ Josiah had four sons. The oldest was Johanan. The second was Jehoiakim. The third was Zedekiah. The fourth was Shallum.

1 Chronicles 3:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- his son
- his son
- Jehoiakim
- Zedekiah

Translation Words - UST

- The descendants of...included
- Jehoiakim's son
- Jeconiah's son
- Jehoiakim
- and...Zedekiah

ULT

¹⁶ And the sons of Jehoiakim: Jeconiah his son, Zedekiah his son.

UST

¹⁶ The descendants of Jehoiakim included Jehoiakim's son Jeconiah and Jeconiah's son Zedekiah.

1 Chronicles 3:17

Jehoiachin ... Shealtiel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jehoiachin

Some versions have "Jeconiah," which is a variation of "Jehoiachin."

the captive

This may be a title that was given to Jehoiachin because he was taken into captivity. However, some versions regard the word as "Assir," the name of one of his sons.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁷ [And the sons of](#) Jeconiah, a prisoner:
Shealtiel [his son](#),

UST

¹⁷ Jeconiah was taken into exile in
Babylon. His [sons were](#) Shealtiel,

1 Chronicles 3:18

General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁸ and Malkiram, and Pedaiah, and Shenazzar, Jekamiah, Hoshama, and Nedabiah.

UST

¹⁸ Malkiram, Pedaiah, Shenazzar, Jekamiah, Hoshama, and Nedabiah.

1 Chronicles 3:19

General Information:

All of the names in this list except Shelomith are the names of men. Shelomith is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [And the son of](#)
- [Zerubbabel](#)
- [Zerubbabel](#)
- [and Hananiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [Two of...sons were](#)
- [Zerubbabel](#)
- [Zerubbabel's](#)
- [and Hananiah](#)

ULT

19 [And the sons of](#) Pedaiah: [Zerubbabel](#) and Shimei. [And the son of Zerubbabel:](#) Meshullam, [and Hananiah](#), and Shelomith their sister;

UST

19 Pedaiah's [sons were](#) [Zerubbabel](#) and Shimei. [Two of Zerubbabel's sons were](#) Meshullam [and Hananiah](#), and their sister was Shelomith.

1 Chronicles 3:20

General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁰ and Hashubah, and Ohel, and Berekiah, and Hasadiah, Jushab-Hesed, five.

UST

²⁰ Zerubbabel's five other sons were Hashubah, Ohel, Berekiah, Hasadiah, and Jushab-Hesed.

1 Chronicles 3:21

General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Obadiah

This man has the same name as the prophet Obadiah but is a different person. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

further descendants were Arnan, Obadiah, and Shekaniah

Different versions put these people into different relationships with each other because the Hebrew is not very clear about them.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the son of](#)
- [The sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the sons of \(2\)](#)
- [Hananiah](#)
- [and Jeshaiiah](#)
- [Obadiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Hananiah's](#)
- [descendants were](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [of](#)
- [of](#)
- [and of \(2\)](#)
- [Jeshaiiah](#)
- [Obadiah](#)

ULT

²¹ [And the son of Hananiah](#): Pelatiah and Jeshaiiah. [The sons of Rephaiah](#), [the sons of Arnan](#), [the sons of Obadiah](#), [the sons of Shekaniah](#).

UST

²¹ [Hananiah's descendants were](#) Pelatiah, [Jeshaiiah](#), [the sons of Rephaiah](#), [of Arnan](#), [of Obadiah](#), [and of Shecaniah](#).

1 Chronicles 3:22

General Information:

All of the names in this list are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [descendants were](#)
- [and...sons](#)

ULT

²² [And the sons of](#) Shekaniah: Shemaiah. [And the sons of](#) Shemaiah: Hattush, and Igal, and Bariah, and Neariah, and Shaphat, six.

UST

²² Shecaniah's six [descendants were](#) Shemaiah and Shemaiah's [sons](#) Hattush, Igal, Bariah, Neariah, and Shaphat.

1 Chronicles 3:23

General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)

ULT

²³ [And the son of](#) Neariah: Elioenai, and Hizkiah, and Azrikam, three.

UST

²³ Neariah's three [sons were](#) Elioenai, Hizkiah, and Azrikam.

1 Chronicles 3:24

General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)

ULT

24 [And the sons of](#) Elioenai: Hodaviah, and Eliashib, and Pelaiah, and Akkub, and Johanan, and Delaiah, and Anani, seven.

3:5 ^[1] or instead of .

UST

24 Elioenai's seven [sons were](#) Hodaviah, Eliashib, Pelaiah, Akkub, Johanan, Delaiah, and Anani.

1 Chronicles 4

1 Chronicles 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the other descendants of Judah.

1 Chronicles 4:1

General Information:

All of the names in this list are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah's](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

¹ [The sons of Judah](#): Perez, Hezron, and Karmi, and Hur, and Shobal.

UST

¹ [Judah's sons were](#) Perez, Hezron, Karmi, Hur, and Shobal.

1 Chronicles 4:2

General Information:

All of the names in this list except the Zorathites are the names of men. Zorathites is the name of a people group who took their name from the town of Zorah where they lived. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the clans of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son was](#)
- [the ancestors of](#)

ULT

² And Reaiah [the son of](#) Shobal fathered Jahath. And Jahath fathered Ahumai and Lahad. These, [the clans of](#) the Zorathites.

UST

² Shobal's [son was](#) Reaiah. Reaiah was the father of Jahath, and Jahath was the father of Ahumai and Lahad. They were [the ancestors of](#) the Zorath people group.

1 Chronicles 4:3

Jezreel ... Ishma ... Idbash

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hazzelelponi

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who started the clans that lived in](#)

ULT

³ And these of [the father](#) Etam: Jezreel, and Ishma, and Idbash. And the name of their sister, Hazzelelponi.

UST

³ What follows are the names of the three men [who started the clans that lived in](#) the city of Etam: Jezreel, Ishma, and Idbash—and they had a sister named Hazzelelponi.

1 Chronicles 4:4

Gedor ... Hushah

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Peniel ... Ezer ... Hur

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

These were descendants of Hur

“Peniel and Ezer were descendants of Hur.” This points forward to the list that will follow.

Ephrathah

This is the name of a woman. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 2:50](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the father of
- the father of (2)
- the father of
- the sons of
- the firstborn of

Translation Words - UST

- was the firstborn son of
- started the clans that lived in
- started the clans living in (2)
- he founded
- had...descendants

ULT

⁴ And Penuel, [the father of](#) Gedor, and Ezer [the father of](#) Hushah; these, [the sons of](#) Hur, [the firstborn of](#) Ephrathah, [the father of](#) Bethlehem.

UST

⁴ Hur [was the firstborn son of](#) Ephrathah; [he founded](#) the city of Bethlehem. Hur had these [descendants](#): Penuel and Ezer. Penuel [started the clans that lived in](#) the city of Gedor, and Ezer [started the clans living in](#) the city of Hushah.

1 Chronicles 4:5

Ashhur ... Tekoa

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 2:24](#).

Helah ... Naarah

These are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the father of](#)

ULT

⁵ And to Ashhur [the father of](#) Tekoa were two wives, Helah and Naarah.

UST

⁵ Hezron's son Ashhur, [the father of](#) Tekoa, had two wives whose names were Helah and Naarah.

1 Chronicles 4:6

bore him

Alternate translation: "gave birth to his sons"

Ahuzzam ... Hepher

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Temeni ... Haahashtari

These are understood here as the names of men. However, some versions understand them as the names of clans that were begun by the sons of Ashhur.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons](#)

ULT

⁶ And Naarah bore to him Ahuzzam, and Hepher, and Temeni, and Haahashtari. These, [the sons of](#) Naarah.

UST

⁶ Asshur and his wife Naarah had [sons](#) named Ahuzzam, Hepher, Temeni, and Haahashtari.

1 Chronicles 4:7

Zereth ... Zohar ... Ethnan

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The sons of...were](#)

ULT

⁷ [And the sons of](#) Helah: Zereth, and Zohar, and Ethnan.

UST

⁷ [The sons of](#) Ashhur and his wife Helah [were](#) Zereth, Zohar, Ethnan,

1 Chronicles 4:8

Koz ... Anub ... Hazzobebah ... Aharhel ... Harum

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

and of the clans descended from Aharhel son of Harum

A new sentence can start here. "Koz also became the ancestor of Harum and the clans that descended from Harum's son Aharhel"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the clans of](#)
- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and the ancestor of the clans descended from](#)
- [was the son of](#)

ULT

⁸ And Koz fathered Anub and Hazzobebah. [And the clans of Aharhel, the son of Harum.](#)

UST

⁸ and Koz. Koz was the father of Anub, Hazzobebah, [and the ancestor of the clans descended from Aharhel.](#) Aharhel [was the son of Harum.](#)

1 Chronicles 4:9

Jabez

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- respected
- more than his brothers
- called
- his name

Translation Words - UST

- He was more respected
- than his brothers
- named
- him

ULT

⁹ And Jabez was **respected more than his brothers**. And his mother **called his name** Jabez, saying, "Because I bore in pain."

UST

⁹ There was another descendant of Judah whose name was Jabez. **He was more respected than his brothers**. His mother **named him** Jabez which means 'pain' because she said, "I was enduring much pain when I gave birth to him."

1 Chronicles 4:10

expand my territory

Alternate translation: "give me more land"

your hand will be with me

Possible meanings are that God's **hand**: is: (1) a metonym for his guidance, his power, or his protection. Alternate translation: "you will guide me" or "you will make me prosper" or "you will protect me" or (2) a synecdoche for himself. Alternate translation: "you will be with me" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

granted him his prayer

The words "his prayer" are a metonym for what Jabez asked in the prayer. Alternate translation: "did what Jabez had asked him to do" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...called](#)
- [to the God of](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [surely](#)
- [you would...bless me](#)
- [your hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [One day...prayed](#)
- [to God](#)
- [God](#)
- [whom his fellow Israelites worshiped](#)
- [greatly](#)
- [bless me](#)
- [Remain](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And Jabez [called to the God of Israel](#), saying, "Oh that [you would surely bless me](#), and would enlarge my territory, and [your hand](#) would be with me, and you would act not in accordance with harm, so that I might not be in pain!" And [God](#) brought about what he asked.

UST

¹⁰ One day he [prayed to God whom his fellow Israelites worshiped](#), saying, "Please [greatly bless me](#) and increase the amount of land I own. [Remain](#) with me, and keep me from harm, so I will not experience any pain." And [God](#) did what Jabez requested.

1 Chronicles 4:11

Kelub ... Shuhah ... Mehir ... Eshton

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the brother of](#)
- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [His brother](#)
- [was the father of](#)

ULT

¹¹ And Kelub, [the brother of](#) Shuhah, fathered Mehir; he, [the father of](#) Eshton.

UST

¹¹ Another descendant of Judah was Shuhah. [His brother](#) Kelub was the father of Mehir. Mehir [was the father of](#) Eshton.

1 Chronicles 4:12

Eshton ... Beth Rapha ... Paseah ... Tehinnah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Tehinnah, the father of Ir Nahash

It appears that Ir Nahash may have been a city. Alternate translation: "Tehinnah, the founder of the city of Nahash" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nahash ... Rekah

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [started](#)

ULT

¹² And Eshton fathered Beth Rapha, and Paseah, and Tehinnah, [the father of](#) Ir Nahash. ^[1] These, the men of Rekah.

UST

¹² Eshton was the father of Beth Rapha, Paseah, and Tehinnah. Tehinnah [started](#) the city of Nahash, but their families lived in a place called Rekah.

1 Chronicles 4:13

General Information:

It may be helpful to create a verse bridge and to put verse 15 together with verse 13 since Kenaz was a descendant of Jephunneh and Caleb. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

Kenaz ... Othniel ... Seraiah ... Hathath ... Meonothai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

13 [And the sons of](#) Kenaz: Othniel and Seraiah. [And the sons of](#) Othniel: Hathath. ^[2]

UST

13-15 Another descendant of Judah was Jephunneh. His son was Caleb. Caleb's sons were Iru, Elah, and Naam. Elah's son was Kenaz. The sons of Kenaz were Othniel and Seraiah. Othniel's sons were Hathath and Meonothai. Meonothai was the father of Ophrah. Seraiah was the father of Joab. Joab was the ancestor of the people who lived in Craftsmen's Valley. The valley was named that because many of the people who lived there were craftsmen.

1 Chronicles 4:14

Meonothai ... Ophrah ... Joab

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ge-Harashim, whose people were craftsmen

Ge-Harashim means “Valley of Craftsmen.” This can be made explicit with an explanation. Alternate translation: “Ge-Harashim, which means ‘Craftsmen’s Valley.’ It was called this because its people were craftsmen” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

craftsmen

people skilled at making or building things

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joab](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

14 And Meonothai fathered Ophrah, and Seraiah fathered [Joab, the father of](#) Ge-Harashim, for craftsmen they were.

UST

1 Chronicles 4:15

Jephunneh ... Iru ... Elah ... Naam ... Kenaz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

15 [And the sons of](#) Caleb, [the son of](#) Jephunneh: Iru, Elah, and Naam. [And the sons of](#) Elah: Kenaz.

UST

13-15 Another descendant of Judah was Jephunneh. His son was Caleb. Caleb's sons were Iru, Elah, and Naam. Elah's son was Kenaz. The sons of Kenaz were Othniel and Seraiah. Othniel's sons were Hathath and Meonothai. Meonothai was the father of Ophrah. Seraiah was the father of Joab. Joab was the ancestor of the people who lived in Craftsmen's Valley. The valley was named that because many of the people who lived there were craftsmen.

1 Chronicles 4:16

Jehallelel ... Ziph ... Ziphah ... Tiria ... Asarel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)

ULT

¹⁶ [And the sons of](#) Jehallelel: Ziph, and Ziphah, Tiria, and Asarel.

UST

¹⁶ Another descendant of Judah was Jehallelel. His [sons were](#) Ziph, Ziphah, Tiria, and Asarel.

1 Chronicles 4:17

General Information:

You may want to combine the information in 1 Chronicles 4:17-18 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

Ezrah ... Jether ... Mered ... Ephraim ... Jalon ... Miriam ... Shammai ... Ishbah ... Eshtemoa

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

These were the sons of Bithiah

The word “these” refers to Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah. They were the sons Bithiah bore for her husband Mered.

Bithiah

This is the name of a woman.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [Miriam](#)
- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Miriam](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

17 [And the sons of](#) Ezrah: Jether, and Mered, and Ephraim, and Jalon. And she conceived [Miriam](#), and Shammai, and Ishbah, [the father of](#) Eshtemoa.

UST

17-18 Another descendant of Judah was Ezrah. Ezrah's sons were Jether, Mered, Ephraim, and Jalon. Mered married Bithiah, who was the daughter of the king of Egypt. The children of Mered and Bithiah were Miriam, Shammai and Ishbah. Ishbah was the father of Eshtemoa. Mered had a wife from Judah. She gave birth to Jered, Heber, and Jekuthiel. Jered was the father of Gedor; Heber was the father of Soko, and Jekuthiel was the father of Zanoah.

1 Chronicles 4:18

Jered ... Gedor ... Heber ... Soko ... Jekuthiel ... Zanoah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mered's Judahite wife

The Hebrew text says, "His Judahite wife," but most versions understand "his" to refer to Mered. This refers to a different wife of Mered, in addition to Bithiah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the father of](#)
- [the father of](#)
- [the father of](#) (2)
- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#) (2)

ULT

18 And his Judahite wife bore Jered [the father of](#) Gedor, and Heber [the father of](#) Soco, and Jekuthiel [the father of](#) Zanoah. And these, [the sons of](#) Bithiah the daughter of Pharaoh, whom Mered took.

UST

17-18 Another descendant of Judah was Ezra. Ezra's sons were Jether, Mered, Epher, and Jalon. Mered married Bithiah, who was the daughter of the king of Egypt. The children of Mered and Bithiah were Miriam, Shammai and Ishbah. Ishbah was the father of Eshtemoa. Mered had a wife from Judah. She gave birth to Jered, Heber, and Jekuthiel. Jered was the father of Gedor; Heber was the father of Soko, and Jekuthiel was the father of Zanoah.

1 Chronicles 4:19

Hodiah ... Naham ... Keilah ... Eshtemoa

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Garmite

someone from the Gar people group (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Maakathite

someone from the region of Maacah, which is also called Maacath (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was the mother of two sons](#)
- [One of them was the father of](#)

ULT

¹⁹ [And the sons of](#) the wife of Hodiah, the sister of Naham, [the father of](#) Keilah the Garmite, and Eshtemoa the Maakathite.

UST

¹⁹ Hodiah's wife was Naham's sister. Hodiah's wife [was the mother of two sons](#). [One of them was the father of](#) Keilah from the Gar people group, and the other one was the father of Eshtemoa from the Maacath people group.

1 Chronicles 4:20

Shimon ... Amnon ... Rinnah ... Ben-Hanan ... Tilon ... Ishi ... Zoheth ... Ben-Zoheth

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [And the sons of](#) (2)
- [Amnon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [sons were](#) (2)
- [Amnon](#)

ULT

²⁰ [And the sons of](#) Shimon: [Amnon](#), and Rinnah, Ben-Hanan, and Tilon. [And the sons of](#) Ishi: Zoheth and Ben-Zoheth.

UST

²⁰ Another descendant of Judah was Shimon. Shimon's [sons were Amnon](#), Rinnah, Ben-Hanan, and Tilon. Another descendant of Judah was Ishi. His [sons were](#) Zoheth and Ben-Zoheth.

1 Chronicles 4:21

Shelah ... Er ... Laadah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Lekah ... Mareshah ... Beth Ashbea

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

linen workers

people who made clothing out of a fabric made from crushed reeds
(See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [the father of](#)
- [the father of \(2\)](#)
- [and the clans of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [at Beth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [One of...sons was](#)
- [Judah's](#)
- [the father of](#)
- [the father of \(2\)](#)
- [and the families of](#)
- [those who](#)
- [at Beth Ashbea](#)

ULT

²¹ [The sons of](#) Shelah [the son of](#) Judah:
Er [the father of](#) Lekah, and Laadah [the father of](#) Mareshah, [and the clans of the house of](#) the service of linen [at Beth Ashbea](#),

UST

²¹ [One of](#) Judah's sons was Shelah.
Shelah's [sons were](#) Er [the father of](#) Lekah, Laadah [the father of](#) Mareshah [and the families of those who](#) made things from linen [at Beth Ashbea](#),

1 Chronicles 4:22

Jokim ... Joash ... Saraph

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kozeba ... Jashubi Lehem

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²² and Jokim, and the men of Kozeba, and Joash and Saraph, who ruled in Moab and Jashubi Lehem. And the words are ancient.

UST

²² and Jokim and the men from the city of Kozeba, and Joash and Saraph, two men who ruled in the region of Moab and Jashubi Lehem. All their names and a record of what they did are written in scrolls.

1 Chronicles 4:23

the potters

the people who make containers out of clay

Netaim ... Gederah

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the king](#)

ULT

²³ These, the potters and inhabitants in Netaim and Gederah. With [the king](#) in his work, they lived there.

UST

²³ Some of these descendants of Shelah made pottery and lived in the cities of Netaim and Gederah where they worked for [the king](#).

1 Chronicles 4:24

Nemuel ... Jamin ... Jarib ... Zerah ... Shaul

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Shaul](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [and Shaul](#)

ULT

²⁴ [The sons of](#) Simeon: Nemuel, and Jamin, Jarib, Zerah, [Shaul](#);

UST

²⁴ Simeon's [sons were](#) Nemuel, Jamin, Jarib, Zerah, [and Shaul](#).

1 Chronicles 4:25

Shallum ... Mibsam ... Mishma

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- his son
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- Shaul's son was
- Shallum's son was
- Mibsam's son was

ULT

²⁵ Shallum his son, Mibsam his son,
Mishma his son.

UST

²⁵ Shaul's son was Shallum. Shallum's
son was Mibsam. Mibsam's son was
Mishma.

1 Chronicles 4:26

Mishma ... Hammuel ... Zakkur ... Shimei

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zakkur his grandson

the son of Mishma's son

great-grandson

the son of Mishma's grandson

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The following are...descendants](#)
- [Mishma's son was](#)
- [Hammuel's son was](#)
- [Zaccur's son was](#)

ULT

²⁶ [And the sons of](#) Mishma: Hammuel [his son](#); Zakkur [his son](#); Shimei [his son](#).

UST

²⁶ [The following are](#) Mishma's [descendants](#): [Mishma's son was](#) Hammuel. [Hammuel's son was](#) Zaccur. [Zaccur's son was](#) Shimei.

1 Chronicles 4:27

sixteen sons and six daughters

“16 sons and 6 daughters” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- sons
- the sons of
- but to his brothers
- their clan
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- sons
- children
- the descendants of
- but...his brothers had
- the descendants of Simeon
- his younger brother Judah

ULT

²⁷ And to Shimei, 16 sons and six daughters; but to his brothers, not many sons, and all their clan did not multiply like the sons of Judah.

UST

²⁷ Shimei had 16 sons and six daughters, but none of his brothers had many children. So the descendants of Simeon never were as many as the descendants of his younger brother Judah.

1 Chronicles 4:28

Moladah ... Hazar Shual

These are the names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- in Beersheba
- in Beersheba

Translation Words - UST

- in these cities and towns: Beersheba
- in these cities and towns: Beersheba

ULT

²⁸ And they lived in Beersheba, and Moladah, and Hazar Shual,

UST

²⁸ The descendants of Simeon lived in these cities and towns: Beersheba, Moladah, Hazar Shual,

1 Chronicles 4:29

Bilhah ... Ezem ... Tolad

These are the names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and in Bilhah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Bilhah](#)

ULT

²⁹ [and in Bilhah](#), and in Ezem, and in Tolad,

UST

²⁹ [Bilhah](#), Ezem, Tolad,

1 Chronicles 4:30

Bethuel ... Hormah ... Ziklag

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and in Bethuel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Bethuel](#)

ULT

³⁰ [and in Bethuel](#), and in Hormah, and in Ziklag,

UST

³⁰ [Bethuel](#), Hormah, Ziklag,

1 Chronicles 4:31

Beth Markaboth ... Hazar Susim ... Beth Biri ... Shaaraim

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

ULT

³¹ and in Beth Markaboth, and in Hazar Susim, and in Beth Biri, and in Shaaraim. These, their cities until the reign of [David](#).

UST

³¹ Beth Markaboth, Hazar Susim, Beth Biri, and Shaaraim. They lived in those places until [David](#) became king.

1 Chronicles 4:32

Etam ... Ain ... Rimmon ... Token ... Ashan

These are the names of villages. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their villages](#)
- [and Rimmon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They also lived in villages](#)
- [Rimmon](#)

ULT

³² [And their villages](#): Etam, and Ain, and [Rimmon](#), and Token, and Ashan, five towns,

UST

³² [They also lived in villages](#): Etam, Ain, [Rimmon](#), Token, and Ashan; five in all.

1 Chronicles 4:33

outlying villages

the villages that were near but outside the main town

Baalath

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their villages](#)
- [towns](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [villages](#)
- [towns](#)

ULT

³³ and all [their villages](#) which are around these [towns](#) as far as Baal. These, their settlements, and their genealogy was to them.

UST

³³ There were other [villages](#) which were near those [towns](#), as far southwest as the city of Baalath. Those were the places where they lived, and they wrote down the names of their family members.

1 Chronicles 4:34

Meshobab ... Jamlech ... Joshah ... Amaziah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [Amaziah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Amaziah](#)

ULT

³⁴ And Meshobab, and Jamlech, and Joshah [the son of Amaziah](#),

UST

³⁴⁻³⁸ The men in the following list were the leaders of their clans: Meshobab, Jamlech, Joshah son of Amaziah, Joel, and Jehu son of Joshibiah. Joshibiah was son of Seraiah and grandson of Asiel. Other clan leaders were Elioenai, Jaakobah, Jeshohaiah, Asaiah, Adiel, Jesimiel, Benaiah, and Ziza. Ziza was son of Shiphi and grandson of Allon son of Jedaiah, who was the son of Shimri, who was son of Shemaiah. The members of those families became very numerous.

1 Chronicles 4:35

Joel ... Jehu ... Joshibiah ... Seraiah ... Asiel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Joel](#)
- [and Jehu](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [the son of \(3\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [son \(3\)](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Joel](#)

ULT

³⁵ [and Joel](#), [and Jehu the son of Joshibiah](#), [the son of Seraiah](#), [the son of Asiel](#),

UST

1 Chronicles 4:36

**Elioenai ... Jaakobah ... Jeshohaiah ... Asaiah ...
Adiel ... Jesimiel ... Benaiah**

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Benaiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benaiah](#)

ULT

³⁶ and Elioenai, and Jaakobah, and Jeshohaiah, and Asaiah, and Adiel, and Jesimiel, [and Benaiah](#),

UST

1 Chronicles 4:37

Ziza ... Shiphi ... Allon ... Jedaiah ... Shimri ... Shemaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of
- the son of (3)
- the son of (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- son
- son (3)
- son (2)

ULT

³⁷ and Ziza [the son of Shiphi](#), [the son of Allon](#), [the son of Jedaiah](#), [the son of Shimri](#), [the son of Shemaiah](#).

UST

1 Chronicles 4:38

These mentioned by name were leaders

Alternate translation: "These men were leaders"

their clans increased greatly

The clan is a metonym for the people in the clan. Alternate translation: "the number of people in their clans increased greatly" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [by name](#)
- [and the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

38 These mentioned [by name](#), leaders in their clans [and the house of their fathers](#) broke through into a multitude.

UST

34-38 The men in the following list were the leaders of their clans: Meshobab, Jamlech, Joshah son of Amaziah, Joel, and Jehu son of Joshibiah. Joshibiah was son of Seraiah and grandson of Asiel. Other clan leaders were Elioenai, Jaakobah, Jeshohaiah, Asaiah, Adiel, Jesimiel, Benaiah, and Ziza. Ziza was son of Shiphi and grandson of Allon son of Jedaiah, who was the son of Shimri, who was son of Shemaiah. The members of those families became very numerous.

1 Chronicles 4:39

Gedor

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

pasture for their flocks

an area of land where their flocks could feed on the grass

Translation Words - ULT

- [to seek](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to look for](#)

ULT

³⁹ And they went to the entrance of Gedor, as far as to the east of the valley, [to seek](#) pasture for their flock.

UST

³⁹ They went near the city of Gedor on the east side of the valley [to look for](#) pastureland for their flocks of sheep.

1 Chronicles 4:40

abundant and good pasture

Alternate translation: "pastures with much good food for their animals"

Hamites

a people group, descendants of Ham

Translation Words - ULT

- of hands
- Ham

Translation Words - UST

- expansive
- Noah's son Ham

ULT

⁴⁰ And they found rich and good pasture, and the land was broad of hands, and quiet, and peaceful; for those from Ham had lived there before faces.

UST

⁴⁰ They found good pastureland with plenty of grass. The place was expansive, peaceful, and quiet. In fact, some of the descendants of Noah's son Ham had lived there previously.

1 Chronicles 4:41

Meunites

a people group. Alternate translation: “descendants of Meun” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [by names](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [names](#)

ULT

⁴¹ And these, written [by names](#), came in the days of Hezekiah, [the king of Judah](#), and struck down their tents and the Meunites, who were found there. And they destroyed them completely to this day, and they lived in their place because pasture for their flock was there.

UST

⁴¹ But while Hezekiah [was the king of Judah](#), those leaders of the tribe of Simeon (whose [names](#) were recorded in written accounts) came and fought against the descendants of Ham and destroyed their tents. They also fought against the descendants of Meun who were living there, and they killed all of them. So now there are no descendants of Meun living there. The descendants of Simeon started to live there, because there was good pastureland there for their sheep.

1 Chronicles 4:42

five hundred men

“500 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Pelathiah ... Neariah ... Rephaiah ... Uzziel ... Ishi

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [their heads](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Simeon](#)
- [four sons](#)
- [led](#)

ULT

⁴² And from them, from [the sons of](#) Simeon, they went to Mount Seir, 500 men, and Pelathiah, and Neariah, and Rephaiah, and Uzziel, [the sons of](#) Ishi, [their heads](#).

UST

⁴² From that tribe, from [Simeon](#), Ishi's [four sons](#), Pelathiah, Neariah, Rephaiah, and Uzziel, [led](#) 500 other men and went to the hill country of Edom called Seir.

1 Chronicles 4:43

the rest of the Amalekite refugees

Alternate translation: "the remaining Amalekite refugees"

refugees

people who are forced to leave their home country

to this day

"from then until now." This refers to the day when the author was writing this account.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the rest of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who were still alive](#)

ULT

43 And they struck down [the rest of](#) the Amalekites who escaped, and they have lived there to this day.

4:12 ^[1].

4:13 ^[2] into this verse, believing that it dropped out by a copyist's mistake.

UST

43 They killed the descendants of Amalek [who were still alive](#). From that time until now, the descendants of Simeon have lived in the region of Edom.

1 Chronicles 5

1 Chronicles 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of Jacob's sons who lived east of the Jordan River: Reuben, Gad and Manasseh.

1 Chronicles 5:1

now Reuben

The word “now” is used here to mark the change from the lists of descendants to background information about Reuben. (See: [Background Information](#))

but his birthright was given to the sons of Joseph son of Israel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “but Israel gave Reuben’s birthright to the sons of Joseph, another of Israel’s sons” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Reuben had defiled his father’s couch

This is a polite way to speak about Reuben sleeping with his father’s secondary wife. The couch is the place where a man and his wife would have slept together. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

So he is not recorded as being the oldest son

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “So the family history does not list Reuben as the oldest son” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- to the sons of
- the son of
- the firstborn of
- Israel
- Israel
- his father
- Joseph

Translation Words - UST

- was the oldest son of
- the person named Israel (who was first known as Jacob)
- Israel
- and...had sons of his own
- to the sons of
- a younger son of
- his father’s
- Joseph

ULT

¹ And the sons of Reuben, the firstborn of Israel; for he was the firstborn, but when he defiled the bed of his father, his birthright was given to the sons of Joseph, the son of Israel, and not recorded according to the birthright,

UST

¹ Reuben was the oldest son of the person named Israel (who was first known as Jacob), and Reuben had sons of his own. Reuben’s status of firstborn entitled him to special rights that belonged to firstborn sons. But he slept with his father’s slave wife, so his father gave those rights to the sons of Joseph, a younger son of Israel. The family records do not mention Reuben first, as the firstborn sons typically are.

1 Chronicles 5:2

General Information:

This verse finishes the background information about Reuben. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- among his brothers

Translation Words - UST

- Judah
- than his brothers

ULT

² though Judah was superior among his brothers, and a leader was from him, but the birthright was to Joseph—

UST

² Although Judah became more influential than his brothers, and a ruler descended from Judah, Joseph's family received the rights that belonged to the firstborn.

1 Chronicles 5:3

Hanok ... Pallu ... Hezron ... Karmi

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the firstborn of
- Israel
- Hanok

Translation Words - UST

- Again...sons were
- the person Israel's
- was...oldest son
- Hanok

ULT

³ the sons of Reuben, the firstborn of Israel: Hanok, and Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi.

UST

³ Again, Reuben was the person Israel's oldest son. Reuben's sons were Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi.

1 Chronicles 5:4

Joel ... Shemaiah ... Gog ... Shimei

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- his son
- his son
- his son
- Joel

Translation Words - UST

- Another descendant of Reuben was Joel. Joel
- had descendants
- Joel's son was
- Shemaiah's son was
- Gog's son was

ULT

⁴ The sons of Joel: Shemaiah his son,
Gog his son, Shimei his son,

UST

⁴ Another descendant of Reuben was Joel. Joel had descendants. Joel's son was Shemaiah. Shemaiah's son was Gog. Gog's son was Shimei.

1 Chronicles 5:5

Shimei ... Micah ... Reaiah ... Baal

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Micah
- his son
- his son
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- Shimei's son was
- Micah's son was
- Reaiah's son was
- Micah

ULT

⁵ Micah his son, Reaiah his son, Baal his son,

UST

⁵ Shimei's son was Micah. Micah's son was Reaiah. Reaiah's son was Baal.

1 Chronicles 5:6

Baal ... Beerah ... Tiglath-Pileser

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his son](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [took into exile](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Baal's son was](#)
- [king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [captured him and took him to Assyria](#)

ULT

⁶ Beerah [his son](#), whom Tiglath-Pileser, [the king of Assyria](#), [took into exile](#). He was a leader of the Reubenites.

UST

⁶ [Baal's son was](#) Beerah. Beerah was a leader of the tribe of Reuben. But Tiglath-Pileser [king of Assyria captured him and took him to Assyria](#).

1 Chronicles 5:7

listed according to their genealogical records

This can start a new sentence: "Their genealogical records list them as" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

genealogical records

records that show how people in a family are related to each other

Jeiel ... Zechariah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And his brothers](#)
- [the head](#)
- [and Zechariah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The names...The names written were](#)
- [the leader](#)
- [then Zechariah](#)

ULT

⁷ [And his brothers](#) by his clans in the genealogy of their generations: [the head](#) Jeiel, [and Zechariah](#),

UST

⁷ [The names](#) of these clans are listed here according to what is written in their family records. [The names written were](#): Jeiel ([the leader](#)), [then Zechariah](#),

1 Chronicles 5:8

Bela ... Azaz ... Shema

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Aroer ... Nebo ... Baal Meon

These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [the son of \(3\)](#)
- [Joel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [son of \(2\)](#)
- [son of \(3\)](#)
- [Joel](#)

ULT

⁸ and Bela [the son of](#) Azaz, [the son of](#) Shema, [the son of](#) Joel; he lived in Aroer, and as far as Nebo and Baal Meon,

UST

⁸ and then Bela [son of](#) Azaz, [son of](#) Shema, [son of](#) Joel. Reuben's clan lived near the city of Aroer as far north as the city of Nebo and the city of Baal Meon.

1 Chronicles 5:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁹ and to the east he lived as far as the entrance of the wilderness extending to the Euphrates River; for their livestock multiplied in the land of Gilead.

UST

⁹ Some of them lived further east, as far as the edge of the desert that extends to the Euphrates River. They moved there because the amount of their cattle outgrew the pastureland for them in the region of Gilead.

1 Chronicles 5:10

the Hagrites

This is a name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

lived in the Hagrites' tents

The tents are a synecdoche for the land and the buildings on the land. Alternate translation: "took over all the Hagrites' land and buildings" or "lived in all the Hagrite territory" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [and they fell](#)
- [into their hand](#)
- [the face of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Saul](#)
- [and defeated them](#)
- [and defeated them](#)
- [the area east of](#)

ULT

10 And in the days of [Saul](#), they made war with the Hagrites [and they fell into their hand](#). And they lived in their tents over all [the face of](#) the east of Gilead.

UST

10 When [Saul](#) was king of Israel, the men in the tribe of Reuben fought against the descendants of Hagar [and defeated them](#). After that, they lived in the tents that the descendants of Hagar had lived in previously, in all [the area east of](#) the region of Gilead.

1 Chronicles 5:11

Salekah

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [Bashan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The tribe of](#)
- [Bashan](#)

ULT

11 [And the sons of](#) Gad lived opposite them in the land of [Bashan](#) as far as Salekah:

UST

11 [The tribe of](#) Gad lived near the tribe of Reuben in the region of [Bashan](#), all the way east to the city of Salekah.

1 Chronicles 5:12

Joel ... Shapham ... Janai ... Shaphat

These are names of men.

Translation Words - ULT

- Joel
- the head
- in Bashan

Translation Words - UST

- Joel
- was their leader...other leaders were
- in Bashan

ULT

¹² Joel the head, and Shapham the second, and Janai, and Shaphat in Bashan.

UST

¹² Joel was their leader; Shapham was second-in-command; other leaders were Janai and Shaphat in Bashan.

1 Chronicles 5:13

Michael ... Meshullam ... Sheba ... Jorai ... Jakan ... Zia ... Eber

These are names of men.

Translation Words - ULT

- And their brothers
- according to the house of
- their fathers
- Michael

Translation Words - UST

- Other members of the tribe...whose leaders were
- belonged to...clans
- belonged to...clans
- Michael

ULT

¹³ And their brothers, according to the house of their fathers: Michael, and Meshullam, and Sheba, and Jorai, and Jakan, and Zia, and Eber, seven.

UST

¹³ Other members of the tribe belonged to seven clans, whose leaders were Michael, Meshullam, Sheba, Jorai, Jakan, Zia, and Eber.

1 Chronicles 5:14

Abihail ... Huri ... Jaroah ... Gilead ... Michael ... Jeshishai ... Jahdo ... Buz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- the son of (4)
- the son of (5)
- the son of (6)
- the son of (7)
- Michael

Translation Words - UST

- descendants of
- was the son of
- was the son of (2)
- was the son of (3)
- was son of (4)
- was the son of (5)
- was the son of (6)
- was the son of (7)
- Michael, Michael

ULT

¹⁴ These, [the sons of](#) Abihail, [the son of](#) Huri, [the son of](#) Jaroah, [the son of](#) Gilead, [the son of](#) Michael, [the son of](#) Jeshisha, [the son of](#) Jahdo, [the son of](#) Buz.

UST

¹⁴ They were [descendants of](#) Abihail. Abihail [was the son of](#) Huri, Huri [was the son of](#) Jaroah, Jaroah [was the son of](#) Gilead, Gilead [was son of](#) Michael, Michael [was the son of](#) Jeshishai, Jeshishai [was the son of](#) Jahdo, and Jahdo [was the son of](#) Buz.

1 Chronicles 5:15

Ahi ... Abdiel ... Guni

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- head
- of the house of
- their fathers

Translation Words - UST

- was...son
- was...son (2)
- Ahi was the leader of
- their clan
- their clan

ULT

¹⁵ Ahi, the son of Abdiel, the son of Guni, head of the house of their fathers.

UST

¹⁵ Ahi was Abdiel's son. Abdiel was Guni's son. Ahi was the leader of their clan.

1 Chronicles 5:16

They lived

Alternate translation: "The tribe of Gad lived"

the pasturelands

the areas of land where animals feed on grass

Translation Words - ULT

- in Bashan

Translation Words - UST

- and Bashan

ULT

16 And they lived in Gilead, in Bashan, and in its daughters, and in all the pasturelands of Sharon as far as their borders.

UST

16 The descendants of Gad lived in the towns in the regions of Gilead and Bashan, and on all the pastureland throughout the Plain of Sharon.

1 Chronicles 5:17

All these were listed by genealogical records

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Genealogical records listed them all" or "The records of their family's ancestry listed them all" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

All these

It is not clear how many of the preceding people this refers to.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jotham
- the king of
- the king of (2)
- Judah
- Jeroboam
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Jotham
- was the king of
- was the king of (2)
- the southern kingdom, Judah
- Jeroboam
- the northern kingdom, Israel

ULT

¹⁷ All of them were listed in the genealogies in the days of [Jotham, the king of Judah](#), and in the days of [Jeroboam, the king of Israel](#).

UST

¹⁷ Scribes wrote all of those names in the records of the clans of Gad during the time that [Jotham was the king of the southern kingdom, Judah](#), and [Jeroboam was the king of the northern kingdom, Israel](#).

These are the armies of the tribes that lived east of the Jordan River.

1 Chronicles 5:18

Reubenites

This refers to the people from the tribe of Reuben. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Gadites

This refers to the people from the tribe of Gad.

44,760 soldiers

“forty-four thousand seven hundred and sixty soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

who carried shield and sword, and who drew the bow

The soldiers are described as skilled in warfare by the weapons they carried. Alternate translation: “who were all trained to fight well in battles” (See: [Metonymy Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [strength](#)
- [who went out to](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [There were...in the tribes of](#)
- [descended from strong men](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [descended from strong men](#)

ULT

18 [The sons of](#) Reuben, and the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh from [sons of strength](#), men who carried shield and sword, and who bent the bow, and who were trained in battle, 44,760 [who went out to war](#).

UST

18 [There were](#) 44,760 [soldiers descended from strong men in the tribes of](#) Reuben and Gad and the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh. They all carried shields and swords and bows and arrows. They were all trained to fight in battles.

1 Chronicles 5:19

Hagrites ... Jetur ... Naphish ... Nodab

These are the names of people groups.

ULT

¹⁹ And they made war with the Hagrites, and Jetur, and Naphish, and Nodab.

UST

¹⁹ They attacked the descendants of Hagar and the people in the cities of Jetur, Naphish, and Nodab.

1 Chronicles 5:20

the Israelites cried out to God

Alternate translation: "the Israelites prayed to God for help"

Translation Words - ULT

- into their hand
- to God

Translation Words - UST

- defeat...to
- to...God

ULT

²⁰ And they were helped against them, and the Hagriles were given into their hand and all who were with them. For they cried out to God in the battle, and he granted their entreaty because they trusted in him.

UST

²⁰ God enabled the men from those three tribes to defeat the descendants of Hagar and all those who were helping them because the men from those three tribes prayed to God during the battles, requesting he help them. So he helped them because they trusted in him.

1 Chronicles 5:21

They captured their animals

Alternate translation: "The Israelites captured the Hagrites' animals"

fifty thousand camels

"50,000 camels" (See: [Numbers](#))

250,000 sheep

"two hundred and fifty thousand sheep" (See: [Numbers](#))

two thousand donkeys

"2,000 donkeys" (See: [Numbers](#))

100,000 men

"one hundred thousand men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their camels](#)
- [and sheep](#)
- [people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [camels](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [also...people](#)

ULT

21 And they took captive their livestock: [their camels](#) 50,000, [and sheep](#) 250,000, and donkeys 2,000, and living [people](#) 100,000.

UST

21 They took the animals that belonged to the descendants of Hagar: 50,000 [camels](#), 250,000 [sheep](#), and 2,000 donkeys. They [also](#) captured 100,000 [people](#).

1 Chronicles 5:22

the battle was from God

God's help in battle is described as if he were the one who caused the battle. Alternate translation: "God helped them"

Translation Words - ULT

- the exile

Translation Words - UST

- the army of Assyria captured them and took them away to the east

ULT

22 For many fell slain because the battle was from God. And they lived in their place until the exile.

UST

22 But many descendants of Hagar died because God helped the people of the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and Manasseh defeat the descendants of Hagar. After that, those three tribes lived in that area until the army of Assyria captured them and took them away to the east.

1 Chronicles 5:23

Baal Hermon ... Senir

These are the names of mountains. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [from Bashan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who belonged to](#)
- [Bashan east of the Jordan River](#)

ULT

²³ [And the sons of](#) the half tribe of Manasseh lived in the land [from Bashan](#) as far as Baal Hermon and Senir, and Mount Hermon. They multiplied.

UST

²³ There were many people [who belonged to](#) the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh. They lived in the region of [Bashan east of the Jordan River](#), as far north as Baal Hermon, Senir, and Mount Hermon.

1 Chronicles 5:24

Epher ... Ishi ... Eliel ... Azriel ... Jeremiah ... Hodaviah ... Jahdiel

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

Translation Words - ULT

- the heads of
- heads
- the house of
- of the house of
- their fathers
- their fathers
- and Jeremiah
- mighty of
- strength
- names

Translation Words - UST

- Their clan
- of their clans
- Their clan
- of their clans
- leaders
- and leaders
- Jeremiah
- mighty...soldiers
- mighty...soldiers
- and famous

ULT

²⁴ And these, [the heads of the house of their fathers](#): even Epher, and Ishi, and Eliel, and Azriel, [and Jeremiah](#), and Hodaviah, and Jahdiel, men [mighty of strength](#), men of [names](#), [heads of the house of their fathers](#).

UST

²⁴ [Their clan leaders](#) were Epher, Ishi, Eliel, Azriel, [Jeremiah](#), Hodaviah, and Jahdiel. They were all [mighty and famous soldiers and leaders of their clans](#).

1 Chronicles 5:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- against the God of
- the gods of
- God
- their fathers
- the peoples of

Translation Words - UST

- against God
- the gods
- God
- the one whom their ancestors had worshiped
- that the people of...had worshiped

ULT

²⁵ And they acted faithlessly against the God of their fathers, and they acted like a harlot after the gods of the peoples of the land whom God had destroyed before their faces.

UST

²⁵ But they sinned against God, the one whom their ancestors had worshiped. They worshiped the gods that the people of that region had worshiped, the people whom God had enabled them to destroy.

1 Chronicles 5:26

Pul ... Tiglath-Pileser

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Reubenites ... Gadites

These are the names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Halah ... Habor ... Hara

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Gozan

This is the name of a river. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to this day

See how you translated this phrase in [1 Chronicles 4:43](#)

Translation Words - ULT

- the God of
- Israel
- the spirit of
- the spirit of
- the king of
- the king of
- Assyria
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- the God whom...worshiped
- the Israelites
- the king of
- king, kingship
- Assyria
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- to want to conquer those tribes
- spirit, wind, breath

ULT

²⁶ And the God of Israel stirred up the spirit of Pul, the king of Assyria, and the spirit of Tilgath-Pileser, the king of Assyria. And he took them into exile, namely the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh. And he brought them to Halah, and Habor, and Hara, and the river of Gozan until this day.

UST

²⁶ So the God whom the Israelites worshiped incited Pul, the king of Assyria, to want to conquer those tribes. Pul's other name was Tiglath-Pileser. His army captured the people of the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh, and took them to various places in Assyria: Halah, Habor, Hara and near the Gozan River. They have lived in those places from that time to the present time.

1 Chronicles 6

1 Chronicles 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of Levi.

1 Chronicles 6:1

Gershon ... Kohath ... Merari

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Levi](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Levi's](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

¹ [The sons of Levi](#): Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

UST

¹ [Levi's sons were](#) Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

1 Chronicles 6:2

Kothath ... Amram ... Izhar ... Hebron ... Uzziel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)

ULT

² [And the sons of](#) Kohath: Amram, Izhar, and Hebron, and Uzziel.

UST

² Kohath's [sons were](#) Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

1 Chronicles 6:3

Amram ... Nadab ... Abihu ... Eleazar ... Ithamar

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- And the sons of (2)
- Aaron
- Aaron
- and Moses
- and Miriam
- Eleazar

Translation Words - UST

- children were
- sons were (2)
- Miriam
- Aaron
- Aaron's
- and Moses
- Eleazar

ULT

³ And the sons of Amram: Aaron, and Moses, and Miriam. And the sons of Aaron: Nadab, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

UST

³ Amram's children were Miriam, Aaron, and Moses. Aaron's sons were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

1 Chronicles 6:4

Eleazar ... Abishua

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Eleazar](#)
- [Phinehas](#)
- [Phinehas](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Eleazar](#)
- [Phinehas](#)
- [Phinehas](#)

ULT

⁴ [Eleazar](#) fathered [Phinehas](#). [Phinehas](#) fathered Abishua.

UST

⁴ [Eleazar](#) was the father of [Phinehas](#). [Phinehas](#) was the father of Abishua.

1 Chronicles 6:5

Abishua ... Bukki ... Uzzi

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵ And Abishua fathered Bukki, and Bukki fathered Uzzi.

UST

⁵ Abishua was the father of Bukki. Bukki was the father of Uzzi.

1 Chronicles 6:6

Uzzi ... Zerahiah ... Meraioth

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶ And Uzzi fathered Zerahiah, and Zerahiah fathered Meraioth.

UST

⁶ Uzzi was the father of Zerahiah. Zerahiah was the father of Meraioth.

1 Chronicles 6:7

Meraioth ... Amariah ... Ahitub

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷ Meraioth fathered Amariah, and Amariah fathered Ahitub.

UST

⁷ Meraioth was the father of Amariah. Amariah was the father of Ahitub.

1 Chronicles 6:8

Ahitub ... Zadok ... Ahimaaz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Zadok](#)
- [and Zadok](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Zadok](#)
- [Zadok](#)

ULT

⁸ And Ahitub fathered [Zadok](#), and [Zadok](#) fathered Ahimaaz.

UST

⁸ Ahitub was the father of [Zadok](#). [Zadok](#) was the father of Ahimaaz.

1 Chronicles 6:9

Ahimaaz ... Johanan

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁹ And Ahimaaz fathered Azariah, and Azariah fathered Johanan.

UST

⁹ Ahimaaz was the father of Azariah. Azariah was the father of Johanan.

1 Chronicles 6:10

Solomon built

The reader should understand that Solomon probably hired workers to do the work. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [served as priest](#)
- [in the house](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a priest](#)
- [in the temple](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

ULT

10 And Johanan fathered Azariah, he who [served as priest in the house](#) that [Solomon](#) built [in Jerusalem](#).

UST

10 Johanan was the father of Azariah. Azariah was [a priest in the temple](#) that [Solomon](#) commanded to be built [in Jerusalem](#).

1 Chronicles 6:11

Amariah ... Ahitub

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹¹ And Azariah fathered Amariah, and Amariah fathered Ahitub.

UST

¹¹ Azariah was the father of Amariah. Amariah was the father of Ahitub.

1 Chronicles 6:12

Ahitub ... Zadok ... Shallum

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Zadok](#)
- [and Zadok](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Zadok](#)
- [Zadok](#)

ULT

¹² And Ahitub fathered [Zadok](#), and [Zadok](#) fathered Shallum.

UST

¹² Ahitub was the father of [Zadok](#). [Zadok](#) was the father of Shallum.

1 Chronicles 6:13

Hilkiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Hilkiah](#)
- [and Hilkiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Hilkiah](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)

ULT

¹³ And Shallum fathered [Hilkiah](#), and [Hilkiah](#) fathered Azariah.

UST

¹³ Shallum was the father of [Hilkiah](#). [Hilkiah](#) was the father of Azariah.

1 Chronicles 6:14

Seraiah ... Jozadak

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁴ And Azariah fathered Seraiah, and Seraiah fathered Jozadak.

UST

¹⁴ Azariah was the father of Seraiah. Seraiah was the father of Jozadak.

1 Chronicles 6:15

exiled Judah and Jerusalem by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar

The power Nebuchadnezzar has through his army is described as the part of his body (“hand”) he uses to direct his army. Alternate translation: “allowed Nebuchadnezzar’s army to defeat the armies of Judah and Jerusalem and take the people into captivity” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Judah
- and Jerusalem
- in the hand of
- Nebuchadnezzar

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- King Nebuchadnezzar’s army
- King Nebuchadnezzar’s army
- many people...and other places in Judah
- in Jerusalem

ULT

¹⁵ And Jozadak went when Yahweh took into exile Judah and Jerusalem in the hand of Nebuchadnezzar.

UST

¹⁵ Jozadak was forced to leave his home when Yahweh sent King Nebuchadnezzar’s army to capture many people in Jerusalem and other places in Judah and compel them to go to Babylonia.

1 Chronicles 6:16

Gershon ... Kohath ... Merari

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Levi](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Levi's](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

¹⁶ [The sons of Levi](#): Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

UST

¹⁶ [Levi's sons were](#) Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

1 Chronicles 6:17

Libni ... Shimei

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the names](#)
- [of the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The names of](#)
- [sons](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And these, [the names of the sons of](#) Gershon: Libni and Shimei.

UST

¹⁷ [The names of](#) Gershon's [sons](#) were Libni and Shimei.

1 Chronicles 6:18

Amram ... Izhar ... Hebron ... Uzziel

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 6:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)

ULT

¹⁸ [And the sons of](#) Kohath: Amram, and Izhar, and Hebron, and Uzziel.

UST

¹⁸ Kohath's [sons were](#) Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

1 Chronicles 6:19

Merari ... Mahli ... Mushi

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- the clans of
- the Levites
- according to their fathers

Translation Words - UST

- sons were
- the descendants of Levi, who became leaders of their clans
- the descendants of Levi, who became leaders of their clans
- the descendants of Levi, who became leaders of their clans

ULT

¹⁹ The sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi.
And these, the clans of the Levites
according to their fathers.

UST

¹⁹ Merari's sons were Mahli and Mushi.
Here is a list of the descendants of Levi,
who became leaders of their clans.

1 Chronicles 6:20

Libni ... Jahath ... Zimmah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [oldest son was](#)
- [Libni's son was](#)
- [Jahath's son was](#)

ULT

²⁰ Of Gershon: Libni [his son](#), Jahath [his son](#), Zimmah [his son](#),

UST

²⁰ Gershon's [oldest son was](#) Libni.
[Libni's son was](#) Jahath. [Jahath's son was](#) Zimmah.

1 Chronicles 6:21

Joah ... Iddo ... Zerah ... Jeatherai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Zimmah's son was](#)
- [Joah's son was](#)
- [Iddo's son was](#)
- [Zerah's son was](#)

ULT

²¹ Joah [his son](#), Iddo [his son](#), Zerah [his son](#), Jeatherai [his son](#).

UST

²¹ [Zimmah's son was](#) Joah. [Joah's son was](#) Iddo. [Iddo's son was](#) Zerah. [Zerah's son was](#) Jeatherai.

1 Chronicles 6:22

Amminadab ... Korah ... Assir

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- his son
- his son
- his son
- Korah

Translation Words - UST

- Another line of descendants from...started with
- his son
- Amminadab's son was
- Korah's son was
- Korah

ULT

²² The sons of Kohath: Amminadab his son, Korah his son, Assir his son,

UST

²² Another line of descendants from Kohath started with Amminadab his son. Amminadab's son was Korah. Korah's son was Assir.

1 Chronicles 6:23

Elkanah ... Ebiasaph ... Assir

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Assir's son was](#)
- [Elkanah's son was](#)
- [Ebiasaph's son was](#)

ULT

²³ Elkanah [his son](#), and Ebiasaph [his son](#), and Assir [his son](#),

UST

²³ [Assir's son was](#) Elkanah. [Elkanah's son was](#) Ebiasaph. [Ebiasaph's son was](#) Assir.

1 Chronicles 6:24

Tahath ... Uriel ... Uzziah ... Shaul

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- his son
- his son
- his son
- and Shaul

Translation Words - UST

- Assir's son was
- Tahath's son was
- Uriel's son was
- Uzziah's son was
- Shaul

ULT

²⁴ Tahath [his son](#), Uriel [his son](#), Uzziah [his son](#), and Shaul [his son](#).

UST

²⁴ [Assir's son was](#) Tahath. [Tahath's son was](#) Uriel. [Uriel's son was](#) Uzziah. [Uzziah's son was](#) Shaul.

1 Chronicles 6:25

Elkanah ... Amasai ... Ahimoth

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)

ULT

²⁵ [And the sons of](#) Elkanah: Amasai, and Ahimoth,

UST

²⁵ Elkanah's [sons were](#) Amasai, Ahimoth,

1 Chronicles 6:26

Elkanah ... Zophai ... Nahath

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- his son
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- and a son also named Elkanah
- Elkanah's son was
- Zophai's son was

ULT

²⁶ Elkanah, his son Elkanah, Zophai his son, and Nahath his son,

UST

²⁶ and a son also named Elkanah.
Elkanah's son was Zophai. Zophai's son was Nahath.

1 Chronicles 6:27

Eliab ... Jeroham ... Elkanah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- his son
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- Nahath's son was
- Eliab's son was
- Jeroham's son was

ULT

²⁷ Eliab [his son](#), Jeroham [his son](#),
Elkanah [his son](#). ^[1]

UST

²⁷ [Nahath's son was](#) Eliab. [Eliab's son was](#) Jeroham. [Jeroham's son was](#) Elkanah.

1 Chronicles 6:28

Joel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

second-born

the second son

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [Abijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Samuel](#)
- [had sons](#)
- [Abijah](#)

ULT

²⁸ [And the sons of Samuel](#): the firstborn and the second, [Abijah](#).

UST

²⁸ [Samuel had sons](#): his oldest son (Joel) and his other son [Abijah](#).

1 Chronicles 6:29

Merari ... Mahli ... Libni ... Shimei ... Uzzah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- his son
- his son
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- descendants started with
- Mahli's son was
- Libni's son was
- Shimei's son was

ULT

²⁹ The sons of Merari: Mahli, Libni his son, Shimei his son, Uzzah his son,

UST

²⁹ Merari's descendants started with Mahli. Mahli's son was Libni. Libni's son was Shimei. Shimei's son was Uzzah.

1 Chronicles 6:30

Shimea ... Haggiah ... Asaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- his son
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- Uzzah's son was
- Shimea's son was
- Haggiah's son was

ULT

³⁰ Shimea [his son](#), Haggiah [his son](#),
Asaiah [his son](#),

UST

³⁰ [Uzzah's son was](#) Shimea. [Shimea's son was](#) Haggiah. [Haggiah's son was](#) Asaiah.

1 Chronicles 6:31

the house of Yahweh

“where people met with Yahweh” This was a tent in David’s time.

the ark came to rest there

Alternate translation: “the people of Israel placed the ark there”

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- set up
- hands of
- in the house of
- Yahweh
- the Box

Translation Words - UST

- the sacred chest
- King David
- appointed
- to be in charge of
- in the place where the people worshiped Yahweh
- in the place where the people worshiped Yahweh

ULT

³¹ And these whom David set up over hands of song in the house of Yahweh, after the Box came to rest.

UST

³¹ After the sacred chest was brought to Jerusalem, King David appointed some of the men who were descendants of Levi to be in charge of the music in the place where the people worshiped Yahweh.

1 Chronicles 6:32

the tabernacle, the tent of meeting

This could mean: (1) that “the tent of meeting” and “the tabernacle” are two names for the same thing or (2) the tabernacle is part of the tent of meeting, “the sanctuary of the tent of meeting”

They fulfilled their duties

Alternate translation: “They did their work” or “They did their various kinds of work”

according to the instructions given to them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “according to the instructions that David gave them” or “according to the instructions they received” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the ones ministering](#)
- [the tabernacle](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [according to their judgments](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Those musicians made music](#)
- [the sacred tent](#)
- [which was also called the tent of meeting](#)
- [Solomon's workers](#)
- [the temple of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [the instructions that David had given them](#)

ULT

³² And they were [the ones ministering](#) to the face of [the tabernacle](#), the tent of [meeting](#), with song until [Solomon](#) built [the house of Yahweh in Jerusalem](#). And they stood [according to their judgments](#) over their service.

UST

³² [Those musicians made music in the sacred tent, which was also called the tent of meeting](#), by singing and playing their instruments, and they continued to do that until [Solomon's workers](#) built [the temple of Yahweh in Jerusalem](#). In all their work, they obeyed [the instructions that David had given them](#).

1 Chronicles 6:33

These were those

Alternate translation: "These were the musicians"

Kohathites

This is the name of a people group, the descendants of Kohath (1 Chronicles 6:1). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

going back in time

This means the list is going in order from the most recent to the oldest.

Heman

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the ones standing](#)
- [and their sons](#)
- [From the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [Joel](#)
- [Samuel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the musicians](#)
- [and their sons](#)
- [From...descendants](#)
- [Heman was...son](#)
- [Joel was...son \(2\)](#)
- [Joel's](#)
- [Samuel's](#)

ULT

³³ And these, [the ones standing and their sons](#). [From the sons of the Kohathites: Heman the singer, the son of Joel, the son of Samuel,](#)

UST

³³ Here is a list of [the musicians and their sons](#): From Kohath's [descendants](#) there was Heman, the leader of the singers. [Heman was Joel's son. Joel was Samuel's son.](#)

1 Chronicles 6:34

Jeroham ... Eliel ... Toah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Elkanah

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 6:25](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)
- [the son of](#) (3)
- [the son of](#) (4)

Translation Words - UST

- [Samuel was...son](#)
- [Elkanah was...son](#) (2)
- [Jeroham was...son](#) (3)
- [Eliel was...son](#) (4)

ULT

³⁴ [the son of](#) Elkanah, [the son of](#) Jeroham, [the son of](#) Eliel, [the son of](#) Toah,

UST

³⁴ [Samuel was](#) Elkanah's [son](#). [Elkanah was](#) Jeroham's [son](#). [Jeroham was](#) Eliel's [son](#). [Eliel was](#) Toah's [son](#).

1 Chronicles 6:35

Toah ... Zuph ... Mahath

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Elkanah ... Amasai

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 6:25](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)
- [the son of](#) (3)
- [the son of](#) (4)

Translation Words - UST

- [Toah was...son](#)
- [Zuph was...son](#) (2)
- [Elkanah was...son](#) (3)
- [Mahath was...son](#) (4)

ULT

³⁵ [the son of](#) Zuph, [the son of](#) Elkanah,
[the son of](#) Mahath, [the son of](#) Amasai,

UST

³⁵ [Toah was](#) Zuph's [son](#). [Zuph was](#)
Elkanah's [son](#). [Elkanah was](#) Mahath's
[son](#). [Mahath was](#) Amasai's [son](#).

1 Chronicles 6:36

Amasai ... Elkanah

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 6:25](#).

Joel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [the son of \(3\)](#)
- [the son of \(4\)](#)
- [Joel](#)
- [Zephaniah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Amasai was...son](#)
- [Elkanah was...son \(2\)](#)
- [Joel was...son \(3\)](#)
- [Azariah was...son \(4\)](#)
- [Joel's](#)
- [Zephaniah's](#)

ULT

³⁶ [the son of](#) Elkanah, [the son of](#) Joel, [the son of](#) Azariah, [the son of](#) Zephaniah,

UST

³⁶ [Amasai was](#) Elkanah's son. Elkanah [was Joel's son](#). Joel [was Azariah's son](#). Azariah [was Zephaniah's son](#).

1 Chronicles 6:37

Tahath ... Assir ... Ebiasaph

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- the son of (4)
- Korah

Translation Words - UST

- Zephaniah was...son
- Tahath was...son (2)
- Assir was...son (3)
- Ebiasaph was...son (4)
- Korah's

ULT

³⁷ the son of Tahath, the son of Assir,
the son of Ebiasaph, the son of Korah,

UST

³⁷ Zephaniah was Tahath's son. Tahath
was Assir's son. Assir was Ebiasaph's
son. Ebiasaph was Korah's son.

1 Chronicles 6:38

Izhar ... Kohath

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- the son of (4)
- Levi
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Korah was...son
- Izhar was...son (2)
- Kohath was...son (3)
- was the son of (4)
- Levi's...Levi
- Jacob (who was later named Israel)

ULT

³⁸ the son of Izhar, the son of Kohath,
the son of Levi, the son of Israel.

UST

³⁸ Korah was Izhar's son. Izhar was
Kohath's son. Kohath was Levi's son.
Levi was the son of Jacob (who was later
named Israel).

1 Chronicles 6:39

Heman's colleague

Alternate translation: "Heman's fellow worker"

who stood at his right hand

The authority of a person is described by where they stand. The right side of a person is the place where the person with the most authority stands. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Berekiah ... Shimea

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And his brother](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [who stood](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Heman's helper was](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [His group stood](#)
- [was...son](#)
- [Berekiah was...son \(2\)](#)

ULT

39 [And his brother Asaph who stood](#) at his right hand, [Asaph, the son of Berekiah,](#) [the son of Shimea,](#)

UST

39 [Heman's helper was Asaph.](#) [His group stood](#) at the right side of Heman. [Asaph was Berekiah's son.](#) [Berekiah was Shimea's son.](#)

1 Chronicles 6:40

Shimea ... Michael ... Baaseiah ... Malkijah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [the son of \(3\)](#)
- [Michael](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Shimea was...son](#)
- [Michael was...son \(2\)](#)
- [Baaseiah was...son \(3\)](#)
- [Michael's](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ [the son of Michael, the son of Baaseiah, the son of Malkijah,](#)

UST

⁴⁰ [Shimea was Michael's son. Michael was Baaseiah's son. Baaseiah was Malkijah's son.](#)

1 Chronicles 6:41

Malkijah ... Ethni ... Zerah ... Adaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [Malkijah was...son](#)
- [Ethni was...son](#)
- [Zerah was...son](#) (2)

ULT

⁴¹ [the son of](#) Ethni, [the son of](#) Zerah, [the son of](#) Adaiah,

UST

⁴¹ [Malkijah was](#) Ethni's son. Ethni was Zerah's [son](#). [Zerah was](#) Adaiah's son.

1 Chronicles 6:42

Adaiah ... Ethan ... Zimmah ... Shimei

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)

Translation Words - UST

- Adaiah was...son
- Ethan was...son (2)
- Zimmah was...son (3)

ULT

⁴² the son of Ethan, the son of Zimmah,
the son of Shimei,

UST

⁴² Adaiah was Ethan's son. Ethan was
Zimmah's son. Zimmah was Shimei's
son.

1 Chronicles 6:43

Shimei ... Jahath ... Gershon

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- Levi

Translation Words - UST

- Shimei was...son
- Jahath was...son (2)
- Gershon was...son (3)
- Levi's

ULT

⁴³ the son of Jahath, the son of Gershon, the son of Levi.

UST

⁴³ Shimei was Jahath's son. Jahath was Gershon's son. Gershon was Levi's son.

1 Chronicles 6:44

General Information:

See: [How to Translate Names](#)

At Heman's left hand

Alternate translation: "Standing on Heman's left side"

his colleagues

Alternate translation: "his fellow workers"

Heman ... Ethan

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 2:6](#).

Merari

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

Kishi ... Abdi ... Malluk

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [the son of \(3\)](#)
- [their brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [A group of singers from](#)
- [Ethan was...son](#)
- [Kishi was...son \(2\)](#)
- [Abdi was...son \(3\)](#)
- [helped Heman and Asaph](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ [And the sons of Merari, their brothers](#), on the left: [Ethan, the son of Kishi, the son of Abdi, the son of Malluk](#),

UST

⁴⁴ [A group of singers from Merari's family helped Heman and Asaph](#). They stood at the left of Heman. The leader of this group was Ethan. [Ethan was Kishi's son. Kishi was Abdi's son. Abdi was Malluk's son.](#)

1 Chronicles 6:45

Malluk ... Hashabiah ... Amaziah ... Hilkihah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- Amaziah
- Hilkihah

Translation Words - UST

- Malluk was...son
- Hashabiah was...son
- Uzziah was...son (2)
- Uzziah's
- Hilkihah's

ULT

⁴⁵ the son of Hashabiah, the son of Amaziah, the son of Hilkihah,

UST

⁴⁵ Malluk was Hashabiah's son. Hashabiah was Uzziah's son. Uzziah was Hilkihah's son.

1 Chronicles 6:46

Hilkiah ... Amzi ... Bani ... Shemer

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of
- the son of (2)

Translation Words - UST

- Hilkiah was...son
- Amzi was...son
- Bani was...son (2)

ULT

⁴⁶ the son of Amzi, the son of Bani, the son of Shemer,

UST

⁴⁶ Hilkiah was Amzi's son. Amzi was Bani's son. Bani was Shemer's son.

1 Chronicles 6:47

Mahli ... Mushi

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 6:19](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- the son of (4)
- Levi

Translation Words - UST

- Shemer was...son
- Mahli was...son (2)
- Mushi was...son (3)
- Merari was...son (4)
- Levi's

ULT

⁴⁷ the son of Mahli, the son of Mushi,
the son of Merari, the son of Levi.

UST

⁴⁷ Shemer was Mahli's son. Mahli was
Mushi's son. Mushi was Merari's son.
Merari was Levi's son.

1 Chronicles 6:48

Their associates, the Levites, were assigned to do

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “God had assigned their associates, the Levites, to do” or “It was the duty of their fellow workers, the Levites, to do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their brothers](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [the tabernacle of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the other descendants of](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [in the sacred tent](#)
- [the place where the people worshiped God](#)
- [the place where the people worshiped God](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ [And their brothers, the Levites](#), were set to all the service of [the tabernacle of the house of God](#).

UST

⁴⁸ David appointed [the other descendants of Levi](#) to do other work [in the sacred tent, the place where the people worshiped God](#).

1 Chronicles 6:49

These offerings made atonement for Israel

Alternate translation: "They offered these things to make atonement for the sins of the people of Israel"

Translation Words - ULT

- And Aaron
- and his sons
- had commanded
- the altar of
- the altar of
- the Holy
- of Holies
- Israel
- Moses
- the servant of
- God

Translation Words - UST

- Aaron
- and his descendants
- God
- had given to them
- the altar
- they burned incense...another altar
- the people of Israel
- in the very holy place in the sacred tent
- in the very holy place in the sacred tent
- Moses
- who served...well

ULT

49 And Aaron and his sons made sacrifices on the altar of burnt offering and on the altar of incense for all the work of the Holy of Holies and to make atonement for Israel, according to all that Moses the servant of God had commanded.

UST

49 Aaron and his descendants were the ones who placed on the altar the sacrifices that were to be burned completely, and they burned incense on another altar. Those sacrifices were in order that Yahweh would no longer be angry with the people of Israel for having sinned. Those men also did other work in the very holy place in the sacred tent, obeying the instructions that Moses, who served God well, had given to them.

1 Chronicles 6:50

Aaron's descendants are reckoned as follows

Alternate translation: "These were the descendants of Aaron"

Eleazar ... Abishua

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- his son
- his son
- his son
- Aaron
- Eleazar
- Phinehas

Translation Words - UST

- the descendants of
- Aaron's son was
- Eleazar's son was
- Phinehas's son was
- Aaron
- Eleazar
- Phinehas

ULT

⁵⁰ And these, the sons of Aaron: Eleazar his son, Phinehas his son, Abishua his son,

UST

⁵⁰ These were the descendants of Aaron: Aaron's son was Eleazar. Eleazar's son was Phinehas. Phinehas's son was Abishua.

1 Chronicles 6:51

Bukki ... Uzzi ... Zerahiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- his son
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- Abishua's son was
- Bukki's son was
- Uzzi's son was

ULT

⁵¹ Bukki his son, Uzzi his son, Zerahiah his son,

UST

⁵¹ Abishua's son was Bukki. Bukki's son was Uzzi. Uzzi's son was Zerahiah.

1 Chronicles 6:52

Meraioth ... Amariah ... Ahitub

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- his son
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- Zerahiah's son was
- Meraioth's son was
- Amariah's son was

ULT

⁵² Meraioth his son, Amariah his son,
Ahitub his son,

UST

⁵² Zerahiah's son was Meraioth.
Meraioth's son was Amariah. Amariah's
son was Ahitub.

1 Chronicles 6:53

Ahimaaz

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Zadok
- his son
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- Ahitub's son was
- Zadok's son was
- Zadok

ULT

⁵³ Zadok his son, Ahimaaz his son.

UST

⁵³ Ahitub's son was Zadok, and Zadok's son was Ahimaaz.

1 Chronicles 6:54

These are the locations where Aaron's descendants were assigned to live

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "These are the places where God assigned Aaron's descendants to live" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for the descendants of Aaron ... Kohathites

Alternate translation: "where the descendants of Aaron ... Kohathites were to live"

Kohathites (the first lot was theirs)

The Israelites drew lots to decide where people would live. Alternate translation: "Kohathites. The first lot that they drew was theirs" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Kohathites

This is the name of a people group, the descendants of Kohath ([1 Chronicles 6:1](#)). See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 6:33](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [To the sons of](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [the lot](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Aaron's](#)
- [descendants](#)
- [were the first group to be allotted property](#)

ULT

⁵⁴ And these, their dwellings according to their encampments in their borders. [To the sons of Aaron](#), to the clans of the Kohathites, for to them was [the lot](#).

UST

⁵⁴ Here is a list of the places where [Aaron's descendants](#) lived. Those who were descendants of Kohath [were the first group to be allotted property](#).

1 Chronicles 6:55

To them they gave Hebron

Alternate translation: "They gave Hebron to the Kohathites"

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Judah](#)

ULT

⁵⁵ And they gave to them Hebron in the land of [Judah](#) and its surrounding pasturelands,

UST

⁵⁵ They received the city of Hebron [in Judah](#) and the pastureland around the city,

1 Chronicles 6:56

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the city
- its villages
- the son of

Translation Words - UST

- farther from the city
- the villages near the city
- was...son

ULT

⁵⁶ but the field of the city and its villages, they gave to Caleb, the son of Jephunneh.

UST

⁵⁶ but Caleb received the fields farther from the city and the villages near the city. Caleb was Jephunneh's son.

1 Chronicles 6:57

Hebron ... Libnah ... Jattir ... Eshtemoa

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [And to the sons of](#)
- [Aaron](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The descendants of Aaron who were descendants of Kohath](#)
- [The descendants of Aaron who were descendants of Kohath](#)

ULT

⁵⁷ [And to the sons of Aaron](#) they gave the cities of refuge: Hebron, and Libnah and its pasturelands, and Jattir, and Eshtemoa and its pasturelands,

UST

⁵⁷ [The descendants of Aaron who were descendants of Kohath](#) received Hebron, one of the cities to which people could flee and be protected if they accidentally killed someone. They also received the towns and pastureland near Libnah, Jattir, Eshtemoa,

1 Chronicles 6:58

Hilen ... Debir

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵⁸ and Hilez and its pasturelands, Debir and its pasturelands,

UST

⁵⁸ Hilen, Debir,

1 Chronicles 6:59

Ashan ... Juttah ... Beth Shemesh

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Beth](#)
- [Shemesh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)

ULT

⁵⁹ and Ashan and its pasturelands, ^[2] and [Beth Shemesh](#) and its pasturelands.

UST

⁵⁹ Ashan, and [Beth Shemesh](#).

1 Chronicles 6:60

Geba ... Alemeth ... Anathoth

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Benjamin](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benjamin](#)

ULT

⁶⁰ And from the tribe of [Benjamin](#): Geba and its pasturelands, and Alemeth and its pasturelands, and Anathoth and its pasturelands. All their cities, 13 cities, among their clans.

UST

⁶⁰ They also received from the tribe of [Benjamin](#) the cities of Geba, Alemeth, and Anathoth and their pasturelands. Altogether, these clans who descended from Kohath received thirteen cities.

1 Chronicles 6:61

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And to the sons of
- from the clan of

Translation Words - UST

- The other clans descended from Kohath
- The other clans descended from Kohath

ULT

⁶¹ And to the sons of Kohath remaining from the clan of the tribe, from the half tribe, the half of Manasseh, by lot, ten cities.

UST

⁶¹ The other clans descended from Kohath received ten cities from the clans of the tribe of Manasseh that lived west of the Jordan River.

1 Chronicles 6:62

To Gershon's descendants in their various clans were given thirteen cities

"The clans of Gershon's descendants gained 13 cities" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And to the sons of](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [in Bashan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the descendants of](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [that lived in the region of Bashan on the east side of the Jordan River](#)

ULT

⁶² [And to the sons of](#) Gershom, for their clans, from the tribe of [Issachar](#) and from the tribe of [Asher](#) and from the tribe of [Naphtali](#) and from the tribe of Manasseh [in Bashan](#), 13 cities.

UST

⁶² The clans of [the descendants of](#) Gershon received thirteen cities from the tribes of [Issachar](#), [Asher](#), [Naphtali](#), and the part of the tribe of Manasseh [that lived in the region of Bashan on the east side of the Jordan River](#).

1 Chronicles 6:63

Merari

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [To the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the descendants of](#)

ULT

⁶³ [To the sons of](#) Merari, for their clans, from the tribe of Reuben and from the tribe of Gad and from the tribe of Zebulun, by lot, 12 cities.

UST

⁶³ The clans of [the descendants of](#) Merari received twelve cities from the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and Zebulun.

1 Chronicles 6:64

their pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- to the Levites
- the cities

Translation Words - UST

- The leaders of
- Israel
- those towns
- to the descendants of Levi

ULT

⁶⁴ And [the sons of Israel](#) gave [to the Levites the cities](#) and their pasturelands.

UST

⁶⁴ [The leaders of Israel](#) allotted [those towns](#) and the nearby pasturelands [to the descendants of Levi](#).

1 Chronicles 6:65

the towns mentioned earlier

The towns mentioned in [1 Chronicles 6:55](#) and [1 Chronicles 6:60](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of (2)
- the sons of
- Judah
- Benjamin
- cities
- they called
- by names

Translation Words - UST

- the cities
- Judah
- Judah
- Simeon (2)
- and Benjamin
- and Benjamin
- listed previously
- listed previously

ULT

65 And they gave by lot from the tribe of [the sons of Judah](#) and from the tribe of [the sons of Simeon](#) and from the tribe of [the sons of Benjamin](#) these [cities](#) which [they called](#) them by names.

UST

65 They also allotted to them [the cities](#) from the tribes of [Judah](#), [Simeon](#), and [Benjamin](#) that were [listed previously](#).

1 Chronicles 6:66

Kohathites

This is the name of a people group, the descendants of Kohath (1 Chronicles 6:1). See how you translated this family name in 1 Chronicles 6:33.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Ephraim

Translation Words - UST

- Some of the descendants of
- Ephraim

ULT

66 And from the clans of [the sons of Kohath](#); and there were cities of their territory from the tribe of [Ephraim](#).

UST

66 [Some of the descendants of Kohath](#) received cities from the tribe of [Ephraim](#).

1 Chronicles 6:67

Shechem ... Gezer

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ephraim](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ephraim](#)

ULT

⁶⁷ And they gave to them the cities of refuge: Shechem and its pasturelands in the hill country of [Ephraim](#), and Gezer and its pasturelands,

UST

⁶⁷ They received Shechem, which was one of the cities to which people could flee and be protected if they accidentally killed someone, along with the nearby pastureland in the hills of [Ephraim](#). They also received these cities and pastureland near them: Gezer,

1 Chronicles 6:68

Jokmeam ... Beth Horon

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶⁸ and Jokmeam and its pasturelands,
and Beth Horon and its pasturelands,

UST

⁶⁸ Jokmeam, Beth Horon,

1 Chronicles 6:69

Aijalon ... Gath Rimmon

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶⁹ and Aijalon and its pasturelands, and Gath Rimmon and its pasturelands.

UST

⁶⁹ Aijalon, and Gath Rimmon.

1 Chronicles 6:70

Aner ... Bileam

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bileam](#)
- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The...descendants of](#)
- [Bileam](#)

ULT

⁷⁰ And from the half tribe of Manasseh, Aner and its pasturelands, and [Bileam](#) and its pasturelands, for the clans of [the sons of](#) Kohath remaining.

UST

⁷⁰ The other [descendants of](#) Kohath received the cities of Aner and [Bileam](#) and the nearby pastureland from the part of the tribe of Manasseh that lives west of the Jordan River.

1 Chronicles 6:71

Gershon

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

Golan ... Ashtaroth

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [To the sons of](#)
- [from the clans of](#)
- [in Bashan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The descendants of](#)
- [who were part of...lived east of the Jordan River. They received two cities](#)
- [in the regions of Bashan](#)

ULT

⁷¹ [To the sons of](#) Gershon [from the clans of](#) the half tribe of Manasseh: Golan [in Bashan](#) and its pasturelands, and Ashtaroth and its pasturelands.

UST

⁷¹ [The descendants of](#) Gershom, [who were part of](#) the tribe of Manasseh, [lived east of the Jordan River. They received two cities](#) and pastureland near them: Golan [in the regions of Bashan](#) and Ashtaroth.

1 Chronicles 6:72

Kedesh ... Daberath

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Issachar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Issachar](#)

ULT

⁷² And from the tribe of [Issachar](#):
Kedesh and its pasturelands, Daberath
and its pasturelands,

UST

⁷² From the tribe of [Issachar](#) they
received cities and pastureland near
Kedesh, Daberath,

1 Chronicles 6:73

Ramoth ... Anem

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷³ and Ramoth and its pasturelands,
and Anem and its pasturelands.

UST

⁷³ Ramoth, and Anem.

1 Chronicles 6:74

Issachar received from the tribe of Asher

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The tribe of Asher gave Issachar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Mashal ... Abdon

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asher](#)

ULT

74 And from the tribe of [Asher](#): Mashal and its pasturelands, and Abdon and its pasturelands,

UST

74 From the tribe of [Asher](#) they received cities and pastureland near Mashal, Abdon,

1 Chronicles 6:75

Hukok ... Rehob

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷⁵ and Hukok and its pasturelands, and Rehob and its pasturelands.

UST

⁷⁵ Hukok, and Rehob.

1 Chronicles 6:76

They received from the tribe of Naphtali

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The tribe of Naphtali gave them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Kedesh ... Hammon ... Kiriathaim

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Naphtali](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Naphtali](#)

ULT

76 And from the tribe of [Naphtali](#): Kedesh in Galilee and its pasturelands, and Hammon and its pasturelands, and Kiriathaim and its pasturelands.

UST

76 From the tribe of [Naphtali](#) they received cities and pastureland near Kedesh (in the region of Galilee), Hammon, and Kiriathaim.

1 Chronicles 6:77

The rest ... descendants received from the tribe of Zebulun

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The tribe of Zebulun gave the rest ... descendants" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Merari's

Translate "Merari" as in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

Jokneam ... Kartah ... Rimmono ... Tabor

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [To the sons of](#)
- [Rimmono](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The...descendants of](#)
- [cities...Rimmono](#)

ULT

⁷⁷ To the sons of Merari remaining: from the tribe of Zebulun, ^[3] Rimmono and its pasturelands, Tabor and its pasturelands;

UST

⁷⁷ The other descendants of Levi, those descended from Merari, received cities and pasturelands from the tribe of Zebulun near Rimmono and Tabor.

1 Chronicles 6:78

General Information:

The information in 1 Chronicles 6:78-79 can be rearranged as in the UST so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

from the tribe of Reuben, across ... Jericho, they received

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "the tribe of Reuben, across ... Jericho, gave them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Bezer ... Jahzah

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Jordan](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [at Jericho](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jericho](#)
- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)

ULT

78 and from beyond [the Jordan at Jericho](#), to the east of [the Jordan](#) from the tribe of Reuben, Bezer in the wilderness and its pasturelands, and Jahzah and its pasturelands,

UST

78-79 From the tribe of Reuben they were allotted cities and towns and pastureland near Bezer in the wilderness, Jahzah, Kedemoth, and Mephaath. The tribe of Reuben lived east of the Jordan River, across from Jericho.

1 Chronicles 6:79

General Information:

The information in 1 Chronicles 6:78-79 can be rearranged as in the UST so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

Kedemoth ... Mephaath

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷⁹ and Kedemoth and its pasturelands, and Mephaath and its pasturelands.

UST

⁷⁸⁻⁷⁹ From the tribe of Reuben they were allotted cities and towns and pastureland near Bezer in the wilderness, Jahzah, Kedemoth, and Mephaath. The tribe of Reuben lived east of the Jordan River, across from Jericho.

1 Chronicles 6:80

The Levites received from the tribe of Gad

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The tribe of Gad gave the Levites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Ramoth ... Mahanaim

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

ULT

80 And from the tribe of Gad: Ramoth in Gilead and its pasturelands, and Mahanaim and its pasturelands,

UST

80 From the tribe of Gad, they received cities and pastureland near Ramoth in the region of Gilead, Mahanaim,

1 Chronicles 6:81

Heshbon ... Jazer

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁸¹ and Heshbon and its pasturelands,
and Jazer and its pasturelands.

UST

⁸¹ Heshbon, and Jazer.

1 Chronicles 7

1 Chronicles 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of Issachar, Benjamin, Ephraim, Asher, and Manasseh living west of the Jordan River.

1 Chronicles 7:1

Issachar ... Tola, Puah, Jashub ... Shimron

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And to the sons of](#)
- [Issachar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Issachar's](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

¹ [And to the sons of Issachar](#): Tola, and Puah, Jashub, and Shimron, four.

UST

¹ [Issachar's](#) four [sons were](#) Tola, Puah, Jashub, and Shimron.

1 Chronicles 7:2

General Information:

All of the names here are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

heads of their fathers' houses

The words "father's houses" refers to extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans."

They numbered 22,600

"They numbered twenty-two thousand six hundred" or "There were 22,600 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

in the days of David

Alternate translation: "during David's life" or "while David was alive"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [and Samuel](#)
- [the heads](#)
- [of the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [mighty of](#)
- [strength](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [and Samuel](#)
- [They were all leaders](#)
- [of the clans descended from them](#)
- [of the clans descended from them](#)
- [were capable men who were in the army](#)
- [were capable men who were in the army](#)
- [During the time that David was the king of Israel](#)

ULT

² [And the sons of](#) Tola: Uzzi, and Rephaiah, and Jeriel, and Jahmai, and Ibsam, [and Samuel, the heads of the house of their fathers](#), from of Tola, [mighty of strength](#) in their generations. Their number in the days of [David](#), 22,600.

UST

² Tola's [sons were](#) Uzzi, Rephaiah, Jeriel, Jahmai, Ibsam, [and Samuel. They were all leaders of the clans descended from them.](#) In the record of Tola's descendants in each generation [were capable men who were in the army.](#) [During the time that David was the king of Israel](#) there were 22,600 such men.

1 Chronicles 7:3

General Information:

All of the names here are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- And the sons of
- Michael
- and Obadiah
- and Joel
- heads

Translation Words - UST

- son was
- sons were...and his sons
- Michael
- Obadiah
- Joel
- were...leaders of their clans

ULT

³ And the sons of Uzzi: Izrahiah. And the sons of Izrahiah: Michael, and Obadiah, and Joel, and Ishijah, five heads all of them.

UST

³ Uzzi's son was Izrahiah. Izrahiah's five sons were Michael, Obadiah, Joel, and Ishiah. Izrahiah and his sons were all leaders of their clans.

1 Chronicles 7:4

Along with them they had

Another possible meaning is "Among them were."

thirty-six thousand troops for battle

"36,000 soldiers who were ready for battle" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [and sons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in the record of those descendants were the names of](#)
- [in the record of those descendants were the names of](#)
- [and children](#)

ULT

⁴ And along with them, by their generations [according to the house of their fathers](#), troops of the army of war, 36,000; for they multiplied wives [and sons](#).

UST

⁴ Also, [in the record of those descendants were the names of](#) 36,000 men who were in the army. The number was so large because they had many wives [and children](#).

1 Chronicles 7:5

eighty-seven thousand fighting men

“87,000 fighting men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their brothers](#)
- [the clans of](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [mighty of](#)
- [strength](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They had relatives](#)
- [from the clans descended from](#)
- [Issachar...Isaachar](#)
- [capable men who were in the army](#)
- [capable men who were in the army](#)

ULT

⁵ [And their brothers](#) of all the clans of [Issachar](#), [mighty of strength](#), 87,000 listed in their genealogy in all.

UST

⁵ [They had relatives from the clans descended from Issachar](#). Those records from [Isaachar](#) listed 87,000 [capable men who were in the army](#) in all.

1 Chronicles 7:6

Bela ... Beker ... Jediael

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of Benjamin](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The...sons of Benjamin were](#)

ULT

⁶ [Of Benjamin](#): Bela, and Beker, and Jediael, three.

UST

⁶ The three [sons of Benjamin were](#) Bela, Beker, and Jediael.

1 Chronicles 7:7

General Information:

All of the names here are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

22,034 fighting men

“twenty-two thousand and thirty-four” (See: [Numbers](#))

fathers’ houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls “clans”

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [heads of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [mighty of](#)
- [strength](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [They were leaders of](#)
- [clans](#)
- [clans](#)
- [capable men who were in the army](#)
- [capable men who were in the army](#)

ULT

⁷ [And the sons of](#) Bela: Ezbon, and Uzzi, and Uzziel, and Jerimoth, and Iri, five [heads of the house of their fathers](#), [mighty of strength](#), and listed in their genealogy, 22,034.

UST

⁷ Bela’s five [sons were](#) Ezbon, Uzzi, Uzziel, Jerimoth, and Iri. [They were leaders of clans](#). In their records there were names of 22,034 [capable men who were in the army](#).

1 Chronicles 7:8

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [and Omri](#)
- [and Abijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [sons](#)
- [Omri](#)
- [Abijah](#)

ULT

⁸ [And the sons of](#) Beker: Zemirah, and Joash, and Eliezer, and Elioenai, [and Omri](#), and Jeremoth, [and Abijah](#), and Anathoth, and Alemeth. All these, [the sons of](#) Beker,

UST

⁸ Beker's [sons were](#) Zemirah, Joash, Eliezer, Elioenai, [Omri](#), Jeremoth, [Abijah](#), Anathoth, and Alemeth. All these were his [sons](#).

1 Chronicles 7:9

20,200 heads of their fathers' houses

“twenty thousand two hundred family leaders” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heads of
- the house of
- their fathers
- mighty of
- strength

Translation Words - UST

- capable men and...who were in the army
- capable men and...who were in the army
- leaders of
- the clans
- the clans

ULT

⁹ and listed in their genealogy, according to their generations, heads of the house of their fathers, mighty of strength, 20,200.

UST

⁹ In the records of their descendants were the names of 20,200 capable men and leaders of the clans who were in the army.

1 Chronicles 7:10

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [And the sons of](#)
- [and Benjamin](#)
- [and Tarshish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son was](#)
- [sons were](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Tarshish](#)

ULT

¹⁰ [And the sons of](#) Jediael: Bilhan. [And the sons of](#) Bilhan: Jeush, [and Benjamin](#), and Ehud, and Kenaanah, and Zethan, [and Tarshish](#), and Ahishahar.

UST

¹⁰ Jediael's [son was](#) Bilhan. Bilhan's [sons were](#) Jeush, [Benjamin](#), Ehud, Kenaanah, Zethan, [Tarshish](#), and Ahishahar.

1 Chronicles 7:11

Jediael

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Listed in their clan lists were 17,200

Alternate translation: "The clan lists contained 17,200"

17,200 heads of houses

"seventeen thousand two hundred heads of houses" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [mighty of](#)
- [strength](#)
- [going out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [descendants of](#)
- [of clans](#)
- [capable men who were in the army](#)
- [capable men who were in the army](#)
- [There were...men who would go out into battle](#)

ULT

¹¹ All these, [the sons of](#) Jediael, according to the heads of [their fathers](#), [mighty of strength](#), 17,200, [going out](#) as an army to battle.

UST

¹¹ All of these [descendants of](#) Jediael were leaders [of clans capable men who were in the army](#). [There were](#) 17,200 [men who would go out into battle](#).

1 Chronicles 7:12

Ir ... Aher

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shuppites ... Huppites ... Hushites

These are names of clans of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- were the sons of
- was the son of

ULT

¹² And Shuppim and Huppim, [the sons of Ir](#). Hushim, [the sons of Aher](#).

UST

¹² Shuppim and Huppim [were the sons of](#) a man named Ir. Hushim [was the son of](#) a man named Aher.

1 Chronicles 7:13

Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bilhah's grandsons

"the sons of Bilhah's son." Bilhah is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [Bilhah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Naphtali's](#)
- [sons were](#)
- [They were children of](#)
- [Jacob's slave wife Bilhah](#)

ULT

¹³ [The sons of Naphtali](#): Jahziel, and Guni, and Jezer, and Shillem, [the sons of Bilhah](#).

UST

¹³ [Naphtali's sons were](#) Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem. [They were children of Jacob's slave wife Bilhah](#).

1 Chronicles 7:14

Asriel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Aramean concubine bore

Alternate translation: "Aramean concubine gave birth to"

Makir, Gilead's father

These are names of men. See how you translated "Makir, father of Gilead" in [1 Chronicles 2:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had sons](#)
- [was the father of](#)

ULT

14 [The sons of](#) Manasseh: Asriel, whom his Aramean concubine bore. She bore Makir, [the father of](#) Gilead.

UST

14 Manasseh [had sons](#) by his slave wife who was from Aram. She gave birth to Asriel and Makir. Makir [was the father of](#) Gilead.

1 Chronicles 7:15

Makir ... Zelophehad

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Huppites ... Shuppites

See how you translated these names in [1 Chronicles 7:12](#).

Maakah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Maakah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Maacah](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And Makir took a wife of Huppim and of Shuppim. And the name of his sister, [Maakah](#). And the name of the second, Zelophehad. And to Zelophehad there were daughters.

UST

¹⁵ Makir had a wife who was from the clans of Huppim and Shuppim. Makir's sister's name was [Maacah](#). Makir had a son named Zelophehad. Zelophehad had only daughters.

1 Chronicles 7:16

Makir ... Peresh ... Sheresh ... Ulam ... Rakem

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Maakah
- a son
- and his sons
- and she called
- his name
- his brother

Translation Words - UST

- also named Maacah
- sons
- Sheresh's sons were
- whom she named
- whom she named
- brother

ULT

¹⁶ And **Maakah**, the wife of Makir, bore a son and she called his name Peresh. And the name of his brother, Sheresh; and his sons, Ulam and Rakem.

UST

¹⁶ Makir's wife (also named Maacah) gave birth to sons whom she named Peresh and Sheresh. Sheresh's sons were Ulam and Rakem.

1 Chronicles 7:17

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [son was](#)
- [the descendants of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [and grandson of](#) (2)

ULT

¹⁷ [And the sons of](#) Ulam: [Bedan](#). These, [the sons of](#) Gilead, [the son of](#) Makir, [the son of](#) Manasseh.

UST

¹⁷ Ulam's [son was](#) [Bedan](#). Those were [the descendants of](#) Gilead, [the son of](#) Makir [and grandson of](#) Manasseh.

1 Chronicles 7:18

General Information:

All of the names here except Hammoleketh are names of men. Hammoleketh is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

18 And his sister Hammoleketh bore Ishhod, and Abiezer, and Mahlah.

UST

18 Gilead's sister was Hammoleketh. She was the mother of Ishhod, Abiezer, and Mahlah.

1 Chronicles 7:19

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [whose sons](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And [the sons of](#) Shemida were Ahian, and Shechem, and Likhi, and Aniam.

UST

¹⁹ Another son of Gilead was Shemida, [whose sons](#) were Ahian, Shechem, Likhi, and Aniam.

1 Chronicles 7:20

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- his son
- his son
- his son
- his son
- Ephraim

Translation Words - UST

- These are the descendants of
- Shuthelah's son was
- Bered's son was
- Tahath's son was
- Eleadah's son was
- Ephraim...Ephraim

ULT

²⁰ And the sons of Ephraim: Shuthelah, and Bered his son, and Tahath his son, and Eleadah his son, and Tahath his son,

UST

²⁰ These are the descendants of Ephraim. One son of Ephraim was Shuthelah. Shuthelah's son was Bered. Bered's son was Tahath. Tahath's son was Eleadah. Eleadah's son was also named Tahath.

1 Chronicles 7:21

General Information:

All of the names here except Gath are names of men. Gath is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ezer and Elead were killed by men of Gath, natives in the land

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Men of Gath, the natives in the land, killed Ezer and Elead" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they went to steal their cattle

Alternate translation: "the brothers went to steal the cattle from the people of Gath"

Translation Words - ULT

- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Tahath's son was](#)
- [Zabad's son was](#)

ULT

²¹ and Zabad [his son](#), and Shuthelah [his son](#), and Ezer and Elead. And the men of Gath who were born in the land killed them because they came down to take their livestock.

UST

²¹ [Tahath's son was](#) Zabad. [Zabad's son was](#) Shuthelah. Ephraim's other sons, Ezer and Elead, went to the city of Gath to steal some cattle. As a result, men from that city, natives of that area, killed Ezer and Elead.

1 Chronicles 7:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim
- their father
- And...mourned
- his brothers

Translation Words - UST

- Their father
- Ephraim
- cried for them
- his family

ULT

²² And Ephraim their father mourned many days, and his brothers came to comfort him.

UST

²² Their father Ephraim cried for them for many days, and his family came to comfort him.

1 Chronicles 7:23

He went in to his wife

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he had sexual relations with his wife" (See: [Euphemism](#))

She conceived and bore a son

Alternate translation: "She became pregnant and gave birth to a son"

Ephraim ... Beriah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

called him

Alternate translation: "named him"

Translation Words - ULT

- [a son](#)
- [And he called](#)
- [his name](#)
- [disaster](#)
- [in his house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a son](#)
- [Ephraim named him](#)
- [Ephraim named him](#)
- [the trouble that](#)
- [his family](#)

ULT

²³ And he went into his wife. And she conceived. And she bore [a son](#). [And he called his name](#) Beriah, because [disaster](#) was [in his house](#).

UST

²³ Then he and his wife slept together again; she became pregnant and gave birth to [a son](#). [Ephraim named him](#) Beriah which resembles the word 'trouble' because of [the trouble that his family](#) had experienced.

1 Chronicles 7:24

Sheerah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Upper Beth Horon ... Uzen Sheerah

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁴ And his daughter, Sheerah, and she built Lower Beth Horon, and the Upper, and Uzen Sheerah.

UST

²⁴ Ephraim's daughter was Sheerah. Her workers built three towns: Lower Beth Horon, Upper Beth Horon, and Uzen Sheerah.

1 Chronicles 7:25

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- his son
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- Another son of Ephraim was
- Resheph's son was
- Telah's son was

ULT

²⁵ And Rephah, [his son](#), and Resheph, and Telah, [his son](#), and Tahan, [his son](#),

UST

²⁵ [Another son of Ephraim was](#) Rephah. Rephah's son was Resheph. [Resheph's son was](#) Telah. [Telah's son was](#) Tahan.

1 Chronicles 7:26

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- his son
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- Tahan's son was
- Ladan's son was
- Ammihud's son was

ULT

²⁶ Ladan, his son, Ammihud, his son, Elishama, his son,

UST

²⁶ Tahan's son was Ladan. Ladan's son was Ammihud. Ammihud's son was Elishama.

1 Chronicles 7:27

Elishama ... Nun

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- his son
- Joshua

Translation Words - UST

- Elishama's son was
- Non's son was
- Joshua, the man who led the Israelites after Moses died

ULT

²⁷ Non, his son, Joshua, his son.

UST

²⁷ Elishama's son was Non. Non's son was Joshua, the man who led the Israelites after Moses died.

1 Chronicles 7:28

General Information:

All of the names listed here are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Their possessions and residences were Bethel ... villages

The abstract nouns “possessions” and “residences” can be translated with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: “They possessed and resided in Bethel ... villages” or “They owned and lived in Bethel ... villages” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bethel](#)
- [Bethel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Bethel](#)
- [Bethel](#)

ULT

28 And their possessions and their dwellings: [Bethel](#) and its daughters. And to the east, Naaran. And to the west, Gezer and its daughters, and Shechem and its daughters as far as Ayyah and its daughters.

UST

28 This is a list of the cities and areas where the descendants of Ephraim lived: [Bethel](#) and the nearby villages; Naaran to the east; Gezer to the west and the nearby villages; and Shechem and the nearby villages. Those villages extended north as far as Ayyah and the nearby villages.

1 Chronicles 7:29

Beth Shan ... Taanach ... Megiddo ... Dor

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

In these towns the descendants of Joseph son of Israel lived

Alternate translation: "The descendants of Joseph, son of Israel, lived in these towns"

Translation Words - ULT

- the hands of
- the sons of
- the sons of
- the son of
- Joseph
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Along the border of the area where...lived were these towns
- the descendants of
- were descendants of
- son
- Jacob's
- Joseph

ULT

²⁹ And on [the hands of the sons of](#) Manasseh, Beth Shan and its daughters, Taanach and its daughters, Megiddo and its daughters, Dor and its daughters. In these lived [the sons of Joseph, the son of Israel](#).

UST

²⁹ [Along the border of the area where the descendants of Manasseh lived were these towns](#): Beth Shan, Taanach, Megiddo, Dor, and all the nearby villages. The people who lived in all those places [were descendants of Jacob's son Joseph](#).

1 Chronicles 7:30

General Information:

All of the names here except Serah are names of men. Serah is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Asher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asher's](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

³⁰ [The sons of Asher](#): Imnah, and Ishvah, and Ishvi, and Beriah, and Serah their sister.

UST

³⁰ [Asher's sons were](#) Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, and Beriah. Their sister was Serah.

1 Chronicles 7:31

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [the father of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [the father of](#)

ULT

³¹ [And the sons of](#) Beriah: Heber and Malkiel; he, [the father of](#) Birzaith.

UST

³¹ Beriah's [sons were](#) Heber and Malkiel. Malkiel was [the father of](#) Birzaith

1 Chronicles 7:32

General Information:

All of the names here except Shua are names of men. Shua is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³² And Heber fathered Japhlet, and Shomer, and Hotham, and Shua their sister.

UST

³² Heber was the father of Japhlet, Shomer, Hotham, and Shua their sister.

1 Chronicles 7:33

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [children](#)

ULT

³³ [And the sons of](#) Japhlet: Pasak, and Bimhal, and Ashvath. These, [the sons of](#) Japhlet.

UST

³³ Japhlet's [sons were](#) Pasak, Bimhal, and Ashvath. These were Japhlet's [children](#).

1 Chronicles 7:34

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)

ULT

³⁴ [And the sons of](#) Shamer: Ahi, and Rohgah, and Hubbah, and Aram.

UST

³⁴ Shamer's [sons were](#) Ahi, Rohgah, Hubbah, and Aram.

1 Chronicles 7:35

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [his brother](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Shomer's younger brother was](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

³⁵ [And the sons of](#) Helem [his brother](#): Zophah, and Imna, and Shelesh, and Amal.

UST

³⁵ [Shomer's younger brother was](#) Helem. Helem's [sons were](#) Zophah, Imna, Shelesh, and Amal.

1 Chronicles 7:36

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)

ULT

³⁶ [And the sons of](#) Zophah: Suah, and Harnepher, and Shual, and Beri, and Imrah,

UST

³⁶ Zophah's [sons were](#) Suah, Harnepher, Shual, Beri, Imrah,

1 Chronicles 7:37

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁷ Bezer, and Hod, and Shamma, and Shilshah, and Ithran, and Beera.

UST

³⁷ Bezer, Hod, Shamma, Shilshah, Ithran (whose other name was Jether), and Beera.

1 Chronicles 7:38

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)

ULT

³⁸ [And the sons of](#) Jether: Jephunneh, and Pispah, and Ara.

UST

³⁸ Jether's [sons were](#) Jephunneh, Pispah, and Ara.

1 Chronicles 7:39

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [whose sons were](#)

ULT

³⁹ [And the sons of](#) Ulla: Arah, and Haniel, and Rizia.

UST

³⁹ Another descendant of Asher was Ulla, [whose sons were](#) Arah, Haniel, and Rizia.

1 Chronicles 7:40

Asher

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

distinguished men

Alternate translation: "important men"

There were twenty-six thousand men listed who were fit for military service, according to their numbered lists

"According to the clan records, there were 26,000 men who were able to serve in the military" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [heads of](#)
- [heads of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [mighty of](#)
- [strength](#)
- [the chiefs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [descendants of](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [and they were all leaders of](#)
- [and leaders of leaders](#)
- [their clans](#)
- [their clans](#)
- [They were capable, brave warriors](#)
- [They were capable, brave warriors](#)
- [and leaders of leaders](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ All these, [the sons of Asher, heads of the house of their fathers](#), chosen, [mighty of strength, heads of the chiefs](#). And listed in their genealogy in the army for war, their number, 26,000 men.

UST

⁴⁰ All those men were [descendants of Asher, and they were all leaders of their clans. They were capable, brave warriors and leaders of leaders](#). In the record of the clans that are descended from Asher are the names of 26,000 men who were in the army.

1 Chronicles 8

1 Chronicles 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the genealogy of Saul's family.

1 Chronicles 8:1

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Benjamin](#)
- [his firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benjamin](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

¹ [And Benjamin](#) fathered Bela [his firstborn](#), Ashbel the second, and Aharah the third,

UST

¹ [Benjamin](#) had sons: Bela, Ashbel, Aharah,

1 Chronicles 8:2

Nohah ... Rapha

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

² Nohah the fourth, and Rapha the fifth.

UST

² Nohah, and Rapha, five in all.

1 Chronicles 8:3

Bela ... Addar, Gera, Abihud

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sons

Translation Words - UST

- sons

ULT

³ And there were sons to Bela: Addar, and Gera, and Abihud,

UST

³ Bela's sons were Addar, Gera, Abihud,

1 Chronicles 8:4

Abishua, Naaman, Ahoah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Naaman](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Naaman](#)

ULT

⁴ and Abishua, [and Naaman](#), and Ahoah,

UST

⁴ Abishua, [Naaman](#), Ahoah,

1 Chronicles 8:5

Gera, Shephuphan ... Hiram

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵ and Gera, and Shephuphan, and Hiram.

UST

⁵ Gera, Shephuphan, and Hiram.

1 Chronicles 8:6

Ehud

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

Geba ... Manahath

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

were compelled to move

Alternate translation: "needed to move" or "had to move"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [heads of](#)
- [fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The descendants of](#)
- [leaders of](#)
- [their clans](#)

ULT

⁶ And these, [the sons of](#) Ehud: these, they, [heads of fathers](#), belonging to those dwelling in Geba. And they took them into exile to Manahath:

UST

⁶ One of Gera's sons was Ehud. [The descendants of](#) Ehud were [leaders of their clans](#) who lived in the city of Geba, but others forced them to move to the city of Manahath.

1 Chronicles 8:7

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Naaman](#)
- [and Ahijah](#)
- [took them into exile](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ehud's sons were Naaman](#)
- [Ahijah](#)
- [led them when they moved to Manahath](#)

ULT

⁷ [and Naaman, and Ahijah](#), and Gera.
He [took them into exile](#), and he
fathered Uzzah and Ahihud.

UST

⁷ [Ehud's sons were Naaman, Ahijah](#), and Gera. Gera was the one who [led them when they moved to Manahath](#). Gera was the father of Uzza and Ahihud.

1 Chronicles 8:8

Shaharaim

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hushim ... Baara

These are names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)

ULT

⁸ And Shaharaim fathered in the field of [Moab](#), after he sent them away, Hushim and Baara, his wives.

UST

⁸⁻¹¹ Another descendant of Benjamin was Shaharaim. He and his wife Hushim had two sons, Abitub and Elpaal. In the region of Moab, Shaharaim divorced Hushim and his other wife Baara. Then he married a woman whose name was Hodesh, and they had seven sons: Jobab, Zibia, Mesha, Malkam, Jeuz, Sakia, and Mirmah. They were all leaders of their clans.

1 Chronicles 8:9

Shaharaim ... Jobab ... Zibia ... Mesha ... Malkam

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

By his wife Hodesh, Shaharaim became the father of

Alternate translation: "Shaharaim and his wife Hodesh had the following sons:"

Hodesh

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁹ And he fathered from Hodesh his wife:
Jobab, and Zibia, and Mesha, and
Malkam,

UST

1 Chronicles 8:10

Jeuz ... Sakia ... Mirmah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [heads of](#)
- [fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

¹⁰ and Jeuz, and Sakia, and Mirmah.

These, [his sons](#), [heads of fathers](#).

UST

1 Chronicles 8:11

Abitub ... Elpaal

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hushim

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

11 And from Hushim he fathered Abitub and Elpaal.

UST

8-11 Another descendant of Benjamin was Shaharaim. He and his wife Hushim had two sons, Abitub and Elpaal. In the region of Moab, Shaharaim divorced Hushim and his other wife Baara. Then he married a woman whose name was Hodesh, and they had seven sons: Jobab, Zibia, Mesha, Malkam, Jeuz, Sakia, and Mirmah. They were all leaders of their clans.

1 Chronicles 8:12

Elpaal ... Eber ... Misham ... Shemed

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ono ... Lod

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹² [And the sons of](#) Elpaal: Eber, and Misham, and Shemed, he built Ono and Lod and its daughters;

UST

¹²⁻¹³ Elpaal's sons were Eber, Misham, Shemed, Beriah, and Shema. Shemed built the cities of Ono and Lod and their nearby villages. Beriah and Shema were leaders of their clans, who lived in the city of Aijalon. They forced the people who lived in the city of Gath to leave their city.

1 Chronicles 8:13

Beriah ... Shema

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

Aijalon ... Gath

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heads of](#)
- [the fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

¹³ and Beriah and Shema. They, [heads of the fathers](#) to those living in Aijalon; they caused those living in Gath to flee.

UST

¹²⁻¹³ Elpaal's sons were Eber, Misham, Shemed, Beriah, and Shema. Shemed built the cities of Ono and Lod and their nearby villages. Beriah and Shema were leaders of their clans, who lived in the city of Aijalon. They forced the people who lived in the city of Gath to leave their city.

1 Chronicles 8:14

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁴ and Ahio, Shashak, and Jeremoth,

UST

¹⁴⁻¹⁶ Beriah's sons were Ahio, Shashak, Jeremoth, Zebadiah, Arad, Eder, Michael, Ishpah, and Joha.

1 Chronicles 8:15

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

15 and Zebadiah, and Arad, and Eder,

UST

1 Chronicles 8:16

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Michael](#)
- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Michael](#)

ULT

16 [and Michael](#), and Ishpah, and Joha, [the sons of](#) Beriah.

UST

14-16 Beriah's sons were Ahio, Shashak, Jeremoth, Zebadiah, Arad, Eder, Michael, Ishpah, and Joha.

1 Chronicles 8:17

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

General Information:

You can combine the information in 1 Chronicles 8:17-18 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

ULT

17 And Zebadiah, and Meshullam, and Hizki, and Heber,

UST

17-18 Other descendants of Elpaal were also named Zebadiah, Meshullam, Hizki, Heber, Ishmerai, Izliah, and Jobab.

1 Chronicles 8:18

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

18 and Ishmerai, and Izliah, and Jobab,
[the sons of](#) Elpaal.

UST

17-18 Other descendants of Elpaal were also named Zebadiah, Meshullam, Hizki, Heber, Ishmerai, Izliah, and Jobab.

1 Chronicles 8:19

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

General Information:

You can combine the information in 1 Chronicles 8:19-21 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

ULT

¹⁹ And Jakim, and Zikri, and Zabdi,

UST

¹⁹⁻²¹ Another descendant of Benjamin was Shimei. Shimei's descendants included Jakim, Zicri, Zabdi, Elienai, Zillethai, Eiel, Adaiah, Beraiah, and Shimrath.

1 Chronicles 8:20

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

General Information:

The information in 1 Chronicles 8:19-21 has been rearranged so its meaning can be more easily understood. All of the names here are names of men. (See: [Verse Bridges](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁰ and Elienai, and Zillethai, and Eliel,

UST

1 Chronicles 8:21

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²¹ and Adaiah, and Beraiah, and Shimrath, [the sons of](#) Shimei.

UST

¹⁹⁻²¹ Another descendant of Benjamin was Shimei. Shimei's descendants included Jakim, Zicri, Zabdi, Elienai, Zillethai, Eliel, Adaiah, Beraiah, and Shimrath.

1 Chronicles 8:22

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

General Information:

You can combine the information in 1 Chronicles 8:22-25 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

ULT

²² And Ishpan, and Eber, and Eliel,

UST

²²⁻²⁵ Shashak's sons were Ishpan, Eber, Eliel, Abdon, Zicri, Hanan, Hananiah, Elam, Anthothijah, Iphdeiah, and Penuel.

1 Chronicles 8:23

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²³ and Abdon, and Zikri, and Hanan,

UST

1 Chronicles 8:24

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Hananiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Hananiah](#)

ULT

²⁴ [and Hananiah](#), and Elam, and Anthothijah,

UST

1 Chronicles 8:25

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁵ and Iphdeiah, and Penuel, [the sons of Shashak](#).

UST

²²⁻²⁵ Shashak's sons were Ishpan, Eber, Eliel, Abdon, Zicri, Hanan, Hananiah, Elam, Anthothijah, Iphdeiah, and Penuel.

1 Chronicles 8:26

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

General Information:

You can combine the information in 1 Chronicles 8:26-27 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Athaliah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Athaliah](#)

ULT

²⁶ And Shamsherai, and Shehariah, and Athaliah,

UST

²⁶⁻²⁷ Another descendant of Benjamin was Jeroham, whose sons were Shamsherai, Shehariah, Athaliah, Jareshiah, Elijah, and Zicri.

1 Chronicles 8:27

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Elijah](#)
- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Elijah](#)

ULT

²⁷ and Jaareshiah, [and Elijah](#), and Zikri, [the sons of](#) Jeroham.

UST

²⁶⁻²⁷ Another descendant of Benjamin was Jeroham, whose sons were Shamsherai, Shehariah, Athaliah, Jaareshiah, Elijah, and Zicri.

1 Chronicles 8:28

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

Translation Words - ULT

- heads of
- heads
- fathers
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- leaders of
- according to their genealogies
- their clans
- in Jerusalem

ULT

²⁸ These, heads of fathers by their generations, heads. They lived in Jerusalem.

UST

²⁸ All of these descendants of Elpaal (Shaharaim's son) were leaders of their clans according to their genealogies. They all lived in Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 8:29

The father of Gibeon, Jeiel, whose wife's name was Maakah, lived in Gibeon

Here "father of" refers to Jeiel's status as the leading person in the city of Gibeon. Alternate translation: "Jeiel, the leader of Gibeon, lived in Gibeon. His wife's name was Maakah" (See: [Idiom](#))

Gibeon

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeiel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Maakah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the father of](#)
- [Gibeon](#)
- [Maakah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and was an early settler and leader of those who lived there](#)
- [and was an early settler and leader of those who lived there](#)
- [Maakah](#)

ULT

²⁹ And in Gibeon, they lived: [the father of Gibeon](#), and the name of his wife, [Maakah](#),

UST

²⁹ Another descendant of Benjamin was Jeiel. He lived in the city of Gibeon [and was an early settler and leader of those who lived there](#). Jeiel's wife was [Maakah](#).

1 Chronicles 8:30

His firstborn

Alternate translation: "Jeiel's first son"

Abdon ... Zur ... Kish ... Baal ... Nadab

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [His other sons were](#)

ULT

³⁰ [and his son](#), the firstborn, Abdon, and Zur, and Kish, and Baal, and Nadab,

UST

³⁰ His oldest son was Abdon. [His other sons were](#) Zur, Kish, Baal, Nadab,

1 Chronicles 8:31

Gedor ... Ahio ... Zeker

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³¹ and Gedor, and Ahio, and Zeker.

UST

³¹ Gedor, Ahio, and Zeker.

1 Chronicles 8:32

Jeiel ... Mikloth ... Shimeah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their brothers](#)
- [their brothers](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [their relatives](#)
- [brother](#)

ULT

³² And Mikloth fathered Shimeah. And also they, opposite [their brothers](#), lived [in Jerusalem](#) with [their brothers](#).

UST

³² Mikloth (another of Jeiel's sons) was the father of Shimeah. All these descendants of Jeiel also lived [in Jerusalem](#) near [their relatives](#).

1 Chronicles 8:33

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Saul
- And Saul

Translation Words - UST

- King Saul
- Saul

ULT

³³ And Ner fathered Kish. And Kish fathered Saul. And Saul fathered Jonathan, and Malki-Shua, and Abinadab, and Esh-Baal.

UST

³³ Ner was the father of Kish. Kish was the father of King Saul. Saul was the father of Jonathan, Malki-Shua, Abinadab, and Esh-Baal.

1 Chronicles 8:34

Jonathan ... Merib-Baal ... Micah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the son of](#)
- [Micah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son was](#)
- [Micah](#)

ULT

³⁴ [And the son of](#) Jonathan, Merib-Baal.

And Merib-Baal fathered [Micah](#).

UST

³⁴ Jonathan's [son was](#) Merib-Baal.

Merib-Baal was the father of [Micah](#).

1 Chronicles 8:35

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [Micah](#)
- [and Ahaz](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Micah's](#)
- [sons were](#)
- [and Ahaz](#)

ULT

³⁵ [And the sons of Micah](#): Pithon, and Melek, and Tarea, [and Ahaz](#).

UST

³⁵ [Micah's sons were](#) Pithon, Melek, Tarea, [and Ahaz](#).

1 Chronicles 8:36

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Ahaz](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ahaz](#)

ULT

³⁶ [And Ahaz](#) fathered Jehoaddah. And Jehoaddah fathered Alemeth, and Azmaveth, and Zimri. And Zimri fathered Moza.

UST

³⁶ [Ahaz](#) was the father of Jehoaddah. Jehoaddah was the father of Alemeth, Azmaveth, and Zimri. Zimri was the father of Moza.

1 Chronicles 8:37

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- his son
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- was Binea's son
- was Raphah's son
- was Eleasah's son

ULT

³⁷ And Moza fathered Binea. Raphah [his son](#), Eleasah [his son](#), Azel [his son](#).

UST

³⁷ Moza was the father of Binea. Raphah [was Binea's son](#). Eleasah [was Raphah's son](#). Azel [was Eleasah's son](#).

1 Chronicles 8:38

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- the sons of
- their names
- and Obadiah

Translation Words - UST

- sons
- sons
- Their names
- Obadiah

ULT

³⁸ And to Azel six sons. And these, their names: Azrikam, Bokeru, and Ishmael, and Sheariah, and Obadiah, and Hanan. All these, the sons of Azel.

UST

³⁸ Azel had six sons. Their names were Azrikam, Bokeru, Ishmael, Sheariah, Obadiah, and Hanan. These were all of Azel's sons.

1 Chronicles 8:39

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeush the second, and Eliphelet the third

“Jeush, who was born after Ulam, and Eliphelet, who was born after Jeush” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [his brother](#)
- [his firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Azal had a brother](#)
- [Eshek's oldest son was](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

39 [And the sons of](#) Eshek, [his brother](#):
Ulam [his firstborn](#), Jeush the second,
and Eliphelet the third.

UST

39 [Azal had a brother](#), Eshek. [Eshek's oldest son was](#) Ulam. His other [sons were](#) Jeush and Eliphelet.

1 Chronicles 8:40

Ulam

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

many sons and grandsons, a total of 150

“a total of one hundred fifty sons and grandsons” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [sons](#)
- [sons and...of](#)
- [sons](#)
- [from the sons of](#)
- [mighty in](#)
- [strength](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons](#)
- [sons](#)
- [and grandsons](#)
- [and grandsons](#)
- [the descendants of](#)
- [capable men who were in the army](#)
- [capable men who were in the army](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ And [the sons of](#) Ulam were men [mighty in strength](#), who bent the bow, and multipliers of [sons and sons of sons](#), 150. All these [from the sons of Benjamin](#).

UST

⁴⁰ Ulam's [sons](#) were archers, [capable men who were in the army](#). Altogether they had 150 [sons and grandsons](#). All these were [the descendants of Benjamin](#).

1 Chronicles 9

1 Chronicles 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the genealogy of the people who returned to Jerusalem after the exile and the family of Saul.

1 Chronicles 9:1

all Israel was recorded in genealogies

This can be translated in active form. The reader should understand that the people who wrote the genealogies included the names of the people who had already died. Alternate translation: "The Israelites recorded all of themselves in genealogies" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

genealogies

family records that name ancestors and descendants

They were recorded in the book ... Israel

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "They wrote the names in the book ... Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the book of the kings of Israel

This refers to a book that no longer exists.

they were carried away in exile

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Babylonians carried them away in exile" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [And Judah](#)
- [was taken into exile](#)
- [to Babylon](#)
- [because of their unfaithfulness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The Record of the Kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [The army of Babylon captured...and took them](#)
- [many of the people of Judah](#)
- [to Babylon](#)
- [That happened because of the sins the people of Judah had committed against God](#)

ULT

¹ And all [Israel](#) were listed in genealogy, and behold, they are written on the scroll of [the kings of Israel](#). And [Judah](#) was taken into exile to [Babylon](#) because of their unfaithfulness.

UST

¹ The scroll named "[The Record of the Kings of Israel](#)" listed the names of all the people of [Israel](#). [The army of Babylon](#) captured many of the people of [Judah](#) and took them to [Babylon](#). That happened because of the sins the people of [Judah](#) had committed against God.

1 Chronicles 9:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- the priests
- the Levites

Translation Words - UST

- some Israelites
- priests
- other descendants of Levi

ULT

² And the first inhabitants who were in their possession, in their cities: **Israel**, **the priests**, **the Levites**, and the temple servants.

UST

² The first people who returned to Judah many years later and lived in their own land and in their own cities and towns were **some Israelites**, **priests**, **other descendants of Levi**, and men who worked in the temple.

1 Chronicles 9:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And in Jerusalem
- the sons of
- the sons of
- the sons of (2)
- Judah
- Benjamin
- Ephraim

Translation Words - UST

- the tribes of
- Benjamin
- Ephraim (2)
- Judah
- Benjamin
- Ephraim
- also...in Jerusalem

ULT

³ And in Jerusalem they lived, from the sons of Judah, and from the sons of Benjamin, and from the sons of Ephraim and Manasseh.

UST

³ Other people from the tribes of Judah, Benjamin, Ephraim, and Manasseh also returned to Judah and lived in Jerusalem, including the following people.

1 Chronicles 9:4

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- the son of
- the sons of
- the son of (4)
- Omri
- Bani
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- was...son (2)
- was...son (3)
- was...son
- was a descendant of
- was...son (4)
- Omri's...Omri
- Bani's...Bani
- Judah's

ULT

⁴ Uthai [the son of Ammihud, the son of Omri, the son of Imri, the son of Bani, from the sons of Perez, the son of Judah.](#)

UST

⁴ Uthai [son of Ammihud \(Ammihud was Omri's son; Omri was Imri's son; Imri was Bani's son; Bani was a descendant of Perez; Perez was Judah's son\);](#)

1 Chronicles 9:5

Shelanites

This is the name of a people group descended from Shelah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Asaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his sons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)

ULT

⁵ And from the Shilonites: Asaiah the firstborn [and his sons](#).

UST

⁵ Asaiah [and his sons](#) (who were descendants of Shilon. Asaiah was the oldest son in his family);

1 Chronicles 9:6

Zerah ... Jeuel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

numbered 690

“numbered six hundred ninety people” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [and their brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and others of his relatives](#)
- [clan](#)

ULT

⁶ And from [the sons of](#) Zerah: Jeuel [and their brothers](#), 690.

UST

⁶ Jeuel [and others of his relatives](#) (who were from Zerah's [clan](#). There were 690 people in this clan);

1 Chronicles 9:7

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)
- [the son of](#) (3)
- [Benjamin](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the tribe of](#)
- [son](#)
- [was...son](#) (2)
- [was...son](#) (3)
- [Benjamin](#)

ULT

⁷ And from [the sons of Benjamin](#): Sallu, [the son of](#) Meshullam, [the son of](#) Hodaviah, [the son of](#) Hassenuah,

UST

⁷ and from [the tribe of Benjamin](#), Sallu (Meshullam's [son](#); Meshullam was Hodaviah's [son](#); Hodaviah was Hassenuah's [son](#)),

1 Chronicles 9:8

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- the son of (4)
- the son of (5)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- was...son (2)
- son (3)
- was...son (4)
- was...son (5)

ULT

⁸ and Ibneiah [the son of](#) Jeroham, and Elah [the son of](#) Uzzi, [the son of](#) Mikri, and Meshullam [the son of](#) Shephatiah, [the son of](#) Reuel, [the son of](#) Ibrijah,

UST

⁸ Ibneiah (Jeroham's [son](#)), Elah (Uzzi's [son](#); Uzzi was Mikri's [son](#)), Meshullam (Shephatiah's [son](#); Shephatiah was Reuel's [son](#); Reuel was Ibrijah's [son](#)).

1 Chronicles 9:9

numbered 956

“numbered nine hundred and fifty-six people” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

heads of fathers' houses for their fathers' houses

Extended families are people related to each other who usually live in different houses, what the UST calls “clans.” Alternate translation: “leaders of their extended families”

Translation Words - ULT

- [and their brothers](#)
- [heads of](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [according to the house of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [descendants of Benjamin](#)
- [leaders of](#)
- [their clans](#)
- [their clans](#)
- [their clans](#)

ULT

⁹ [and their brothers](#) according to their generations, 956. All these men, [heads of fathers, according to the house of their fathers.](#)

UST

⁹ In all, there were 956 [descendants of Benjamin](#) living in Jerusalem. All these were [leaders of their clans.](#)

1 Chronicles 9:10

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Some of the priests who returned to Judah were](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And from [the priests](#): Jedaiah, and Jehoiarib, and Jakin,

UST

¹⁰ [Some of the priests who returned to Judah were](#): Jedaiah, Jehoiarib, Jakin,

1 Chronicles 9:11

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the house of God

the second temple, which the people built after they returned from Babylon

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- the son of (4)
- Hilkiah
- Zadok
- the house of
- God

Translation Words - UST

- the person in charge of those who took care of the temple
- the person in charge of those who took care of the temple
- Hilkiah's...Hilkiah
- was...son
- was...son
- was...son (2)
- was...son (3)
- was...son (4)
- Zadok's...Zadok

ULT

¹¹ and Azariah, [the son of Hilkiah](#), [the son of Meshullam](#), [the son of Zadok](#), [the son of Meraioth](#), [the son of Ahitub](#), the leader of [the house of God](#),

UST

¹¹ Azariah, [the person in charge of those who took care of the temple](#) (Azariah was [Hilkiah's son](#); Hilkiah was Meshullam's [son](#); Meshullam was [Zadok's son](#); Zadok was Meraioth's [son](#); Meraioth was Ahitub's [son](#)),

1 Chronicles 9:12

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- the son of (4)
- the son of (5)
- the son of (6)
- the son of (7)
- the son of (8)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- was...son (2)
- was...son (3)
- son (4)
- was...son (5)
- was...son (6)
- was...son (7)
- was...son (8)

ULT

¹² and Adaiah, [the son of](#) Jeroham, [the son of](#) Pashhur, [the son of](#) Malkijah, and Maasai, [the son of](#) Adiel, [the son of](#) Jahzerah, [the son of](#) Meshullam, [the son of](#) Meshillemith, [the son of](#) Immer;

UST

¹² Adaiah (Jeroham's [son](#); Jeroham was Pashhur's [son](#); Pashhur was Malkijah's [son](#)), and Maasai (Adiel's [son](#); Adiel was Jahzerah's [son](#); Jahzerah was Meshullam's [son](#); Meshullam was Meshillemith's [son](#); Meshillemith was Immer's [son](#)).

1 Chronicles 9:13

They were very capable men in the work

Alternate translation: "These capable men worked"

the house of God

the second temple, which the people built after they returned from Babylon

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, clans

numbered 1,760

"numbered one thousand and sixty priests" or "numbered seventeen hundred and sixty priests" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and their brothers](#)
- [heads](#)
- [of the house of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [mighty of](#)
- [strength](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Altogether there were](#)
- [They were leaders](#)
- [of their clans](#)
- [of their clans](#)
- [in the temple of](#)
- [and they all were capable](#)
- [and they all were capable](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

¹³ [and their brothers, heads of the house of their fathers, 1,760, mighty of strength](#) for the work of the service of the house of God.

UST

¹³ [Altogether there were 1,760 priests who returned to Judah. They were leaders of their clans, and they all were capable](#) and responsible for doing work [in the temple of God.](#)

1 Chronicles 9:14

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

among the descendants

Alternate translation: "one of the descendants"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [From the descendants of Levi who returned to Judah there were](#)
- [son](#)
- [was...son](#)
- [was...son \(2\)](#)
- [was a descendant of](#)

ULT

14 And from [the Levites](#): Shemaiah, [the son of](#) Hasshub, [the son of](#) Azrikam, [the son of](#) Hashabiah, from [the sons of](#) Merari,

UST

14 [From the descendants of Levi who returned to Judah there were](#): Shemaiah (Hasshub's [son](#); Hasshub was Azrikam's [son](#); Azrikam was Hashabiah's [son](#); Hashabiah [was a descendant of](#) Levi's youngest son Merari),

1 Chronicles 9:15

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)
- [the son of](#) (3)
- [Asaph](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [was...son](#) (2)
- [was...son](#) (3)
- [Asaph's](#)

ULT

¹⁵ and Bakbakkar, Heresh, and Galal, and Mattaniah, [the son of](#) Mika, [the son of](#) Zikri, [the son of](#) Asaph,

UST

¹⁵ Bakbakkar, Heresh, Galal, Mattaniah (Mika's [son](#); Mika was Zicri's [son](#); Zicri was [Asaph's son](#)),

1 Chronicles 9:16

General Information:

All of the names here except “Netophathites” are the names of men. The Netophathites were a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- and Obadiah
- the son of
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of
- the son of (3)
- Asa
- in the villages of

Translation Words - UST

- Obadiah
- son
- was...son
- was...son (2)
- was...son
- was...son (3)
- in one of the villages
- Asa's...Asa

ULT

16 and Obadiah, the son of Shemaiah, the son of Galal, the son of Jeduthun, and Berekiah, the son of Asa, the son of Elkanah, who lived in the villages of the Netophathites.

UST

16 Obadiah (Shemaiah's son; Shemaiah was Galal's son; Galal was Jeduthun's son), and Berekiah who lived in one of the villages where the Netophath people lived (Berekiah was Asa's son; Asa was Elkanah's son).

1 Chronicles 9:17

The doorkeepers were

Alternate translation: "The guards were" or "The gatekeepers were"

Shallum ... Akkub ... Talmon ... Ahiman

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the gatekeepers](#)
- [and their brothers](#)
- [the head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [From the descendants of Levi who returned to Judah who guarded the temple gates there were](#)
- [and some of their relatives](#)
- [was their leader](#)

ULT

17 [And the gatekeepers](#): Shallum, and Akkub, and Talmon, and Ahiman, [and their brothers](#); Shallum, [the head](#).

UST

17 [From the descendants of Levi who returned to Judah who guarded the temple gates there were](#) Shallum, Akkub, Talmon, Ahiman, [and some of their relatives](#). Shallum [was their leader](#).

1 Chronicles 9:18

they stood guard at the king's gate on the east side for the camp of Levi's descendants

Alternate translation: "Levi's descendants guarded the king's gate on the east side of their camp"

Translation Words - ULT

- in the gate of
- the gatekeepers
- the king
- the sons of
- Levi

Translation Words - UST

- at the...Gate
- those gatekeepers
- from the tribe of
- Levi
- King's

ULT

¹⁸ And until now in the gate of the king to the east, they were the gatekeepers for the camps of the sons of Levi.

UST

¹⁸ Up until the time of this writing, those gatekeepers from the tribe of Levi stood at the King's Gate on the east side of the city.

1 Chronicles 9:19

Shallum ... Kore ... Ebiasaph

These are all the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Korahites

descendants of Korah (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the door to the tent ... the entrance

These phrases both refer to the entrance of the tent of meeting, or the tabernacle.

the tent

This is a metonym for the second temple, which the people built after they returned from Babylon. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- Yahweh
- Korah
- and his brothers
- of the house of
- his father
- and their fathers
- the keepers of
- the keepers of
- the thresholds

Translation Words - UST

- was...son
- was...son (2)
- was...son (3)
- Yahweh
- Korah's
- Shallum and his relatives
- from his clan
- as their ancestors had done
- from his clan
- being gatekeepers
- being gatekeepers
- to guard

ULT

19 And Shallum, the son of Kore, the son of Ebiasaph, ^[1] the son of Korah, and his brothers of the house of his father, the Korahites, were over the work of the service, the keepers of the thresholds of the tent, and their fathers over the camp of Yahweh, the keepers of the entrance.

UST

19 Shallum was Kore's son; Kore was Ebiasaph's son; Ebiasaph was Korah's son. Shallum and his relatives from his clan, the people descended from Korah, had the duty of being gatekeepers, responsible to guard the entrances to the temple of Yahweh, as their ancestors had done.

1 Chronicles 9:20

Eleazar

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in charge of them

“in charge of the Korahites” (1 [Chronicles 9:19](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Phinehas](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Eleazar](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Phinehas](#)
- [Eleazar's](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²⁰ [And Phinehas the son of Eleazar](#) was leader over them before faces; [Yahweh](#) was with him.

UST

²⁰ Previously [Phinehas \(Eleazar's son\)](#) had supervised the gatekeepers. [Yahweh](#) was with Phinehas.

1 Chronicles 9:21

Meshelemiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the tent of meeting

The building where the Israelites prayed and offered sacrifices to God was sometimes called “the tent of meeting” in memory of the tent where Moses met with God when he and the Israelites were in the wilderness many years before this. Alternate translation: “the tent of meeting, that is, the temple”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Zechariah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [meeting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Zechariah](#)
- [son\) was](#)
- [the temple's](#)

ULT

²¹ [Zechariah the son of](#) Meshelemiah, gatekeeper of the entrance to the tent of [meeting](#).

UST

²¹ [Zechariah](#) (Meshelemiah's [son](#)) [was](#) a gatekeeper at [the temple's](#) entrance.

1 Chronicles 9:22

General Information:

(See: [Numbers](#))

who were chosen as gatekeepers

It is not clear who chose these men, so if you have to translate in active form, use your language's most general way of doing so. Alternate translation: "whom they had chosen to be gatekeepers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

numbered 212

"numbered two hundred and twelve" (See: [Numbers](#))

Their names were recorded in the people's records in their villages

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The records in peoples' villages included the names of these men" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in their villages](#)
- [David](#)
- [and Samuel](#)
- [established](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in their villages](#)
- [King David](#)
- [and...Samuel](#)
- [appointed](#)

ULT

²² All those chosen as gatekeepers at the thresholds, 212. They [in their villages](#) listed in their genealogy, they, [David and Samuel](#) the seer, [established](#) in their official duty.

UST

²² Altogether, there were 212 men chosen to guard the gates. The records of the clans [in their villages](#) listed their names. [King David](#) and the prophet [Samuel appointed](#) those men because those men were dependable.

1 Chronicles 9:23

their children

Alternate translation: "their descendants"

Translation Words - ULT

- and their sons
- the gates
- of the house of
- of the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- and their descendants
- the gates
- of Yahweh's temple
- also known as the sacred tent
- of Yahweh's temple

ULT

²³ And they and their sons over the gates of the house of Yahweh, of the house of the tent as guards.

UST

²³ The work of those gatekeepers and their descendants was to guard the gates of Yahweh's temple, also known as the sacred tent.

1 Chronicles 9:24

gatekeepers were posted

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "men guarded the entrances" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

on all four sides, toward the east, west, north, and south

The words "east, west, north, and south" explain the words "all four sides."

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...winds](#)
- [the gatekeepers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gatekeepers](#)
- [on each of the four sides of the temple](#)

ULT

²⁴ To the four [winds](#) were [the gatekeepers](#), east, west, north, and south.

UST

²⁴ There were [gatekeepers on each of the four sides of the temple](#), toward the east, west, north, and south.

1 Chronicles 9:25

Their brothers

Alternate translation: "The guards' brothers"

came in for seven-day rotations, in turn

"would come to help for 7-day periods, taking turns" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their brothers](#)
- [in their villages](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the relatives of the gatekeepers](#)
- [who lived in those villages](#)

ULT

²⁵ [And their brothers in their villages](#) were to come for seven days from time to time with these.

UST

²⁵ Sometimes it was necessary for [the relatives of the gatekeepers who lived in those villages](#) to come and help them. Each time some of them came, they helped the gatekeepers for seven days.

1 Chronicles 9:26

the four leaders ... were assigned to guard the rooms

It is not clear who assigned these men, so if you have to translate in active form, use your language's most general way of doing so. Alternate translation: "they assigned the four leaders ... to guard the rooms" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the house of God

the second temple, which the people built after they returned from Babylon

Translation Words - ULT

- [leaders of](#)
- [the gatekeepers](#)
- [Levites](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [descendants of Levi](#)
- [supervised](#)
- [the gatekeepers](#)
- [in the temple of](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

²⁶ For in official duty, they, the four [leaders of the gatekeepers](#), they were [Levites](#), and they were over the chambers and over the treasuries of [the house of God](#).

UST

²⁶ There were four [descendants of Levi](#) who worked every day, and they [supervised the gatekeepers](#). They also took care of the storerooms and other rooms [in the temple of God](#).

1 Chronicles 9:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- God

Translation Words - UST

- the temple
- the temple

ULT

²⁷ And around the house of God they would lodge, for on them was the watch. And they were over the key and morning by morning.

UST

²⁷ They stayed at the temple because their job was to guard it. Each morning they opened the gates.

1 Chronicles 9:28

Some of them

Alternate translation: "Some of the guards"

they counted the articles when they were brought in and when they were taken out

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "they counted the articles that people took out to use, and they counted the articles when people brought them back" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- they would bring them out

Translation Words - UST

- to bring those items out for sacrifices each day and

ULT

28 And from them over the utensils of the service, for by number they would bring them in and by number they would bring them out.

UST

28 Some of the gatekeepers took care of the various items used in the daily duties of the temple. Their job was to bring those items out for sacrifices each day and to store them again each night.

1 Chronicles 9:29

Some of them also were assigned to take care of

It is not clear who assigned these men, so if you have to translate in active form, use your language's most general way of doing so. Alternate translation: "The leaders also assigned some of them to take care of" or "Some of them also took care of" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Holy Place](#)
- [and the frankincense](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the other things in the temple...that were used in the sacrifices](#)
- [incense](#)

ULT

²⁹ And from them ones who were appointed over the vessels and over all the utensils of [the Holy Place](#), and over the fine flour, and the wine, and the oil, [and the frankincense](#), and the spices.

UST

²⁹ Other gatekeepers had the job to take care of [the other things in the temple](#) including the flour, wine, olive oil, [incense](#), and spices [that were used in the sacrifices](#).

1 Chronicles 9:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the priests

Translation Words - UST

- the priests
- the priests

ULT

³⁰ And from the sons of the priests, mixers of the ointment for the spices.

UST

³⁰ But some of the priests had the work of mixing the spices.

1 Chronicles 9:31

Mattithiah ... Shallum

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Korahite

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a descendant of Levi](#)

ULT

³¹ And Mattithiah, from [the Levites](#), he the firstborn of Shallum the Korahite, in official duty over the work of the flat cakes.

UST

³¹ There was [a descendant of Levi](#) named Mattithiah, the oldest son of Shallum, who was a descendant of Korah. His official duty was to bake the bread that was used in the offerings on the altar.

1 Chronicles 9:32

Kohathites

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

bread of the presence

See the translationWord page about “bread” for the specific definition of “bread of the presence.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [their brothers](#)
- [the bread of](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [by Sabbath](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the gatekeepers](#)
- [who were descended from Kohath](#)
- [the new loaves of bread](#)
- [every Sabbath day](#)
- [every Sabbath day](#)

ULT

³² And from [the sons of](#) the Kohathites, from [their brothers](#), over [the bread of](#) the rows, to prepare [Sabbath by Sabbath](#).

UST

³² Some of [the gatekeepers who were descended from Kohath](#) prepared [the new loaves of bread](#) to display before God that were placed on the table inside the temple [every Sabbath day](#).

1 Chronicles 9:33

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

they were free from work

Alternate translation: "they did not have to do other work"

carry out their assigned tasks

Alternate translation: "complete the tasks they needed to do"

day and night

This means "at all times" and can be translated using a phrase or word from your language or culture that gives the same meaning. (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heads of](#)
- [the fathers](#)
- [of the Levites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the descendants of Levi](#)
- [The leaders of](#)
- [those families](#)

ULT

³³ And these, the singers, [the heads of the fathers of the Levites](#) in the chambers were free, for by day and by night they were over them in the work.

UST

³³ Some of [the descendants of Levi](#) were musicians who worked in the temple. [The leaders of those families](#) stayed in the rooms of the temple. They did not do any other work in the temple because they they were responsible to serve as musicians day and night.

1 Chronicles 9:34

These were leaders of fathers' houses among the Levites, as listed in their genealogical records

Alternate translation: "The family history lists included the names of these Levite family leaders"

Translation Words - ULT

- the heads of
- heads
- the fathers
- of the Levites
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- the leaders of
- according to their genealogies
- the clans
- descended from Levi
- in Jerusalem

ULT

³⁴ These, the heads of the fathers of the Levites, according to their generations, heads. These lived in Jerusalem.

UST

³⁴ Those are the names of the leaders of the clans descended from Levi, according to their genealogies. They all lived in Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 9:35

Gibeon ... Gibeon

Alternate translation: "the man Gibeon ... the town of Gibeon"

Jeiel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Maakah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the father of](#)
- [Gibeon](#)
- [Maakah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and was an early settler and leader of those who lived there](#)
- [and was an early settler and leader of those who lived there](#)
- [Maakah](#)

ULT

³⁵ And in Gibeon, they lived, [the father of Gibeon](#), Jeiel, and the name of his wife, [Maakah](#),

UST

³⁵ Another descendant of Benjamin was Jeiel. He lived in the city of Gibeon [and was an early settler and leader of those who lived there](#). Jeiel's wife was [Maakah](#).

1 Chronicles 9:36

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [His other sons were](#)

ULT

³⁶ [and his son](#), the firstborn, Abdon, and Zur, and Kish, and Baal, and Ner, and Nadab,

UST

³⁶ His oldest son was Abdon. [His other sons were](#) Zur, Kish, Baal, Ner, Nadab,

1 Chronicles 9:37

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Zechariah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Zechariah](#)

ULT

³⁷ and Gedor, and Ahio, [and Zechariah](#), and Mikloth.

UST

³⁷ Gedor, Ahio, [Zechariah](#), and Mikloth.

1 Chronicles 9:38

Mikloth ... Shimeam

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their brothers](#)
- [their brothers](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [their relatives](#)
- [brother](#)

ULT

³⁸ And Mikloth fathered Shimeam. And also they, opposite [their brothers](#), lived [in Jerusalem](#) with [their brothers](#).

UST

³⁸ Mikloth (another of Jeiel's sons) was the father of Shimeah. All these descendants of Jeiel also lived [in Jerusalem](#) near [their relatives](#).

1 Chronicles 9:39

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Saul
- And Saul

Translation Words - UST

- King Saul
- Saul

ULT

³⁹ And Ner fathered Kish. And Kish fathered Saul. And Saul fathered Jonathan, and Malki-Shua, and Abinadab, and Esh-Baal.

UST

³⁹ Ner was the father of Kish. Kish was the father of King Saul. Saul was the father of Jonathan, Malki-Shua, Abinadab, and Esh-Baal.

1 Chronicles 9:40

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the son of](#)
- [Micah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son was](#)
- [Micah](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ [And the son of](#) Jonathan, Merib-Baal.
And Merib-Baal fathered [Micah](#).

UST

⁴⁰ Jonathan's [son was](#) Merib-Baal.
Merib-Baal was the father of [Micah](#).

1 Chronicles 9:41

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [Micah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Micah's](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

⁴¹ [And the sons of Micah](#): Pithon, and Melek, and Tahrea.

UST

⁴¹ [Micah's sons were](#) Pithon, Melek, and Tahrea.

1 Chronicles 9:42

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Ahaz](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ahaz](#)

ULT

⁴² [And Ahaz](#) fathered Jarah. And Jarah fathered Alemeth, and Azmaveth, and Zimri. And Zimri fathered Moza.

UST

⁴² [Ahaz](#) was the father of Jarah. Jarah was the father of Alemeth, Azmaveth, and Zimri. Zimri was the father of Moza.

1 Chronicles 9:43

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was Binea's son](#)
- [was Rephaiah's son](#)
- [was Eleasah's son](#)

ULT

⁴³ And Moza fathered Binea. And Rephaiah [his son](#), Eleasah [his son](#), Azel [his son](#).

UST

⁴³ Moza was the father of Binea. Rephaiah [was Binea's son](#). Eleasah [was Rephaiah's son](#). Azel [was Eleasah's son](#).

1 Chronicles 9:44

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- the sons of
- their names
- and Obadiah

Translation Words - UST

- sons
- sons
- Their names
- Obadiah

ULT

44 And to Azel six **sons**, and these, **their names**: Azrikam, Bokeru, and Ishmael, and Sheariah, **and Obadiah**, and Hanan. These, **the sons of** Azel.

9:19 ^[1] in 1 Chronicles 26:1.

UST

44 Azel had six **sons**. **Their names** were Azrikam, Bokeru, Ishmael, Sheariah, **Obadiah**, and Hanan. These were all of Azel's **sons**.

1 Chronicles 10

1 Chronicles 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The death of Saul

Saul died because he disobeyed God.

1 Chronicles 10:1

Every man of Israel fled from before the Philistines and fell down dead on Mount Gilboa

It is implied that these men were Israelite soldiers. Alternate translation: "The whole army of Israel ran away from the Philistines" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Every man of Israel ... fell down dead

This is probably a generalization. It seems that while all the soldiers did run away, not all of them died. Alternate translation: "Every man of Israel ... most of them died" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- with Israel
- Israel
- the Philistines
- and they fell

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- Israelite
- them
- and many Israelites died

ULT

¹ And the Philistines fought [with Israel](#). And the men of [Israel](#) fled from the faces of [the Philistines](#), and they fell slain on Mount Gilboa.

UST

¹ Now, the Philistine army battled [the Israelites](#). The [Israelite](#) soldiers ran away from [them](#), and many [Israelites died](#) on Mount Gilboa.

1 Chronicles 10:2

Abinadab ... Malki-Shua

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 8:33](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)
- [the Philistines](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The Philistine soldiers](#)
- [they](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [his](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [sons](#)

ULT

² And [the Philistines](#) pursued after [Saul](#) and after [his sons](#). And [the Philistines](#) struck down Jonathan, and Abinadab, and Malki-Shua, [the sons of Saul](#).

UST

² [The Philistine soldiers](#) caught up with [Saul](#) and [his sons](#), and [they](#) killed [his sons](#) Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malki-Shua.

1 Chronicles 10:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Saul

Translation Words - UST

- Saul

ULT

³ And the battle was heavy against Saul, and those who shoot with the bow found him, and he writhed in pain from the ones shooting.

UST

³ The fighting was very fierce around Saul. The archers shot Saul, and they wounded him severely.

1 Chronicles 10:4

thrust me through with it

The action of stabbing is a metonym for the result, death. Alternate translation: “kill me with it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

these uncircumcised will come

The nominal adjective “uncircumcised” can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “these people who are uncircumcised will come” or “these uncircumcised people will come” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

these uncircumcised

Here “uncircumcised” represents people who do not belong to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “these people who do not belong to Yahweh” or “these heathen Philistines” (See: [Metonymy](#))

fell on it

Saul probably stuck the handle into the ground and leaned on the point so the sword would go through his body as he fell down. The action is a metonym for the result, death. Alternate translation: “killed himself with it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Saul
- Saul
- your sword
- he feared
- and he fell

Translation Words - UST

- Saul
- Saul
- your sword
- he was...scared
- and stabbed himself...and died

ULT

⁴ Then Saul said to the lifter of his equipment, “Draw **your sword** and pierce me with it, lest these uncircumcised will come and mistreat me.” But the lifter of his equipment was not willing, for **he feared** greatly. And Saul took the sword, and **he fell** on it.

UST

⁴ Saul said to his armor bearer, “Take out **your sword** and kill me with it, so that these heathen Philistines will not be able to torture me.” But his armor bearer refused to do that because **he was very scared**. So Saul grabbed his own sword and **stabbed himself** with it and died.

1 Chronicles 10:5

fell on his sword

He probably stuck the handle into the ground and leaned on the point so the sword would go through his body as he fell down. The action is a metonym for the result, death. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 10:4](#). Alternate translation: “killed himself with his sword” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [and he...fell](#)
- [and he died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Saul](#)
- [he...stabbed](#)
- [and died](#)

ULT

⁵ And the lifter of his equipment saw that [Saul](#) had died, [and he](#) himself likewise [fell](#) on the sword, [and he died](#).

UST

⁵ When his armor bearer saw that [Saul](#) was dead, [he](#) also [stabbed](#) himself with his own sword [and died](#).

1 Chronicles 10:6

and his three sons

The word “died” is understood from the previous phrase. It can be repeated. Alternate translation: “and his 3 sons died” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [And...died](#)
- [his...sons](#)
- [his house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So...died](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [his...sons](#)
- [his...dynasty](#)

ULT

⁶ And [Saul died](#), and [his](#) three [sons](#). And all [his house](#) died together.

UST

⁶ So [Saul](#) and [his](#) three [sons died](#). So [his](#) whole [dynasty](#) ended together.

1 Chronicles 10:7

When every man of Israel

This is probably a generalization. Alternate translation: “When the men of Israel” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

they had fled

Alternate translation: “the Israelite soldiers had fled”

the Philistines came and lived in them

“the Philistines came and lived in the cities from which the Israelites had fled.” This probably happened after the events in verses 8-12.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [and his sons](#)
- [the Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelites](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [and his sons](#)
- [the Philistine soldiers](#)

ULT

⁷ And every man of [Israel](#) who was in the valley saw that they had fled, and that [Saul and his sons](#) had died. And they abandoned their cities, and they fled. And [the Philistines](#) came, and they lived in them.

UST

⁷ When all [the Israelites](#) living in the valley saw that their army had run away and that [Saul and his sons](#) were dead, they left their towns and ran away. Then [the Philistine soldiers](#) came and occupied those towns.

1 Chronicles 10:8

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

to strip the dead

Alternate translation: "to take everything of value off of the dead bodies"

Saul and his sons fallen

Here "fallen" is a polite way to refer to someone who died in battle. Alternate translation: "Saul and his sons dead" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [his sons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Philistine soldiers](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [his sons](#)

ULT

⁸ And it happened on the next day, and [the Philistines](#) came to strip the slain, and they found [Saul](#) and [his sons](#) fallen on Mount Gilboa.

UST

⁸ The next day, when [the Philistine soldiers](#) came to take away the possessions of the dead Israelite soldiers, they found [Saul](#) and [his sons](#) dead on Mount Gilboa.

1 Chronicles 10:9

They stripped him

Alternate translation: "The Philistines removed everything from Saul's body"

to carry the news to their idols and to the people

They told the people what had happened and praised their idols in prayer.

to carry the news

A person telling others about something that has happened is spoken of as if the person were carrying a solid object and giving it to those other people. Alternate translation: "to tell what had happened" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his head](#)
- [the Philistines](#)
- [the people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his head](#)
- [their own](#)
- [to their people](#)

ULT

⁹ And they stripped him, and they carried away [his head](#) and his armor. And they sent among the land of [the Philistines](#) all around to bring news to their idols and [the people](#).

UST

⁹ They took everything from Saul's corpse; they cut off [his head](#) and took his equipment. Then they sent messengers throughout [their own](#) land, to proclaim the news to their idols and [to their people](#).

1 Chronicles 10:10

They put his armor

Alternate translation: "The Philistines put Saul's armor"

Dagon

This is the name of a false god. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And they put
- in the house of
- in the house of
- their gods

Translation Words - UST

- They put
- in the temple
- in the temple
- to their gods

ULT

¹⁰ And they put his armor in the house of their gods, and his head they fastened in the house of Dagon.

UST

¹⁰ They put Saul's equipment in the temple to their gods, and they hung his severed head in the temple to their god Dagon.

1 Chronicles 10:11

When all Jabesh Gilead heard of all that the Philistines

Both instances of the word “all” are generalizations. The name of the town is a metonym for the people who live in the town, and the people group name is a metonym for that people group’s soldiers. Alternate translation: “When the people of Jabesh Gilead heard what the soldiers of the Philistine army” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Jabesh Gilead

This is the name of a town in the region of Gilead. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)
- [to Saul](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Philistines](#)
- [to Saul’s corpse](#)

ULT

¹¹ And all Jabesh Gilead heard all that [the Philistines](#) did [to Saul](#),

UST

¹¹ Everyone who lived in Jabesh in the region of Gilead heard about everything [the Philistines](#) had done [to Saul’s corpse](#).

1 Chronicles 10:12

their bones

The bones are a synecdoche for the dead bodies. Alternate translation: "their bodies" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

seven days

"7 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [strength](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [and they fasted](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brave](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [Then the people of Jabesh fasted](#)

ULT

¹² and all the men of [strength](#) rose, and they carried the corpse of [Saul](#) and the corpses of [his sons](#). And they brought them to Jabesh. And they buried their bones under the large tree in Jabesh, [and they fasted](#) seven days.

UST

¹² So all the [brave](#) men of Jabesh went and got the corpses of [Saul](#) and [his sons](#) and brought them back to Jabesh. They buried their bodies under the big tree in Jabesh. [Then the people of Jabesh fasted](#) for seven days.

1 Chronicles 10:13

Connecting Statement:

Verses 13 and 14 give a summary of why Saul died. If your language has a way of showing that this is not part of the story line, you could use it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- Saul
- And...died
- because of his infidelity
- he was unfaithful
- to Yahweh
- Yahweh
- he did...keep
- to seek

Translation Words - UST

- Now...died
- Saul
- because of his treachery
- he betrayed
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- doing
- and asked her what he should do

ULT

13 And Saul died because of his infidelity which he was unfaithful to Yahweh on account of the word of Yahweh which he did not keep, and also to ask a medium to seek,

UST

13 Now, Saul died because of his treachery; he betrayed Yahweh by not doing what Yahweh said. Saul even went to a woman who talks to the spirits of dead people and asked her what he should do,

1 Chronicles 10:14

Connecting Statement:

Verses 13 and 14 give a summary of why Saul died. If your language has a way of showing that this is not part of the story line, you could use it here.

did not seek guidance from Yahweh

Alternate translation: "did not ask Yahweh to guide him"

turned over the kingdom to David son of Jesse

Here "turned over the kingdom" is an idiom that means to give someone authority over a kingdom. Alternate translation: "made David, son of Jesse, king" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he did...seek](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and he killed him](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Jesse](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [asking...what he should do](#)
- [Yahweh...Yahweh](#)
- [So...caused him to die](#)
- [son of](#)
- [Jesse](#)

ULT

14 and [he did not seek Yahweh, and he killed him](#). And he turned the kingdom to David, [the son of Jesse](#).

UST

14 instead of [asking Yahweh what he should do](#). So Yahweh caused him to die and appointed David [son of Jesse](#), to be the king of Israel.

1 Chronicles 11

1 Chronicles 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of David begins here and continues throughout the remainder of this book.

Special concepts in this chapter

King David the military leader

David was made the king of all Israel and was the leader of their army. He conquered Jerusalem and strengthened its defenses. He had many brave men in his army that did great deeds. (See: [work](#), [works](#), [deeds](#))

1 Chronicles 11:1

all Israel came to David

This is a generalization that means people from every tribe in Israel came to David, but not every individual. Alternate translation: “people from throughout Israel came to David” or “people from every tribe in Israel came to David” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

we are your flesh and bone

This idiom means that they are relatives. Alternate translation: “we are your relatives” or “we have the same ancestors as you” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

¹ And all [Israel](#) gathered to [David](#) at Hebron, saying, “Look, your bones and your flesh are we.

UST

¹ Then the people of [Israel](#) came to [David](#) at the city of Hebron and said to him, “Listen, we have the same ancestors as you.

1 Chronicles 11:2

In the recent past

This is historical information. Saul had been their king before David. (See: [Background Information](#))

You will shepherd my people Israel, and you will become a ruler over my people Israel

These two clauses mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh had chosen David to be king. (See: [Parallelism](#))

You will shepherd my people Israel

Here ruling over the people is spoken of as shepherding them. Alternate translation: "You will care for my people Israel" or "You will lead my people Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Saul
- king
- Israel
- Israel
- Israel
- Yahweh
- your God
- my people
- my people

Translation Words - UST

- Saul
- our king
- our Israelite soldiers
- for my people
- Israel
- Yahweh
- our God
- for my people
- Israel

ULT

² Even yesterday also the day before that, even when Saul was king, you were the one who brought out and the one who brought in Israel. And Yahweh your God said to you, "You yourself will shepherd my people, Israel, and you yourself will be leader over my people Israel."

UST

² In the past, when Saul was our king, you were the one who led our Israelite soldiers in battle. You are the one to whom Yahweh our God promised, "You will care for my people; you will lead Israel."

1 Chronicles 11:3

They anointed David king over Israel

To “anoint” is a symbolic act to show that they recognized that God had chosen David as king. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

the word of Yahweh that had been declared by Samuel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the word of Yahweh that Samuel had declared” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the elders of
- Israel
- Israel
- by the hand of
- Samuel
- the king
- king
- David
- David
- and...cut
- a covenant
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Israelite
- the Israelite people
- the...elders
- the prophet Samuel
- the prophet Samuel
- David
- to set him apart to be the king
- David
- David
- made
- an agreement
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

ULT

³ And all the elders of Israel came to the king at Hebron, and David cut with them a covenant at Hebron before the face of Yahweh. And they anointed David king over Israel according to the word of Yahweh by the hand of Samuel.

UST

³ So all the Israelite elders came to David at Hebron. There David made an agreement with them with Yahweh as witness. The elders anointed David with oil to set him apart to be the king of the Israelite people, just as Yahweh had previously told the prophet Samuel would happen.

1 Chronicles 11:4

David and all Israel

Here the phrase “all Israel” represents the entire Israelite army. Alternate translation: “David and all the Israelite army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Now the Jebusites ... were there

The word “now” is used to mark a break in the main story line. Here the narrator tells background information about Jerusalem. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [the Jebusites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [the Israelite soldiers](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [the Jebus people group](#)

ULT

⁴ And [David](#) went and all [Israel to Jerusalem](#); that is, Jebus. And there were [the Jebusites](#), the inhabitants of the land.

UST

⁴ [David](#) and all [the Israelite soldiers](#) went [to Jerusalem](#). Another name for the city was Jebus because [the Jebus people group](#) lived in the area.

1 Chronicles 11:5

David took the stronghold of Zion

Here the word “took” is an idiom that means “captured” or “conquered.” Since David led the army, his name here is a synecdoche for the whole army who attacked the city. Alternate translation: “David captured the stronghold of Zion” or “David and the Israelite army captured the stronghold of Zion” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

the stronghold of Zion ... the city of David

Both of these names refer to Jerusalem.

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [Zion](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David and his soldiers](#)
- [David](#)
- [named Zion](#)

ULT

⁵ And the inhabitants of Jebus said to David, “You will not come in here.” But [David](#) captured the stronghold of [Zion](#), that is, the city of [David](#).

UST

⁵ The people in the city said to David, “You will not get in here!” But [David and his soldiers](#) captured the fortress there [named Zion](#). Another name for it since then is the City of [David](#).

1 Chronicles 11:6

Zeruiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

so he was made the chief

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so David made Joab the chief" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [son of](#)

ULT

⁶ And [David](#) said, "Whoever strikes down the Jebusites first will become head and chief." And [Joab the son of Zeruiah](#) went up first, and he became head.

UST

⁶ Now, [David](#) had said to his soldiers, "Whoever leads our soldiers to defeat the people in Jebus will become the commander of all my army." [Joab son of Zeruiah](#) led the soldiers, so he became the commander.

1 Chronicles 11:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- it

Translation Words - UST

- David
- David
- it

ULT

⁷ And David lived in the stronghold; therefore they called it the city of David.

UST

⁷ So David moved into the fortress. That is why they named it the City of David.

1 Chronicles 11:8

He built the city all around ... Joab restored the rest of the city

The word “he” refers to David. The reader should understand that David and Joab were probably in charge of other men who made the fortifications. (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Millo

This likely refers to a terraced structure that consisted of retaining walls with dirt filled in behind them. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the city
- the city
- And Joab
- restored

Translation Words - UST

- the city
- the city
- Joab's men
- repaired

ULT

⁸ And he built [the city](#) all around, from the Millo and as far as that which surrounds. [And Joab restored](#) the rest of [the city](#).

UST

⁸ David's workers rebuilt [the city](#), starting where the land was filled in and extending to the wall that was around the city. [Joab's men repaired](#) the other parts of [the city](#).

1 Chronicles 11:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- and Yahweh of

Translation Words - UST

- David
- because Yahweh

ULT

⁹ And David went, going and becoming great, and Yahweh of Hosts was with him.

UST

⁹ David became more and more powerful because Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, helped him.

1 Chronicles 11:10

These were the leaders David had

Alternate translation: "These were the leaders of David's warriors"

who showed themselves strong with him in his kingdom ... to make him king

This phrase means that both the leaders of David's army, and the full army, helped David to establish himself as king over Israel. Alternate translation: "who strongly supported David's kingdom ... to make him king" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the heads of
- the mighty ones
- in his kingdom
- to make him king
- Israel
- Israel
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- Israel
- the leaders
- warriors
- David's reign
- and supported him in becoming king
- Yahweh

ULT

¹⁰ And these, the heads of the mighty ones who belonged to David strengthened themselves with him in his kingdom, with all Israel, to make him king, according to the word of Yahweh concerning Israel.

UST

¹⁰ Together with all Israel, the leaders of David's warriors helped establish David's reign and supported him in becoming king, just as Yahweh had told Israel.

1 Chronicles 11:11

Jashobeam

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

a Hachmonite

This refers to a person from the Hachmon clan. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

on one occasion

Alternate translation: "in one battle"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the mighty ones](#)
- [a son of](#)
- [the head of](#)
- [swung](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [warriors](#)
- [was from](#)
- [He was the leader of](#)
- [fought](#)

ULT

11 And these, the number of [the mighty ones](#) who belonged to David: Jashobeam, [a son of](#) a Hachmonite, [the head of](#) the officers ^[1]. He [swung](#) his spear against 300, slain at one time.

UST

11 David's [warriors](#) included: Jashobeam [was from](#) the Hachmon clan. [He was the leader of](#) the officers. One time he [fought](#) against 300 enemies and killed them all with his spear.

1 Chronicles 11:12

After him

Alternate translation: "After Jashobeam"

Eleazar ... Dodo

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Ahohite

The "Ahohites" is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Eleazar
- the son of
- the...mighty ones

Translation Words - UST

- Eleazar
- son of
- warriors

ULT

¹² And after him, [Eleazar the son of Dodo](#), the Ahohite, he among the three [mighty ones](#).

UST

¹² Next was [Eleazar son of Dodo](#), from the clan of Ahoh. He was one of David's three elite [warriors](#).

1 Chronicles 11:13

Pas Dammim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [had assembled](#)
- [there](#)
- [barley](#)
- [the Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [gathered](#)
- [gathered](#)
- [barley](#)
- [the Philistine soldiers](#)

ULT

¹³ He was with [David](#) at Pas Dammim, and the Philistines [had assembled there](#) for battle. And there was a portion of the field full of [barley](#). And the people fled from the faces of [the Philistines](#).

UST

¹³ Once he was with [David](#) at Pas Dammim when the Philistine soldiers [gathered](#) for the battle. There was a field of [barley](#) there. At first the Israelite soldiers ran away from [the Philistine soldiers](#),

1 Chronicles 11:14

They stood in the middle of the field

Alternate translation: "David and Eleazar stood in the middle of the field"

cut down the Philistines

This means that they killed the Philistine soldiers with their swords.
Alternate translation: "killed the Philistines" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they delivered it](#)
- [And...saved](#)
- [the Philistines](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and fought to defend it](#)
- [enabled them to win](#)
- [the Philistine soldiers](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

14 And they took their stand in the midst of the portion. [And they delivered it](#), and they struck down [the Philistines](#). And [Yahweh saved](#) a great salvation.

UST

14 but then they stopped in the middle of the field [and fought to defend it](#). They killed [the Philistine soldiers](#). [Yahweh enabled them to win](#) a great victory.

1 Chronicles 11:15

three of the thirty

“3 of the 30” (See: [Numbers](#))

the cave of Adullam

“the cave near the town of Adullam.” Adullam is near Bethlehem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Valley of Rephaim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heads](#)
- [David](#)
- [the Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [greatest](#)
- [David when he was camping](#)
- [Philistine](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And three from the 30 [heads](#) went down to the rock to [David](#), to the cave of Adullam. And the camp of [the Philistines](#) encamped in the Valley of Rephaim.

UST

¹⁵ One time three of David's 30 [greatest](#) warriors came to [David when he was camping](#) next to the huge rock outside the cave near Adullam. At that same time, the [Philistine](#) army had camped in the Valley of Rephaim.

1 Chronicles 11:16

in his stronghold, a cave

Alternate translation: "in his safe place in a cave"

the Philistines had established their camp at Bethlehem

Alternate translation: "the Philistines had stationed soldiers in Bethlehem"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Philistine soldiers](#)

ULT

16 And David then was in the stronghold, and the garrison of [the Philistines](#) then was in Bethlehem.

UST

16 David was then in a fortress, and some of [the Philistine soldiers](#) were occupying Bethlehem.

1 Chronicles 11:17

the well at Bethlehem, the well that is by the gate

These two phrases refer to the same well. The second specifies which well in Bethlehem. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [is by the gate](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [near the gate](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And [David](#) desired, and he said, “Who will give me water to drink from the well of Bethlehem which [is by the gate](#)?”

UST

¹⁷ One day [David](#) longingly said, “I wish that someone would bring me some water from the well [near the gate](#) at Bethlehem.”

1 Chronicles 11:18

three mighty men

“3 mighty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

broke through the army of the Philistines

Alternate translation: “fought their way through the army of the Philistines”

the well of Bethlehem, the well at the gate

These two phrases refer to the same well. The second specifies which well in Bethlehem. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Chronicles 11:17](#). (See: [Doublet](#))

he poured it out to Yahweh

This means that he poured out the water as an offering to Yahweh. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)
- [by the gate](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Philistine](#)
- [from that well](#)
- [David](#)
- [he](#)
- [as an offering to Yahweh](#)

ULT

18 And the three broke through the camp of [the Philistines](#), and they drew water from the well of Bethlehem which was [by the gate](#). And they carried, and they brought to [David](#). But [David](#) was not willing to drink it, and he poured it out [to Yahweh](#).

UST

18 So the three greatest warriors forced their way through the [Philistine](#) camp and drew some water [from that well](#), and brought it to [David](#). But [he](#) would not drink it. Instead, he poured it out on the ground [as an offering to Yahweh](#).

1 Chronicles 11:19

May it be that I should never do this!

Alternate translation: "May I never do something like this!" or "This is something I should never do!"

Should I drink the blood of these men who have risked their lives?

David speaks of the water as if it were blood because the men risked their lives to bring the water to him. He uses a question to emphasize this. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I should not drink this water, which would be like drinking the blood of these men who have risked their lives to bring it to me." (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [before my God](#)
- [with their lives](#)
- [with their lives](#)
- [the...mighty ones](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [and taking their lives](#)
- [they were willing to give their lives](#)
- [greatest](#)

ULT

19 And he said, "Far be it from me [before my God](#) from doing this! Do I drink the blood of these men [with their lives](#)? For [with their lives](#) they brought it." And he was not willing to drink it. These, the three [mighty ones](#) did.

UST

19 He said, "[God](#) would consider it wrong for me to drink this water! That would be like drinking the blood of these men [and taking their lives](#), since [they were willing to give their lives](#) for me!" So he refused to drink it. That was one of the things that David's three [greatest](#) warriors did.

1 Chronicles 11:20

Abishai

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 2:16](#).

captain over the Three

This means Abishai was the leader of the three men who went and got water for David.

three hundred

"300 men" or "300 warriors" (See: [Numbers](#))

He is mentioned along with the Three

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "People often mentioned him when they spoke of the Three" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the brother of](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [the head of](#)
- [swung](#)
- [a name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joab's](#)
- [brother](#)
- [the leader of](#)
- [fame](#)
- [fought](#)

ULT

²⁰ And Abshai, [the brother of Joab](#), he was [the head of](#) the Three. And he [swung](#) his spear against 300, slain. And to him [a name](#) among the Three.

UST

²⁰ Now [Joab's brother](#) Abshai was [the leader of](#) the three elite warriors, and he gained [fame](#) among those three. One time Abshai [fought](#) 300 enemies with his spear, and he killed them all.

1 Chronicles 11:21

Of the Three, he was given double honor and became

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This could mean: (1) that he received double the honor that the Three received. Alternate translation: "People gave him twice as much honor as they gave the Three and he became" or (2) the Three honored him more than they honored others. Alternate translation: "The Three honored him more than they honored others and he became" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he was honored](#)
- [a chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he was honored](#)
- [leader](#)

ULT

²¹ From the Three, in the second [he was honored](#) and he became to them [a chief](#), but up to the Three he did not enter.

UST

²¹ Among a second group of three elite warriors, [he was honored](#) and became their [leader](#), but he was not considered part of the first group of three elite warriors.

1 Chronicles 11:22

Benaiah ... Jehoiada ... Ariel

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kabzeel

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Benaiah
- the son of
- the son of
- Jehoiada
- strength
- deeds
- Moab

Translation Words - UST

- Jehoiada's
- son
- was a...soldier
- Benaiah
- brave
- deeds
- the Moab people group

ULT

²² Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, the son of a man of strength, great deeds, from Kabzeel. He himself struck down the two of Ariel of Moab. And he himself went down, and he struck down the lion in the midst of the pit on the day of the snow.

UST

²² Jehoiada's son Benaiah was a brave soldier from the city of Kabzeel who did great deeds. He killed two of the best warriors from the Moab people group. One day he went down into a pit in snowy weather and killed a lion.

1 Chronicles 11:23

five cubits

A “cubit” is a unit of measurement equal to 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “2.3 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

a spear like a weaver’s beam

This compares the size of the spear with the size of a weaver’s beam. Alternate translation: “a spear the size of a weaver’s beam” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he went down to him

“Benaiah went down to the Egyptian.” This idiom means that he met him in battle. Alternate translation: “he attacked him” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#)
- [the Egyptian](#)
- [the Egyptian](#)
- [And in the hand of](#)
- [from the hand of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egyptian](#)
- [The Egyptian](#)
- [the Egyptian’s](#)
- [carried](#)
- [the Egyptian’s](#)

ULT

²³ And he himself struck down the man of [Egypt](#), a man of stature, five cubits. [And in the hand of the Egyptian](#), a spear like the beam of weavers, but he went down to him with a staff. And he seized the spear [from the hand of the Egyptian](#), and he killed him with his spear.

UST

²³ He also killed an [Egyptian](#) soldier who was two and one-third meters tall. [The Egyptian carried](#) a spear that was as long as a weaver’s rod, but Benaiah fought him with a club. Benaiah grabbed [the Egyptian’s](#) spear and killed him with it.

1 Chronicles 11:24

did these feats

Alternate translation: "did these mighty deeds"

he was named alongside the three mighty men

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "people praised him like they praised the three mighty men" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Benaiah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [a name](#)
- [the...mighty ones](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benaiah](#)
- [son of](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [famous](#)
- [elite](#)

ULT

²⁴ These, [Benaiah the son of Jehoiada](#) did, and to him [a name](#) among the three [mighty ones](#).

UST

²⁴ Those are some of the things that [Benaiah son of Jehoiada](#) did. So he became [famous](#) along with the three [elite](#) warriors.

1 Chronicles 11:25

He was more highly regarded than the thirty soldiers in general, but he was not regarded quite as highly as the three mighty men

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The people respected him more than the 30 soldiers, but not as much as the 3 most elite soldiers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his bodyguard

the group of people responsible for protecting David

Translation Words - ULT

- was honored
- David
- And...set him

Translation Words - UST

- was...honored
- David
- appointed him

ULT

²⁵ From the 30, behold, he himself was honored, but to the three, he did not enter. And David set him over his bodyguard.

UST

²⁵ Indeed, he was more honored than the remainder of the 30 warriors, but he did not become a member of the first group of three warriors. David appointed him to be the leader of his bodyguards.

1 Chronicles 11:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the brother of
- Joab
- the son of

Translation Words - UST

- brother of
- Joab
- son of

ULT

²⁶ And the mighty ones of strength:
Asahel the brother of Joab, Elhanan the
son of Dodo from Bethlehem,

UST

²⁶ These are the names of the great
warriors: Asahel, brother of Joab;
Elhanan son of Dodo, from Bethlehem;

1 Chronicles 11:27

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁷ Shammoth the Harorite, Helez the Pelonite,

UST

²⁷ Shammoth, from Haror; Helez, from Pelon;

1 Chronicles 11:28

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)

ULT

²⁸ Ira [the son of](#) Ikkesh the Tekoite,
Abiezer the Anathothite,

UST

²⁸ Ira [son of](#) Ikkesh, from Tekoa;
Abiezer, from Anathoth;

1 Chronicles 11:29

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁹ Sibbekai the Hushathite, Ilai the Ahohite,

UST

²⁹ Sibbekai, from Hushah; Ilai from Ahoh;

1 Chronicles 11:30

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)

ULT

³⁰ Maharai the Netophathite, Heled [the son of](#) Baanah the Netophathite,

UST

³⁰ Maharai, from Netophah; Heled [son of](#) Baanah, from Netophah;

1 Chronicles 11:31

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the sons of
- Benjamin
- Benaiah

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- which belonged to the descendants of
- Benjamin
- Benaiah

ULT

³¹ Ithai [the son of](#) Ribai from Gibeah of [the sons of Benjamin](#), Benaiah the Pirathonite,

UST

³¹ Ithai, [son of](#) Ribai, from Gibeah [which belonged to the descendants of Benjamin](#); Benaiah, from Pirathon;

1 Chronicles 11:32

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³² Hurai from the valleys of Gaash, Abiel the Arbathite,

UST

³² Hurai, from the valleys near Mount Gaash; Abiel from Arabah;

1 Chronicles 11:33

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³³ Azmaveth the Baharumite, Eliahba the Shaalbonite,

UST

³³ Azmaveth, from Baharum; Eliahba, from Shaalbon;

1 Chronicles 11:34

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of

Translation Words - UST

- the sons of
- son of

ULT

³⁴ the sons of Hashem the Gizonite,
Jonathan the son of Shagee the
Hararite,

UST

³⁴ the sons of Hashem from Gizon;
Jonathan son of Shagee from Harar;

1 Chronicles 11:35

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [Ur](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [son of \(2\)](#)
- [Ur](#)

ULT

³⁵ Ahiam [the son of](#) Sakar the Hararite,
Eliphal [the son of Ur](#),

UST

³⁵ Ahiam [son of](#) Sakar from Harar;
Eliphal [son of Ur](#);

1 Chronicles 11:36

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ahijah](#)

ULT

³⁶ Hepher the Mekerathite, [Ahijah](#) the Pelonite,

UST

³⁶ Hepher from Mekerath; [Ahijah](#) from Pelon;

1 Chronicles 11:37

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)

ULT

³⁷ Hezro the Carmelite, Naarai [the son of](#) Ezbai,

UST

³⁷ Hezro from Carmel; Naarai [son of](#) Ezbai;

1 Chronicles 11:38

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Joel
- the brother of
- Nathan
- the son of

Translation Words - UST

- Joel
- the brother of
- Nathan
- son of

ULT

³⁸ Joel the brother of Nathan, Mibhar
the son of Hagri,

UST

³⁸ Joel the brother of Nathan; Mibhar
son of Hagri;

1 Chronicles 11:39

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the Ammonite
- Joab
- the son of

Translation Words - UST

- from the Ammon people group
- Joab
- son of

ULT

³⁹ Zelek [the Ammonite](#), Naharai the Berothite, the lifter of the equipment of [Joab the son of Zeruiah](#),

UST

³⁹ Zelek [from the Ammon people group](#); Naharai from Beeroth, the armor bearer of [Joab son of Zeruiah](#);

1 Chronicles 11:40

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴⁰ Ira the Ithrite, Gareb the Ithrite,

UST

⁴⁰ Ira from Jattir; Gareb from Jattir;

1 Chronicles 11:41

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Uriah](#)
- [the Hittite](#)
- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Uriah, Bathsheba's husband](#)
- [from the Heth people group](#)
- [son of](#)

ULT

⁴¹ [Uriah the Hittite](#), [Zabad the son of Ahlai](#),

UST

⁴¹ [Uriah, Bathsheba's husband](#), [from the Heth people group](#); [Zabad son of Ahlai](#);

1 Chronicles 11:42

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

thirty with him

"30 men with him" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [a head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [a leader](#)

ULT

⁴² Adina [the son of](#) Shiza the Reubenite, [a head](#) of the Reubenites, and with him 30,

UST

⁴² Adina [son of](#) Shiza from the tribe of Reuben, [a leader](#) from that tribe, who had 30 soldiers with him;

1 Chronicles 11:43

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- Maacah

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- Maacah

ULT

⁴³ Hanan [the son of Maacah](#), and
Joshaphat the Mithnite,

UST

⁴³ Hanan [son of Maacah](#); Joshaphat
from Mithna;

1 Chronicles 11:44

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons of](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ Uzzia the Ashterathite, Shama and Jeiel [the sons of](#) Hotham the Aroerite,

UST

⁴⁴ Uzzia from Ashterath; Shama and Jeiel, [sons of](#) Hotham, from Aroer.

1 Chronicles 11:45

This concludes the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [his brother](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [his brother](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ Jediael [the son of](#) Shimri, and Joha [his brother](#), the Tizite,

UST

⁴⁵ Jediael [son of](#) Shimri and [his brother](#) Joha, from Tiz;

1 Chronicles 11:46

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the Moabite

Translation Words - UST

- sons of
- from Moab

ULT

⁴⁶ Eliel the Mahavite, and Jeribai and Joshaviah, [the sons of](#) Elnaam, and Ithmah [the Moabite](#),

UST

⁴⁶ Eliel from Mahavah; Jeribai and Joshaviah, [sons of](#) Elnaam; Ithmah [from Moab](#);

1 Chronicles 11:47

This ends the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴⁷ Eiel, and Obed, and Jaasiel the Mezobaite.

UST

⁴⁷ Eiel and Obed, and Jaasiel from Zobah.

1 Chronicles 12

1 Chronicles 12 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“[They] could use both the right hand and the left”

These soldiers were very skilled. They were able to fight with either hand. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

King David

This chapter records all those who supported David as king over Saul. The extent of this record shows that there was nearly universal support for David.

1 Chronicles 12:1

while he was still banished from the presence of

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "during the time when he could not be in the presence of" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David...While David](#)
- [King Saul](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

¹ And these, the ones who came to [David](#) at Ziklag, while he was one restrained from the face of [Saul the son of Kish](#). And they were among the mighty ones, helping the battle.

UST

¹ [David](#) stayed in the city of Ziklag when he was escaping from [King Saul](#) ([Kish's son](#)) and waiting to ascend the throne. [While David](#) was there, many warriors came and joined him, and they helped [David](#) when he fought battles. These warriors are listed below.

1 Chronicles 12:2

could use both the right hand and the left in slinging stones and in shooting arrows

Alternate translation: "could use either their right hands or their left hands to sling stones and shoot arrows"

slinging stones

The sling was a strip of leather that a person would use to throw a stone long distances.

Translation Words - ULT

- from the brothers of
- Saul
- from Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- They were relatives of
- Saul
- from the tribe of Benjamin

ULT

² They were armed with a bow, right-handed and left-handed with stones and with arrows with the bow, from the brothers of Saul, from Benjamin.

UST

² They carried bows. They were able to shoot arrows and to sling stones. They could use either their right arms or their left arms. They were relatives of Saul from the tribe of Benjamin.

1 Chronicles 12:3

General Information:

This begins a list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- The head
- the sons of
- the sons of
- and Jehu

Translation Words - UST

- Their leader was
- They were both...sons
- sons
- Jehu

ULT

³ The head, Ahiezer, and Joash, the sons of Shemaah the Gibeathite, and Jeziel and Pelet, the sons of Azmaveth, and Berakah, and Jehu the Anathothite,

UST

³ Their leader was Ahiezer. Next in command was Joash. They were both Shemaah's sons from the city of Gibeah. Others were: Jeziel and Pelet, Azmaveth's sons; Berakah; Jehu from the city of Anathoth;

1 Chronicles 12:4

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the thirty

“the 30 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Gibeonite](#)
- [a mighty one](#)
- [and Jeremiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from the city of Gibeon](#)
- [warriors](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)

ULT

⁴ and Ishmaiah [the Gibeonite, a mighty one](#) among the 30 and over the 30, [and Jeremiah](#), and Jahaziel, and Johanan, and Jozabad the Gederathite,

UST

⁴ Ishmaiah [from the city of Gibeon](#), who was the leader of the thirty greatest [warriors](#); [Jeremiah](#); Jahaziel; Johanan; Jozabad from the city of Gederah;

1 Chronicles 12:5

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵ Eluzai, and Jerimoth, and Bealiah, and Shemariah, Shephatiah the Haruphite,

UST

⁵ Eluzai; Jerimoth; Bealiah; Shemariah; Shephatiah from the city of Haruph;

1 Chronicles 12:6

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶ Elkanah, and Isshiah, and Azarel, and Joezer, and Jashobeam, the Korahites,

UST

⁶ Elkanah, Isshiah, Azarel, Joezer, and Jashobeam, who were all descendants of Korah;

1 Chronicles 12:7

This ends the list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons](#)

ULT

⁷ and Joelah and Zebadiah, [the sons of](#) Jeroham from Gedor.

UST

⁷ and Joelah and Zebadiah, Jeroham's [sons](#), from the city of Gedor.

1 Chronicles 12:8

General Information:

This begins a list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

whose faces were as fierce as the faces of lions

Here the word “faces” represents the men and the lions. Their faces express the fierceness with which they fight battles. Alternate translation: “who were as fierce in battle as lions hunting prey” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

They were as swift as gazelles on the mountains

This hyperbole compares how swiftly these men were able to run with how swiftly gazelles are able to run over rugged mountain terrain. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

gazelles

animals similar to deer that can run quickly over hills and rough ground

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [mighty in](#)
- [and faces of](#)
- [were their faces](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [They were brave warriors](#)
- [They were as fierce as lions](#)
- [They were as fierce as lions](#)

ULT

⁸ And from the Gadites they separated themselves to [David](#) at the stronghold in the wilderness, [mighty in](#) strength, men of the army for battle, ready with shield and spear, [and faces of lions were their faces](#), and like gazelles on the hills to hasten.

UST

⁸ Some men from the tribe of Gad east of the Jordan River joined [David](#) when he was at his garrison in the caves in the desert. [They were brave warriors](#) who were trained for fighting battles and able to use shields and spears well. [They were as fierce as lions](#), and they could run as fast as deer on the hills.

1 Chronicles 12:9

Ezer the leader, Obadiah the second, Eliab the third

This begins a list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the head](#)
- [Obadiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was their leader](#)
- [Obadiah](#)

ULT

⁹ Ezer [the head](#), [Obadiah](#) the second, Eliab the third,

UST

⁹ Ezer [was their leader](#). Next in command was [Obadiah](#). Next was Eliab.

1 Chronicles 12:10

Mishmannah the fourth, Jeremiah the fifth

This continues a list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jeremiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jeremiah](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Mishmannah the fourth, [Jeremiah](#) the fifth,

UST

¹⁰ Next was Mishmannah. Next was [Jeremiah](#).

1 Chronicles 12:11

Attai the sixth, Eliel the seventh

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹¹ Attai the sixth, Eliel the seventh,

UST

¹¹ Next was Attai. Next was Eliel.

1 Chronicles 12:12

Johanan the eighth, Elzabad the ninth

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹² Johanan the eighth, Elzabad the ninth,

UST

¹² Next was Johanan. Next was Elzabad.

1 Chronicles 12:13

Jeremiah the tenth, Makbannai the eleventh

This ends the list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jeremiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [another man whose name was Jeremiah](#)

ULT

¹³ [Jeremiah](#) the tenth, Makbannai the 11th.

UST

¹³ Next was [another man whose name was Jeremiah](#). The last was Macbannai.

1 Chronicles 12:14

The least led a hundred

This means that the smallest group of the army that a leader led was 100 men. (See: [Numbers](#))

the greatest led a thousand

This means that the largest group of the army that a leader led was 1,000 men. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from the sons of](#)
- [the heads of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from the tribe of](#)
- [were commanders](#)

ULT

14 These [from the sons of](#) Gad, [the heads of](#) the army. One for 100, the least; and the greatest for 1,000.

UST

14 Those men [from the tribe of](#) Gad [were commanders](#) in the army. The least warrior could fight 100, and the greatest could fight 1,000.

1 Chronicles 12:15

first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

when it overflowed its banks

Alternate translation: "when the Jordan overflowed its banks"

chased away all those living in the valleys

Alternate translation: "they chased away all those living in the valleys"

Translation Words - ULT

- [passed over](#)
- [the Jordan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [crossed](#)
- [to the west side of the Jordan River](#)

ULT

¹⁵ These, they who [passed over the Jordan](#) in the first month, and it was filling over all its banks, and caused to flee all the valleys, to the east and to the west.

UST

¹⁵ They [crossed to the west side of the Jordan River](#) during a certain month in spring, at the time of the year when the river floods. They chased from there all the people who lived in the valleys on both sides of the river.

1 Chronicles 12:16

men of Benjamin and Judah

Alternate translation: "men from the tribes of Benjamin and Judah"

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Benjamin
- and Judah

Translation Words - UST

- the tribes of
- Benjamin
- and Judah

ULT

¹⁶ And from the sons of Benjamin and Judah came to the stronghold to David.

UST

¹⁶ Some other men from the tribes of Benjamin and Judah also came to David in his garrison.

1 Chronicles 12:17

may the God of our ancestors see

What God will see may be supplied in translation. Alternate translation: “may the God of our ancestors see what you intend to do” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- And...went out
- heart
- the God of
- our fathers

Translation Words - UST

- David
- went out of the cave
- I am eager to have you...with me
- the God whom our ancestors worshiped
- the God whom our ancestors worshiped

ULT

17 And [David went out](#) before their faces, and he answered, and he said to them: “If for peace you have come to me, to help me, my [heart](#) will be to you all for unity. But if to betray me to my adversaries, with no violence in my palms, may [the God of our fathers](#) see and rebuke.”

UST

17 [David went out of the cave](#) to meet them and said to them, “If you have come peacefully to help me, [I am eager to have you](#) join [with me](#). But if you have come to enable my enemies to capture me, even though I have not done anything to harm you, I hope that [the God whom our ancestors worshiped](#) will see it and condemn you.”

1 Chronicles 12:18

the Spirit came on Amasai

The Spirit empowering Amasai is spoken of as if the Spirit came on him. Alternate translation: “the Spirit empowered Amasai” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Amasai

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the thirty

“the 30 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

We are yours, David. We are on your side, son of Jesse

These phrases share similar meanings. The idioms “we are yours” and “we are on your side” both mean that the men support David. Alternate translation: “We are devoted to you, David. We support you, son of Jesse” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Idiom](#))

Peace, may peace be to whoever helps you

Here the word “peace” refers to prosperity and well-being. The word is repeated to emphasize great prosperity. Alternate translation: “May whoever helps you greatly prosper” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the Spirit](#)
- [the head of](#)
- [as the heads of](#)
- [O David](#)
- [David](#)
- [O Son of](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [Peace](#)
- [peace](#)
- [your God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then God's Spirit](#)
- [who was the leader of](#)
- [to be leaders of](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [you who are the son of](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [We do come in peace](#)

ULT

18 [And the Spirit](#) clothed Amasai, [the head of the 30](#): “To you, [O David](#), and with you, [O Son of Jesse](#). [Peace, peace](#) to you and peace to the one who helps you, for [your God](#) has helped you.” And [David](#) received them and placed them [as the heads of](#) the troop.

UST

18 [Then God's Spirit](#) came on Amasai, [who was the leader of](#) the thirty greatest warriors, and Amasai said, “[David](#), we want to be with you; [you who are the son of Jesse](#), we will join you. [We do come in peace](#). [We hope](#) you will experience [peace](#) and that those helping you will experience peace, because [your God](#) is helping you.” So [David](#) welcomed those men, and he appointed them [to be leaders of](#) his soldiers.

- We hope...peace
- your God

1 Chronicles 12:19

deserted to

Alternate translation: "left their leaders to join"

He will desert to his master Saul

Alternate translation: "He will stop fighting with us and fight for his master Saul"

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- the Philistines
- the Philistines
- Saul
- Saul
- By our heads
- his lord

Translation Words - UST

- David
- the soldiers of Philistia
- Philistia
- Saul's army
- Saul
- his master
- we will all be killed

ULT

19 And from Manasseh fell upon David when he went with the Philistines against Saul to battle. And they did not help them because by counsel the governors of the Philistines sent them away, saying, "By our heads he will fall to his lord, Saul."

UST

19 Some men from the tribe of Manasseh also joined David when he went with the soldiers of Philistia to fight against Saul's army. But David and his men did not help the army of Philistia because the leaders of Philistia talked about David and his soldiers and sent David and his men away. The leaders of Philistia said, "If David joins his master Saul again, we will all be killed."

1 Chronicles 12:20

Ziklag

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Adnah, Jozabad, Jediael, Michael, Jozabad, Elihu, and Zillethai

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

captains over thousands of Manasseh

This means that each of these men led groups of a thousand soldiers in the tribe of Manasseh. Alternate translation: "each a captain over 1,000 men in the tribe of Manasseh" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Michael](#)
- [the heads of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Michael](#)
- [Each of them had been a commander of](#)

ULT

²⁰ In his going to Ziklag, they fell upon him from Manasseh: Adnah, and Jozabad, and Jediael, [and Michael](#), and Jozabad, and Elihu, and Zillethai, [the heads of](#) the thousands who were of Manasseh.

UST

²⁰ When David went to Ziklag, these were the men from the tribe of Manasseh who went with him: Adnah, Jozabad, Jediael, [Michael](#), another man whose name was Jozabad, Elihu, and Zillethai. [Each of them had been a commander of](#) one thousand men from the tribe of Manasseh in Saul's army.

1 Chronicles 12:21

the roving bands

“the groups of robbers.” This refers to groups of people who robbed people traveling through the countryside.

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- mighty ones of
- strength
- chiefs

Translation Words - UST

- David
- these men from the tribe of Manasseh were
- brave soldiers
- commanders

ULT

²¹ And they helped with David against the troop, for mighty ones of strength, all of them, and they were chiefs in the army.

UST

²¹ They helped David to fight against the groups of men who roamed throughout the country robbing people because these men from the tribe of Manasseh were all brave soldiers and became commanders in David's army.

1 Chronicles 12:22

Day after day

Alternate translation: "Each day"

a great army, like the army of God

This could mean: (1) the phrase "like the army of God" means "like an army that God assembled" or (2) the word "God" is used as an idiom that refers to the great size of the army. Alternate translation: "a very large army" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David's men](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

²² For at the time of day by day, they were coming to [David](#) to help him, until there was a great camp, like the camp of [God](#).

UST

²² Every day more men joined [David's men](#) to support David, and his army became large, like the army of [God](#).

1 Chronicles 12:23

General Information:

This begins the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

to turn the kingdom of Saul over to him

The men making David king in place of Saul is spoken of as if they gave possession of Saul's kingdom to David. Alternate translation: "to make David king in place of Saul" (See: [Metaphor](#))

carried out Yahweh's word

Alternate translation: "made Yahweh's word true" or "fulfilled Yahweh's word"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heads of](#)
- [David](#)
- [the kingdom of](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [soldiers](#)
- [David](#)
- [to become the king of Israel instead of](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²³ And these, the numbers of [the heads](#) of those equipped for war. They came to [David](#) at Hebron to turn [the kingdom of Saul](#) to him according to the mouth of [Yahweh](#).

UST

²³ These are the numbers of [soldiers](#) who were ready for battle who joined [David](#) at the city of Hebron. They came to help him [to become the king of Israel instead of Saul](#), as [Yahweh](#) had promised would happen.

1 Chronicles 12:24

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

6,800, armed for war

“six thousand eight hundred, armed for war” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [There were...men from](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

²⁴ [The sons of Judah](#), those carrying shield and spear, 6,800, equipped for war.

UST

²⁴ [There were](#) 6,800 [men from Judah](#) ready for battle, carrying shields and spears.

1 Chronicles 12:25

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

From the Simeonites

Alternate translation: "From Simeon" or "From the tribe of Simeon"

7,100 fighting men

"seven thousand one hundred fighting men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- mighty ones of
- strength

Translation Words - UST

- men...the tribe of Simeon
- They were all strong warriors
- They were all strong warriors

ULT

²⁵ From the sons of Simeon, mighty ones of strength for war, 7,100.

UST

²⁵ There were 7,100 men from the tribe of Simeon. They were all strong warriors trained to fight battles.

1 Chronicles 12:26

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

4,600 fighting men

“four thousand six hundred fighting men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Levi](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men...the tribe of](#)
- [Levi](#)

ULT

²⁶ From [the sons of Levi](#), 4,600.

UST

²⁶ There were 4,600 [men](#) from [the tribe of Levi](#).

1 Chronicles 12:27

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

Jehoiada

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

with him were 3,700

“with him were three thousand seven hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Jehoiada](#)
- [from Aaron](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoiada...was in that group of descendants of Levi](#)
- [descended from Aaron](#)

ULT

²⁷ [And Jehoiada](#), the leader [from Aaron](#), and with him, 3,700.

UST

²⁷ [Jehoiada](#), a leader [descended from Aaron](#), [was in that group of descendants of Levi](#), and there were 3,700 men with him.

1 Chronicles 12:28

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

twenty-two leaders

“22 leaders” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And Zadok
- young
- a...mighty one of
- strength
- and the house of
- his father
- chiefs

Translation Words - UST

- Zadok...was also in that group
- a strong...soldier
- and...from his clan
- a strong...soldier
- young
- there were...other leaders...who came with him
- and...from his clan

ULT

²⁸ And Zadok, a young, mighty one of strength, and the house of his father, 22 chiefs.

UST

²⁸ Zadok, a strong young soldier, was also in that group, and there were 22 other leaders from his clan who came with him.

1 Chronicles 12:29

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

From Benjamin, Saul's tribe

Alternate translation: "From Benjamin, the tribe to which Saul belonged"

three thousand

"3,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [the brothers of](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [were keeping](#)
- [the house of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men...the tribe of](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [who were...relatives](#)
- [Saul's](#)
- [to Saul and his descendants](#)
- [had...given](#)
- [to Saul and his descendants](#)

ULT

²⁹ And from [the sons of Benjamin, the brothers of Saul](#), 3,000. And until then the majority of them [were keeping](#) the charge of [the house of Saul](#).

UST

²⁹ There were 3,000 [men](#) from [the tribe of Benjamin who were Saul's relatives](#). Most of them had previously [given](#) their allegiance [to Saul and his descendants](#).

1 Chronicles 12:30

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

20,800 fighting men

“twenty thousand eight hundred fighting men” (See: [Numbers](#))

From the Ephraimites

Alternate translation: “From Ephraim” or “From the tribe of Ephraim”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [mighty ones of](#)
- [strength](#)
- [names](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men...the tribe of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [who were all brave warriors](#)
- [who were all brave warriors](#)
- [and famous](#)
- [in their own clans](#)
- [in their own clans](#)

ULT

³⁰ And from [the sons of Ephraim](#), 20,800 [mighty ones of strength](#), men of names, [according to the house of their fathers](#).

UST

³⁰ There were 20,800 [men](#) from [the tribe of Ephraim](#) who were all brave warriors and famous in their own clans.

1 Chronicles 12:31

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

eighteen thousand

“18,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [by names](#)
- [to make...king](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Their half-tribe chose them](#)
- [and help...become the king](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

³¹ And from the half tribe of Manasseh, 18,000 who were marked [by names](#) to come [to make David king](#).

UST

³¹ There were 18,000 men from the half of the tribe of Manasseh who lived west of the Jordan River. [Their half-tribe chose them](#) to go [and help David become the king](#).

1 Chronicles 12:32

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

two hundred

“200” (See: [Numbers](#))

who had understanding of the times

This could mean: (1) these men knew the right time to act or (2) these men had a good understanding of current political events within Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And from the sons of](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [those who knew](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [their heads](#)
- [their brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [There were...from the tribe of](#)
- [who were leaders](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [their relatives...their relatives](#)
- [the Israelites](#)
- [and they knew](#)

ULT

³² [And from the sons of Issachar, those who knew](#) understanding of the times to know what [Israel](#) should do, [their heads](#), 200, and all [their brothers](#) according to their mouth.

UST

³² [There were](#) 200 men [who were leaders from the tribe of Issachar](#) along with [their relatives](#). They always knew what [the Israelites](#) should do, [and they knew](#) the right time to do it. The leaders commanded [their relatives](#).

1 Chronicles 12:33

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

fifty thousand

“50,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

ready to give undivided loyalty

It is implicit that they would give loyalty to David. Alternate translation: “ready to give undivided loyalty to David” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [those going out](#)
- [heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They were experienced warriors and knew how to use...well](#)
- [They were completely loyal to David](#)

ULT

³³ From Zebulun, [those going out](#) for war, prepared for battle with all the weapons of battle, 50,000, and to help with no [heart](#) and a heart.

UST

³³ There were 50,000 men from the tribe of Zebulun. [They were experienced warriors and knew how to use](#) all kinds of weapons [well](#). [They were completely loyal to David](#).

1 Chronicles 12:34

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

one thousand ... thirty-seven thousand

"1,000...37,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And from Naphtali](#)
- [chiefs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [There were...from the tribe of Naphtali](#)
- [officers](#)

ULT

³⁴ [And from Naphtali](#), 1,000 [chiefs](#), and with them with shield and spear, 37,000.

UST

³⁴ [There were](#) 1,000 [officers from the tribe of Naphtali](#) with 37,000 soldiers, each carrying shields and spears.

1 Chronicles 12:35

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

From the Danites

Alternate translation: "From Dan" or "From the tribe of Dan"

28,600 men

"twenty-eight thousand six hundred men" (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

³⁵ And from the Danites, prepared for battle, 28,600.

UST

³⁵ There were 28,600 soldiers from the tribe of Dan, all trained to fight battles.

1 Chronicles 12:36

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

forty thousand

“40,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And from Asher](#)
- [those going out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [There were...from the tribe of Asher](#)
- [all trained to fight battles](#)

ULT

³⁶ [And from Asher those going out](#) for war to prepare for battle, 40,000.

UST

³⁶ [There were](#) 40,000 soldiers [from the tribe of Asher](#), [all trained to fight battles](#).

1 Chronicles 12:37

This ends the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

the Reubenites, Gadites

Alternate translation: "Reuben, Gad" or "the tribe of Reuben, the tribe of Gad"

120,000 men

"one hundred twenty thousand men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Jordan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of the Jordan River](#)

ULT

³⁷ And from beyond [the Jordan](#), from the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh, with all the weapons of war for battle, 120,000.

UST

³⁷ There were also 120,000 soldiers from the area east [of the Jordan River](#) who joined David. They were from the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh. They had all kinds of weapons for battle.

1 Chronicles 12:38

with firm intentions to make David king

Alternate translation: "determined to make David king"

Translation Words - ULT

- whole
- was of...heart
- to make...king
- to make...king (2)
- David
- David
- Israel
- Israel
- the rest of

Translation Words - UST

- wanting very much
- were...united
- to enable...to be the king
- in wanting to make...their king (2)
- David
- David
- the Israelite people
- the Israelite people
- The remainder of

ULT

38 All these men of battle, helpers of the battle line; with a **whole** heart, they came to Hebron **to make David king** over all **Israel**. And also all **the rest of Israel was of one heart to make David king**.

UST

38 All those men were soldiers who joined the ranks of David's army. They came to Hebron **wanting very much to enable David to be the king** of all of the Israelite people. **The remainder of the Israelite people** were also **united in wanting to make David their king**.

1 Chronicles 12:39

They were there with David

Alternate translation: "These soldiers were there with David"

three days

"3 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [eating](#)
- [their brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [eating](#)
- [their families](#)

ULT

³⁹ And they were there with [David](#) three days, [eating](#) and drinking, for [their brothers](#) had prepared for them.

UST

³⁹ The men spent three days there with [David](#), [eating](#) and drinking, because [their families](#) gave them food to take with them.

1 Chronicles 12:40

Israel was celebrating

The word "Israel" represents the people who make up the nation. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel were celebrating" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Issachar](#)
- [and Naphtali](#)
- [bread](#)
- [and wine](#)
- [and oil](#)
- [and sheep](#)
- [joy](#)
- [was in Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Issachar](#)
- [and Naphtali](#)
- [food](#)
- [wine](#)
- [olive oil](#)
- [and sheep](#)
- [the people throughout Israel](#)
- [were very joyful](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ And also, those near to them, as far as [Issachar](#) and Zebulun [and Naphtali](#), were bringing [bread](#) on donkeys, and on camels, and on mules, and on oxen; food of flour, fig cakes, and raisins cakes, [and wine, and oil](#), and oxen, [and sheep](#), in abundance, for [joy was in Israel](#).

UST

⁴⁰ Also, their fellow Israelites came from as far away as the area where the tribes of [Issachar](#), Zebulun, [and Naphtali](#) lived, bringing [food](#) on donkeys, camels, mules, and oxen. They brought a lot of various types of food: flour, fig cakes, raisins, [wine, olive oil](#), cattle [and sheep](#). They brought so much because [the people throughout Israel were very joyful](#).

1 Chronicles 13

1 Chronicles 13 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Ark of the covenant

David tried to bring the ark to Jerusalem on an ox cart instead of being carried by priests as the law said to do. The ox stumbled and Uzzah touched the ark to keep it from falling and he immediately died because of this. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#) and [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#) and [covenant](#))

1 Chronicles 13:1

the commanders of thousands and of hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers” or (2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [And...consulted](#)
- [the chiefs of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [One day...talked](#)
- [David](#)
- [his army officers. Some of them were commanders of...and some were commanders of](#)

ULT

¹ And [David consulted](#) with [the chiefs of thousands and of hundreds](#), to every leader.

UST

¹ One day [David talked](#) with all [his army officers](#). [Some of them were commanders of 100 soldiers and some were commanders of 1,000 soldiers](#).

1 Chronicles 13:2

all the assembly of Israel

This refers to all of the Israelites who were assembled in this place. Alternate translation: “all of the Israelites who were assembled there” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

if this comes from Yahweh our God

This idiom means that this action is something that Yahweh approves. Alternate translation: “if this is something that Yahweh our God approves” (See: [Idiom](#))

Let them be told to join us

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Let messengers tell them to join us” or “Let them join us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the assembly of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [our God](#)
- [our brothers](#)
- [the regions of](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [and the Levites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [the other Israelite leaders...to all of them](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [and descendants of Levi](#)
- [the other Israelite leaders...to all of them](#)
- [our country](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [our God](#)
- [our fellow Israelites](#)
- [our country](#)

ULT

² And [David](#) said to all [the assembly of Israel](#), “If to you all it is good, and from [Yahweh our God](#), let us break out, let us send to [our brothers](#) who remain in all [the regions of Israel](#), and with them [the priests and the Levites](#) in the cities of their pasturelands. And let them gather to us.

UST

² Then [David](#) summoned [the other Israelite leaders](#) and said [to all of them](#), “If you think it is a good idea, and if it is what [Yahweh our God](#) wants, let us send a message to [our fellow Israelites](#) throughout [our country](#), including [the priests and descendants of Levi](#) who are living among them in their towns and in the nearby pasturelands, to come and join us.

1 Chronicles 13:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Box of
- our God
- we did...seek it
- Saul

Translation Words - UST

- the sacred chest of
- our God
- we did...ask God what he wanted us to do
- Saul

ULT

³ And let us return the Box of our God to us, for we did not seek it in the days of Saul.”

UST

³ Let us bring the sacred chest of our God back to us since we did not ask God what he wanted us to do while Saul was the king.”

1 Chronicles 13:4

they seemed right in the eyes of all the people

Here the word “eyes” represents seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “all the people considered these things to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the assembly](#)
- [the people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the people](#)
- [they all thought that](#)

ULT

⁴ And all [the assembly](#) said to do thus, for the thing was right in the eyes of all [the people](#).

UST

⁴ All [the people](#) agreed with David to send the messages and bring back the sacred chest because [they all thought that](#) it was the right thing to do.

1 Chronicles 13:5

David assembled all Israel together

Here the word “all” is a generalization. The phrase means that David assembled people from all over Israel, not that he assembled every person in Israel. Alternate translation: “David assembled people together from all Israel” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Lebo Hamath ... Kiriath Jearim

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [the Box of](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [in Egypt](#)
- [the sacred chest of](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

⁵ And [David](#) assembled all [Israel](#) from Shihor of [Egypt](#) and as far as Lebo Hamath, to bring in [the Box of God](#) from Kiriath Jearim.

UST

⁵ So [David](#) gathered all [the Israelite people](#), from the Shihor River [in Egypt](#) to the city of Lebo Hamath in the north, and told them that he wanted them to help bring [the sacred chest of God](#) back to Jerusalem from the city of Kiriath Jearim.

1 Chronicles 13:6

Baalah ... Kiriath Jearim

These are the names of places. "Baalah" is another name for Kiriath Jearim. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

which belongs to Judah

Alternate translation: "which is in Judah"

to bring up from there the ark of God

It is implied that they are taking the ark to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "to take to Jerusalem the ark of God" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to bring up from there

Jerusalem is higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem and going down from it.

which is called by Yahweh's name

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This could mean: (1) the idiom "called by ... name" refers to a person owning the thing. Alternate translation: "which belongs to Yahweh" or (2) the ark has Yahweh's name written on it. Alternate translation: "which bears Yahweh's name" (See: [Idiom](#))

who sits enthroned over the cherubim

You may need to make explicit that the cherubim are those on the lid of the ark of the covenant. The biblical writers often spoke of the ark of the covenant as if it were Yahweh's footstool upon which he rested his feet as he sat on his throne in heaven above. Alternate translation: "who sits on his throne above the cherubim on the ark of the covenant" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [belongs to Judah](#)
- [the Box of](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the cherubim](#)
- [is called](#)
- [by name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

ULT

⁶ And [David](#) went up and all [Israel](#) to Baalah, to Kiriath Jearim, which [belongs to Judah](#), to bring up from there [the Box of God Yahweh](#) who sits over the [cherubim](#) which [is called by name](#).

UST

⁶ [David](#) went with all [the Israelite people](#) to the city of Baalah, which is another name for Kiriath Jearim, to get from that city [the sacred chest of God, Yahweh](#). ([Baalah was located in the land belonging to the tribe of Judah](#)). The people believed that God sat like a king on a throne [between the statues of winged creatures that was above the lid of the sacred chest](#). The sacred chest [belonged to Yahweh](#).

- the Israelite people
- the sacred chest of
- God
- Yahweh
- Baalah was located in the land belonging to the tribe of Judah
- between the statues of winged creatures that was above the lid of the sacred chest
- belonged to Yahweh
- belonged to Yahweh

1 Chronicles 13:7

Abinadab ... Uzzah ... Ahio

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And they transported
- the Box of
- God
- from the house of

Translation Words - UST

- The people put...and took it
- the sacred chest of
- God
- from...house

ULT

⁷ And they transported the Box of God on a new cart from the house of Abinadab; and Uzzah and Ahio were driving the cart.

UST

⁷ The people put the sacred chest of God on a new cart and took it from Abinadab's house. Uzzah and Ahio were guiding the oxen that were pulling the cart.

1 Chronicles 13:8

David and all Israel

Here the word “all” is a generalization. Alternate translation: “David and all of the Israelites who were present” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

singing with stringed instruments

Alternate translation: “singing while playing stringed instruments”

tambourines

hand drums with pieces of metal around the side that sound when the instruments are shaken (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [God](#)
- [and lyres](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelite people](#)
- [all around the cart carrying the sacred chest](#)
- [playing lyres](#)

ULT

⁸ And David and all [Israel](#) were celebrating before the face of [God](#) with all might, and with songs, [and lyres](#), and harps, and tambourines, and cymbals, and trumpets.

UST

⁸ David and all [the Israelite people](#) celebrated with all their strength [all around the cart carrying the sacred chest](#). They were singing, [playing lyres](#), harps, tambourines, and cymbals, and blowing trumpets.

1 Chronicles 13:9

Kidon ... Uzzah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the threshing floor of
- his hand
- the Box

Translation Words - UST

- the place where...threshed grain
- his hand
- the sacred chest

ULT

⁹ And they came to the threshing floor of Kidon, and Uzzah sent out his hand to grasp the Box for the oxen stumbled.

UST

⁹ However, when the people and the cart came to the place where Kidon threshed grain, the oxen stumbled. So Uzzah reached out with his hand to prevent the sacred chest from falling off the cart.

1 Chronicles 13:10

the anger of Yahweh burned against Uzzah

Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire that burned the one with whom Yahweh is angry. Alternate translation: "Yahweh was very angry with Uzzah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

before God

Alternate translation: "in the presence of God"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [his hand](#)
- [the Box](#)
- [And he died](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [because Uzzah had put his hand on the sacred chest. Yahweh had commanded during the time of Moses that no one touch the sacred chest](#)
- [because Uzzah had put his hand on the sacred chest. Yahweh had commanded during the time of Moses that no one touch the sacred chest](#)
- [Uzzah died](#)
- [in front of the sacred chest](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And the anger of [Yahweh](#) burned against Uzzah, and He struck him down because he sent out [his hand](#) on [the Box](#). [And he died](#) there before the face of [God](#).

UST

¹⁰ [Yahweh](#) became very angry with Uzzah, and he killed Uzzah [because Uzzah had put his hand on the sacred chest. Yahweh had commanded during the time of Moses that no one touch the sacred chest. Uzzah died there in front of the sacred chest.](#)

1 Chronicles 13:11

That place is called

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "People call that place" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Perez Uzzah

This is the name of a place. Translator may add a footnote that says, "The name 'Perez Uzzah' means 'the punishment of Uzzah.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to this day

See how you translated this phrase in [1 Chronicles 4:43](#)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [And he called](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David called](#)

ULT

11 And David became angry because [Yahweh](#) broke out a breaking out against Uzzah. [And he called](#) that place Perez Uzzah until this day.

UST

11 David was angry because [Yahweh](#) inflicted punishment on Uzzah. [David called](#) that place where Uzzah died "The Punishment of Uzzah" (which has continued to be its nickname until the writing of this document).

1 Chronicles 13:12

How can I bring the ark of God home to me?

David uses this question to emphasize that he is afraid to take the ark to Jerusalem. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am too afraid to bring the ark of Yahweh with me to Jerusalem." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [And...feared](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [the Box of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [was afraid of](#)
- [God](#)
- [God's](#)
- [sacred chest](#)

ULT

¹² And [David feared God](#) in that day, saying, "How will I bring to myself [the Box of God?](#)"

UST

¹² That day, [David was afraid of God](#). He thought to himself, "{Since God is angry with me,} I cannot bring [God's sacred chest](#) to my city."

1 Chronicles 13:13

Obed Edom the Gittite

This is the name of a man. A "Gittite" is a person from the city of Gath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- the Box
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- David and the people
- to the portion of Jerusalem named the City of David
- the sacred chest
- house

ULT

¹³ And David did not remove the Box to himself, to the city of David, but he turned it to the house of Obed Edom the Gittite.

UST

¹³ So David and the people did not take the sacred chest to the portion of Jerusalem named the City of David. Instead, they took it to Obed Edom's house, who was from the city of Gath.

1 Chronicles 13:14

in Obed Edom's household in his house

Alternate translation: "with Obed Edom's family in his house"

three months

"3 months" (See: [Numbers](#))

Yahweh blessed his house

Here the word "house" is a metonym for his family. Alternate translation: "Yahweh blessed his family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the Box of
- God
- the house of
- the house of
- in his house
- Yahweh
- And...blessed

Translation Words - UST

- The sacred chest of
- God
- family
- family
- in his house
- During that time...blessed
- Yahweh

ULT

14 And the Box of God dwelt with the house of Obed Edom in his house three months. And Yahweh blessed the house of Obed Edom and all that belonged to him.

UST

14 The sacred chest of God stayed with Obed Edom's family in his house for three months. During that time Yahweh blessed Obed Edom's family and everything that Obed Edom owned.

1 Chronicles 14

1 Chronicles 14 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

David asked for help from God and because of this, God enabled him to defeat the Philistines when they tried to capture him.

1 Chronicles 14:1

Hiram

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

carpenters

people who make things with wood

masons

people make things with stone or brick

They built a house for him

Alternate translation: "The carpenters and masons built a house for David"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Tyre](#)
- [messengers](#)
- [David](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [a house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the king of](#)
- [the city of Tyre](#)
- [some messengers...to talk about making an agreement between their countries](#)
- [David](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [a palace](#)

ULT

¹ And Hiram [the king of Tyre](#) sent [messengers](#) to [David](#), and wood of [cedar](#), and craftsmen of a wall, and craftsmen of wood to build for him [a house](#).

UST

¹ One day Hiram, [the king of the city of Tyre](#), sent [some messengers](#) to [David](#) to [talk about making an agreement between their countries](#). Then Hiram sent [cedar](#) logs, bricklayers, and carpenters to build [a palace](#) for David.

1 Chronicles 14:2

established him as

Alternate translation: “made him”

his kingdom was exalted on high

The idiom “exalted on high” means that Yahweh had given great honor to David’s kingdom. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh had exalted David’s kingdom on high” or “Yahweh had given great honor to David’s kingdom” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

for the sake of his people Israel

Here the word “his” refers to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [And...knew](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [as king](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [his kingdom](#)
- [his people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When that happened...knew](#)
- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to be the king](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israelite](#)
- [David’s kingdom](#)
- [his...people](#)

ULT

² And [David knew](#) that [Yahweh](#) had established him [as king](#) over [Israel](#), that [his kingdom](#) was lifted upwards for the sake of [his people Israel](#).

UST

² [When that happened](#), [David knew](#) that [Yahweh](#) had truly caused him [to be the king](#) of [Israel](#), and that [Yahweh](#) had caused the surrounding nations to respect [David’s kingdom](#). [Yahweh](#) did this because he loved [his Israelite people](#).

1 Chronicles 14:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- in Jerusalem
- sons

Translation Words - UST

- David
- for him
- in Jerusalem
- sons

ULT

³ And David took more wives in Jerusalem, and David fathered more sons and daughters.

UST

³ David married more women in Jerusalem, and those women gave birth to more sons and daughters for him.

1 Chronicles 14:4

the children who were born to him

Alternate translation: "the children whom his wives bore for him"

Shammua, Shobab, Nathan

These are names of men. See how you translated these in [1 Chronicles 3:5](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the names](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [and Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The names of the children who...born...in Jerusalem](#)
- [were](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

⁴ And these, [the names](#) of those born who were to him [in Jerusalem](#): Shammua, and Shobab, [Nathan, and Solomon](#),

UST

⁴ [The names of the children who were born to him in Jerusalem](#) were Shammua, Shobab, [Nathan, Solomon](#),

1 Chronicles 14:5

This continues the list of the children who were born to David in Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ibhar, Elishua, Elpelet

These are names of men. These names appear also in [1 Chronicles 3:6](#), although there “Elpelet” is spelled “Eliphelet.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵ and Ibhar, and Elishua, and Elpelet,

UST

⁵ Ibhar, Elishama, Elpelet,

1 Chronicles 14:6

This continues the list of the children who were born to David in Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia

These are names of men. These names appear also in [1 Chronicles 3:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶ and Nogah, and Nepheg, and Japhia,

UST

⁶ Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia,

1 Chronicles 14:7

This ends the list of the children who were born to David in Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Elishama, Beeliada, and Eliphelet

These are names of men. These names appear also in [1 Chronicles 3:8](#), although there “Beeliada” is spelled “Eliada.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷ and Elishama, and Beeliada, and Eliphelet.

UST

⁷ Elishama, Beeliada, and Eliphelet.

1 Chronicles 14:8

Now

The writer uses this word to show that he has finished giving the background information that he started in [1 Chronicles 14:3](#) and is starting a new part of the story. Your language may have a different way of doing this.

David had been anointed as king

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the elders of Israel had anointed David as king” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

went out against them

It is implied that David led his army out to fight against them. Alternate translation: “led his army out to fight against them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)
- [the Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [as king](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to seek](#)
- [and went out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the army of Philistia](#)
- [they](#)
- [David](#)
- [him](#)
- [David](#)
- [to be king](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to try to capture](#)
- [so he and his soldiers went out](#)

ULT

⁸ Now [the Philistines](#) heard that [David](#) was anointed [as king](#) over all [Israel](#), and all [the Philistines](#) went up [to seek David](#). And [David](#) heard [and went out](#) before their faces.

UST

⁸ When [the army of Philistia](#) heard that people in Israel appointed [David to be king](#) of all of [Israel](#), [they](#) went [to try to capture him](#). But [David](#) heard that the army of Philistia was coming, [so he and his soldiers went out](#) to fight against them.

1 Chronicles 14:9

Valley of Rephaim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁹ And the Philistines went, and they raided in the Valley of Rephaim.

UST

⁹ Now, the army of Philistia had come to the Valley of Rephaim southwest of Jerusalem and had attacked and robbed the people there.

1 Chronicles 14:10

give them to you

This idiom means that Yahweh will enable David to have victory over them. Alternate translation: "give you victory over them" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [God](#)
- [the Philistines](#)
- [into my hand](#)
- [into your hand](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [God](#)
- [the army of Philistia](#)
- [If we go, will you enable us to defeat them](#)
- [and I will enable you to defeat them](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Then [David](#) asked [God](#), saying, "Should I go up against [the Philistines](#)? And will you give them [into my hand](#)?" And [Yahweh](#) said to him, "Go up and I will give them [into your hand](#)."

UST

¹⁰ So [David](#) asked [God](#), "Should my men and I go and attack [the army of Philistia](#)? [If we go, will you enable us to defeat them](#)?" [Yahweh](#) replied, "Yes, go, and I will enable you to defeat them."

1 Chronicles 14:11

Baal Perazim

This is the name of a place. You may add a footnote that says, "The name 'Baal Perazim' means 'Lord of breaking through.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

God has burst through my enemies ... like a bursting flood of water

David speaks of God easily defeating David's enemies as if God had burst through them, like a flood bursts through anything in its path. Alternate translation: "God has easily defeated my enemies ... like a flood easily bursts through everything" (See: [Simile](#))

by my hand

This refers to David's resources. Alternate translation: "using my army" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [God](#)
- [my enemies](#)
- [by my hand](#)
- [they called](#)
- [the name of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [God](#)
- [my enemies](#)
- [by using me and my army](#)
- [they named](#)
- [they named](#)

ULT

11 And they went up to Baal Perazim, and [David](#) struck them down there. And [David](#) said, "[God](#) has broken through [my enemies by my hand](#) like a breaking through of waters." Therefore [they](#) called the name of that place Baal Perazim.

UST

11 The soldiers of Philistia went to a town people now call "Baal Perazim." [David](#) and his men met the soldiers of Philistia there and defeated them. Then [David](#) said, "[God](#) has completely defeated [my enemies by using me and my army](#). [God](#) destroyed them like water breaking a dam." So [they](#) named that place "Baal Perazim," which meant "The Lord breaks through."

1 Chronicles 14:12

that they should be burned

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "to burn their false gods" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their gods](#)
- [David](#)
- [with fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [their idols](#)
- [David](#)
- [his soldiers to burn those idols](#)

ULT

¹² And they abandoned [their gods](#) there, and [David](#) ordered, and they were burned [with fire](#).

UST

¹² As the soldiers of Philistia fled, they left [their idols](#) there. So [David](#) commanded [his soldiers to burn those idols](#).

1 Chronicles 14:13

the valley

Alternate translation: "the Valley of Rephaim"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the army of Philistia](#)

ULT

¹³ And [the Philistines](#) acted yet again, and they raided in the valley.

UST

¹³ But soon [the army of Philistia](#) attacked the people in that valley again.

1 Chronicles 14:14

attack their front

Alternate translation: "attack from the front"

circle around behind them and come on them through the balsam woods

Alternate translation: "go through the forest of balsam trees and attack them from behind"

balsam woods

"Balsam" here is a type of tree, and the "woods" describe many balsam trees growing together. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David...he](#)
- [to God...him](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

14 And [David](#) asked [God](#) again. And [God](#) said to him, "Do not go up after them; circle around from upon them and come at them in front of the balsam trees."

UST

14 So again [David](#) prayed [to God](#) to ask [him](#) what [he](#) should do, and [God](#) replied, "Do not attack the army of Philistia from the front. Instead, go around them, and attack them from the rear in front of the balsam trees."

1 Chronicles 14:15

Connecting Statement:

God continues his answer to David's question.

When you hear the sound of marching in the wind blowing through the balsam treetops

This speaks of the sound of the leaves rustling as wind blows through them as if it were the sound of marching. Alternate translation: "When the wind blowing through the tops of the balsam trees sounds like men marching" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sound of
- in the heads of
- you shall go out
- has gone out
- God
- the Philistines

Translation Words - UST

- something...that sounds like soldiers marching
- in the tops of
- you must attack
- will have gone
- I, God
- Philistia

ULT

¹⁵ And it shall be when you hear the sound of the marching in the heads of the balsam trees, at that time you shall go out in battle. For God has gone out before your face to strike down the camp of the Philistines."

UST

¹⁵ When you hear something in the tops of the balsam trees that sounds like soldiers marching, that is when you must attack, because I, God, will have gone ahead of you to enable you to defeat the army of Philistia."

1 Chronicles 14:16

Gezer

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [God](#)
- [commanded him](#)
- [the Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [God](#)
- [commanded him to do](#)
- [Philistia](#)

ULT

¹⁶ And [David](#) did just as [God](#) [commanded him](#). And he struck down the camp of [the Philistines](#), from Gibeon and as far as Gezer.

UST

¹⁶ So [David](#) did what [God](#) [commanded him to do](#), and he and his army defeated the army of [Philistia](#), all the way from the city of Gibeon west to the city of Gezer.

1 Chronicles 14:17

David's fame went out into all lands

People in every land hearing of David's reputation is spoken of as if David's fame traveled to those lands. Alternate translation: "People far away heard about David's fame" (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the name of
- David
- And...went out
- and Yahweh
- the fear of him
- the nations

Translation Words - UST

- So...became famous
- So...became famous
- David
- and Yahweh
- caused...to be afraid of him
- the leaders of all the nations

ULT

17 And [the name of David went out](#) into all the lands, and [Yahweh](#) placed [the fear of him](#) on all the nations.

UST

17 So David became famous in all the nearby countries, and Yahweh caused the leaders of all the nations to be afraid of him.

1 Chronicles 15

1 Chronicles 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapters 15 and 16 explain how David organized the priests and Levites. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

1 Chronicles 15:1

David built houses for himself ... He prepared

It might be best to translate this so that the reader understands that David had other people do this for him. Alternate translation: "David had workers build houses for him ... He had them prepare" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [houses](#)
- [David](#)
- [for the Box of](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [houses](#)
- [in the section of Jerusalem named the City of David](#)
- [in which to put the sacred chest of](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

¹ And he made for himself [houses](#) in the city of [David](#). And he prepared a place [for the Box of God](#), and he stretched out a tent for it.

UST

¹ David commanded his workers to build [houses](#) for himself [in the section of Jerusalem named the City of David](#). He also told them to set up a place [in which to put the sacred chest of God](#). They put up a large tent for the sacred chest.

1 Chronicles 15:2

they had been chosen by Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh had chosen them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- the Box of
- the Box of
- God
- the Levites
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- David
- the descendants of Levi
- God's
- sacred chest
- it
- Yahweh
- it

ULT

² Then David said, "No one shall carry the Box of God, but only the Levites. For them Yahweh chose to carry the Box of Yahweh and to minister for him forever."

UST

² Then David said, "No one but the descendants of Levi may carry God's sacred chest, because Yahweh chose them to carry it and to serve him forever."

1 Chronicles 15:3

David assembled all Israel at Jerusalem

Here the word “all” is a generalization. The phrase “all Israel” means that David assembled people from all over Israel, not that he assembled every person in Israel. Alternate translation: “David assembled at Jerusalem people from all over Israel” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [the Box of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [all the people of Israel](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [the sacred chest of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

³ And [David](#) assembled all [Israel](#) to [Jerusalem](#) to bring up [the Box of Yahweh](#) to its place which he had prepared for it.

UST

³ [David](#) summoned [all the people of Israel](#) to come [to Jerusalem](#). He wanted a celebration when the Levites brought [the sacred chest of Yahweh](#) to the place his workers set up for it.

1 Chronicles 15:4

General Information:

This begins the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- the sons of
- Aaron
- the Levites

Translation Words - UST

- David
- the descendants of
- Aaron, who was the first high priest
- the other descendants of Levi

ULT

⁴ And David gathered the sons of Aaron and the Levites.

UST

⁴ David summoned the descendants of Aaron, who was the first high priest, and the other descendants of Levi:

1 Chronicles 15:5

120 men

“one hundred twenty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [the chief](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from the descendants of](#)
- [the leader](#)
- [and his relatives](#)

ULT

⁵ [Of the sons of](#) Kohath, Uriel [the chief](#) and his brothers, 120.

UST

⁵ [from the descendants of](#) Kohath, Levi's second son, Uriel [the leader and his relatives](#), 120 in all;

1 Chronicles 15:6

This continues the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

220 men

“two hundred twenty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [the chief](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from the descendants of](#)
- [the leader](#)
- [and his relatives](#)

ULT

⁶ [Of the sons of](#) Merari, Asaiah [the chief](#) and his brothers, 220.

UST

⁶ [from the descendants of](#) Merari, Levi's third son, Asaiah [the leader and his relatives](#), 220 in all;

1 Chronicles 15:7

This continues the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Of the sons of
- Joel
- the chief
- and his brothers

Translation Words - UST

- from the descendants of
- Joel
- the leader
- and his relatives

ULT

⁷ Of the sons of Gershon, Joel the chief and his brothers, 130.

UST

⁷ from the descendants of Gershon, Levi's first son, Joel the leader and his relatives, 130 in all;

1 Chronicles 15:8

This continues the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [the chief](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from the descendants of](#)
- [the leader](#)
- [and his relatives](#)

ULT

⁸ [Of the sons of](#) Elizaphan, Shemaiah [the chief and his brothers](#), 200.

UST

⁸ [from the descendants of](#) Elizaphan, Shemaiah [the leader and his relatives](#), 200 in all;

1 Chronicles 15:9

This continues the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [the chief](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from the descendants of](#)
- [the leader](#)
- [and his relatives](#)

ULT

⁹ [Of the sons of](#) Hebron, [Eliel the chief](#) and his brothers, 80.

UST

⁹ [from the descendants of](#) Hebron, [Eliel the leader and his relatives](#), 80 in all;

1 Chronicles 15:10

This ends the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [the chief](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from the descendants of](#)
- [the leader](#)
- [and his relatives](#)

ULT

¹⁰ [Of the sons of](#) Uzziel, Amminadab [the chief and his brothers](#), 112.

UST

¹⁰ [from the descendants of](#) Uzziel, Amminadab [the leader and his relatives](#), 112 in all.

1 Chronicles 15:11

Uriel, Asaiah, Joel, Shemaiah, Eliel, and Amminadab

These are names of men. See how you translated them in [1 Chronicles verses 5-6](#) and [1 Chronicles verses 7-10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [And...called](#)
- [for Zadok](#)
- [and for Abiathar](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [and Joel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [summoned](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [and Abiathar](#)
- [Joel](#)

ULT

¹¹ And [David](#) called for [Zadok](#) and for [Abiathar](#) the priests, and for the Levites, for [Uriel](#), [Asaiah](#), and [Joel](#), [Shemaiah](#), and [Eliel](#), and [Amminadab](#).

UST

¹¹ [David](#) summoned the priests [Zadok](#) and [Abiathar](#) and these descendants of Levi: [Uriel](#), [Asaiah](#), [Joel](#), [Shemaiah](#), [Eliel](#), and [Amminadab](#).

1 Chronicles 15:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the heads of
- the fathers of
- the Levites
- Consecrate yourselves
- and your brothers
- the Box of
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- the leaders of
- the clans
- descended from Levi
- and your family members
- must ceremonially purify yourselves, in order to be able to do this special work for Yahweh
- the sacred chest of
- Yahweh
- the God of
- us Israelites

ULT

¹² And he said to them, “You are the heads of the fathers of the Levites. Consecrate yourselves, you and your brothers, and bring up the Box of Yahweh, the God of Israel, to where I prepared for it.

UST

¹² David said to them, “You are the leaders of the clans descended from Levi. You and your family members must ceremonially purify yourselves, in order to be able to do this special work for Yahweh. You must bring the sacred chest of Yahweh, the God of us Israelites, to the place that I set up for it here in Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 15:13

You did not carry it

Alternate translation: "You did not carry the ark"

broke out against us

The idiom to "break out against" means to act violently toward someone. Alternate translation: "acted violently toward us" or "attacked us" (See: [Idiom](#))

we did not seek him

Here seeking Yahweh means to seek his counsel. Alternate translation: "we did not ask him for instructions" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [our God](#)
- [we did...seek him](#)
- [according to the judgment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [we did...follow Yahweh's command...the...regarding carrying...sacred chest](#)
- [of...the...in...law...Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [our God](#)

ULT

¹³ Because at the first it was not you, [Yahweh our God](#) broke out against us, for [we did](#) not [seek him according to the judgment](#)."

UST

¹³ The first time that we tried to bring it, you descendants of Levi were not the ones who carried it, since [we did](#) not [follow Yahweh's command](#) in the [law](#) of [Moses regarding carrying the sacred chest](#). So [Yahweh our God](#) punished us."

1 Chronicles 15:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- and the Levites
- And...consecrated themselves
- the Box of
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- the priests
- and the descendants of Levi
- Then...performed the rituals to purify themselves
- the sacred chest of
- Yahweh
- the God of
- the Israelite people

ULT

¹⁴ And the priests and the Levites consecrated themselves to bring up the Box of Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

¹⁴ Then the priests and the descendants of Levi performed the rituals to purify themselves, in order that it would be proper for them to carry the sacred chest of Yahweh, the God of the Israelite people.

1 Chronicles 15:15

the rules given by the word of Yahweh

The word “word” can be translated with a verb. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the rules that the word of Yahweh had given” or “the rules that Yahweh had spoken” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [the Box of](#)
- [God](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the law of Moses said](#)
- [the law of Moses said](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the descendants of](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [God's](#)
- [sacred chest...it](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And [the sons of Levi](#) carried [the Box of God](#) just as [Moses commanded](#), according to the word of [Yahweh](#), on their shoulders with poles on them.

UST

¹⁵ Just as [the law of Moses said](#), according to the command of [Yahweh](#), [the descendants of Levi](#) fastened poles to [God's sacred chest](#) and carried it by putting the poles on their shoulders.

1 Chronicles 15:16

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

lifting up their voices

This idiom means to sing loudly. Alternate translation: "singing loudly" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [to the chiefs of](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [their brothers](#)
- [of joy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [the leaders of](#)
- [the descendants of Levi](#)
- [some of their relatives](#)
- [joyful](#)

ULT

16 And [David](#) said [to the chiefs of the Levites](#) to assign [their brothers](#) as the singers with instruments of song, harps, and lyres, and cymbals, playing to raise a sound [of joy](#).

UST

16 [David](#) told [the leaders of the descendants of Levi](#) to appoint [some of their relatives](#) to sing and play lyres, harps, and cymbals, making [joyful](#) music while they were carrying the sacred chest.

1 Chronicles 15:17

General Information:

This begins the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the Levites
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the sons of
- the son of (3)
- Joel
- his brothers
- their brothers
- Asaph

Translation Words - UST

- they
- his relatives
- and...and was a descendant of Merari
- Asaph...Asaph
- was the son of
- was the son of (2)
- and...and was a descendant of Merari
- was the son of (3)
- Joel

ULT

17 And [the Levites](#) assigned Heman [the son of Joel](#) and from [his brothers](#), [Asaph the son of Berechiah](#), and from [the sons of Merari](#) [their brothers](#), Ethan [the son of Kushaiah](#),

UST

17 So [they](#) appointed Heman and [his relatives](#) [Asaph](#) and Ethan. Heman [was the son of Joel](#). [Asaph was the son of Berechiah](#). Ethan [was the son of Kushaiah and was a descendant of Merari](#).

1 Chronicles 15:18

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

With them were their kinsmen of second rank

This likely means that these men served in lower positions and were assistants to Heman, Asaph, and Ethan. Alternate translation: “With them were their kinsmen who were in a lower position of power” or “The following relatives would help them” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Mikneiah, Obed Edom, and Jeiel, the gatekeepers

The word “gatekeepers” refers to people who guard gates or entryways. Here it refers to guarding access to the ark of the covenant and applies to Obed Edom and Jeiel. Alternate translation: “Mikneiah, and the gatekeepers, Obed Edom and Jeiel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their brothers of](#)
- [Zechariah](#)
- [and Benaiah](#)
- [the gatekeepers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [group of relatives](#)
- [Zechariah](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [two of the temple gatekeepers](#)

ULT

¹⁸ and with them, [their brothers of](#) the second rank: [Zechariah](#), Ben, and Jaaziel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Unni, Eliab, [and Benaiah](#), and Maaseiah, and Mattithiah, and Eliphelehu, and Mikneiah, and Obed Edom, and Jeiel, [the gatekeepers](#).

UST

¹⁸ They also appointed another [group of relatives](#) from the descendants of Levi: [Zechariah](#), Ben, Jaaziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, [Benaiah](#), Maaseiah, Mattithiah, Eliphelehu, Mikneiah, and [two of the temple gatekeepers](#), Obed Edom and Jeiel.

1 Chronicles 15:19

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

The musicians Heman, Asaph, and Ethan were appointed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The Levites appointed the musicians Heman, Asaph, and Ethan" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asaph](#)
- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asaph](#)
- [bronze](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And the singers, Heman, [Asaph](#), and Ethan, with [bronze](#) cymbals to play.

UST

¹⁹ Heman, [Asaph](#) and Ethan sang and also played [bronze](#) cymbals.

1 Chronicles 15:20

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Alamoth

The meaning of this word is not clear but may refer to a style of music. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Zechariah](#)
- [and Benaiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Zechariah](#)
- [and Benaiah](#)

ULT

²⁰ [And Zechariah](#), and Aziel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Unni, and Eliab, and Maaseiah, [and Benaiah](#) with harps, according to Alamoth.

UST

²⁰ [Zechariah](#), Aziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, Maaseiah, [and Benaiah](#) played harps according to a certain musical style.

1 Chronicles 15:21

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Sheminith

The meaning of this word is not clear but may refer to a style of music. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

led the way

Alternate translation: "led the other musicians" or "led the procession"

Translation Words - ULT

- [to lead](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a different musical style](#)

ULT

²¹ And Mattithiah, and Eliphelehu, and Mikneiah, and Obed Edom, and Jeiel, and Azaziah with lyres, according to the Sheminith [to lead](#).

UST

²¹ Mattithiah, Eliphelehu, Mikneiah, Obed Edom, Jeiel, and Azaziah played lyres according to [a different musical style](#).

1 Chronicles 15:22

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the chief of
- the Levites
- one who understood

Translation Words - UST

- the leader of
- the descendants of Levi
- was very capable

ULT

²² And Kenaniah, [the chief of the Levites](#) in lifting up, an instructor in lifting up, for he was [one who understood](#).

UST

²² Kenaniah, [the leader of the descendants of Levi](#) in music, directed the singing because he [was very capable](#).

1 Chronicles 15:23

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the Box](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the sacred chest](#)

ULT

²³ And Berechiah and Elkanah, gatekeepers [for the Box](#).

UST

²³ Berechiah and Elkanah were two of the men who guarded [the sacred chest](#).

1 Chronicles 15:24

This ends the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Zechariah](#)
- [and Benaiah](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [the trumpets](#)
- [the Box of](#)
- [for the Box](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The priests](#)
- [Zechariah](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [trumpets](#)
- [God's](#)
- [sacred chest](#)
- [the sacred chest](#)

ULT

²⁴ And Shebaniah, and Joshaphat, and Nethanel, and Amasai, [and Zechariah](#), [and Benaiah](#), and Eliezer, [the priests](#), the ones to blow [the trumpets](#) before the face of [the Box of God](#). And Obed Edom and Jehiah, gatekeepers [for the Box](#).

UST

²⁴ [The priests](#) Shebaniah, Joshaphat, Nethanel, Amasai, [Zechariah](#), [Benaiah](#), and Eliezer were the ones who blew [trumpets](#) in front of [God's sacred chest](#). Obed Edom and Jehiah also guarded [the sacred chest](#).

1 Chronicles 15:25

the commanders over thousands

This could mean: (1) the word “thousands” represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders and led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 1,000 soldiers” or (2) the word translated as “thousands” does not represent an exact numbers but is the name of a large military division. Alternate translation: “the commanders of large military divisions” (See: [Numbers](#))

Obed Edom

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and the chiefs of](#)
- [the Box of](#)
- [the covenant of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [with joy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [Israelite](#)
- [and the officers](#)
- [the sacred chest...the sacred chest](#)
- [symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#)
- [symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#)
- [joyfully](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²⁵ And it happened [David](#), and the elders of [Israel](#), and the chiefs of thousands were going to bring up [the Box of the covenant of Yahweh](#) from the house of Obed Edom with joy.

UST

²⁵ So [David](#), the [Israelite](#) leaders, and the officers who commanded one thousand soldiers went to get the sacred chest symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel. They joyfully got the sacred chest from Obed Edom's house.

1 Chronicles 15:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the Levites
- the Box of
- the covenant of
- Yahweh
- bulls
- rams

Translation Words - UST

- God
- the descendants of Levi
- the sacred chest
- symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel
- symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel
- bulls
- rams

ULT

²⁶ And it happened when God helped the Levites carrying the Box of the covenant of Yahweh, and they slaughtered seven bulls and seven rams.

UST

²⁶ Indeed, God helped the descendants of Levi who carried the sacred chest symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel. Therefore David and the leaders sacrificed seven bulls and seven rams to thank him.

1 Chronicles 15:27

David was clothed with a robe of fine linen, as were the Levites who carried the ark, the singers, and Kenaniah, the leader of the song with the singers

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "David, the Levites who carried the ark, the singers, and Kenaniah, the leader of the song with the singers all wore fine linen robes" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

linen

a cloth made from fibers of the flax plant

Kenaniah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- in a robe of
- the Levites
- the Box
- the chief of
- David
- an ephod of

Translation Words - UST

- the descendants of Levi
- the sacred chest
- the man who directed
- robes of
- David
- a waistcloth made of

ULT

²⁷ And David was clothed in a robe of fine linen, and all the Levites carrying the Box, and the singers, and Kenaniah, the chief of the lifting up of the singers. And on David, an ephod of linen.

UST

²⁷ David, all the descendants of Levi who carried the sacred chest, all the singers, and Kenaniah, the man who directed those who sang, wore robes of fine linen. David also wore a waistcloth made of linen.

1 Chronicles 15:28

So all Israel brought up the ark

Here the word “all” is a generalization. Alternate translation: “So a great crowd of Israelites brought up the ark” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [the Box of](#)
- [the covenant of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [a horn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelite people](#)
- [the sacred chest](#)
- [symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#)
- [symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#)
- [horns](#)

ULT

28 And all [Israel](#) was bringing up [the Box of the covenant of Yahweh](#) with shouting of joy, and with a sound of a [horn](#) and with trumpets, and with cymbals, playing with harps and lyres.

UST

28 So all of [the Israelite people](#) joined in bringing up to Jerusalem [the sacred chest symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#). They shouted joyfully, blew [horns](#) and trumpets, and played cymbals, lyres, and harps.

1 Chronicles 15:29

as the ark of the covenant of Yahweh came to the city of David

Alternate translation: "as the people brought the ark of the covenant of Yahweh to the city of David"

Michal

This is the name of David's wife. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

she despised him in her heart

Here "heart" represents thoughts or emotions. Alternate translation: "she despised him" or "she hated him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Box of](#)
- [the covenant of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [the king](#)
- [in her heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the sacred chest](#)
- [symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#)
- [symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#)
- [the section of Jerusalem named the city of David](#)
- [David](#)
- [Saul's](#)
- [King](#)
- [she despised him](#)

ULT

²⁹ And it happened [the Box of the covenant of Yahweh](#) was coming to the city of [David](#), and Michal the daughter of [Saul](#), looked down out of the window. And she saw [the king, David](#), dancing and celebrating. And she despised him [in her heart](#).

UST

²⁹ While they were bringing [the sacred chest symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel to the section of Jerusalem named the city of David](#), Michal (the first of David's wives and [Saul's](#) daughter) watched them, looking out of a window. When she saw [King David](#) dancing and celebrating, [she despised him](#).

1 Chronicles 16

1 Chronicles 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapters 15 and 16 tell how David organized the priests and Levites. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetic song in 16:8-36.

Special concepts in this chapter

David's psalm

As David organized the priests in their work in the tent, he wrote a psalm of praise to Yahweh.

1 Chronicles 16:1

General Information:

The word “they” in these verses refers to the priests and Levites.

before God

Alternate translation: “to God”

Translation Words - ULT

- the Box of
- God
- God
- David
- burnt offerings

Translation Words - UST

- God’s
- They offered the offerings in front of the special tent which housed the sacred chest
- sacred chest
- David’s workers
- offerings which they fully burned on the altar

ULT

¹ And they brought in the Box of God and put it in the midst of the tent that David stretched out for it. And they offered burnt offerings and peace offerings before the face of God.

UST

¹ They brought God’s sacred chest to Jerusalem and put it inside the special tent that David’s workers set up. Then they brought offerings which they fully burned on the altar and other offerings commemorating friendship between them and God. They offered the offerings in front of the special tent which housed the sacred chest.

1 Chronicles 16:2

When David had finished sacrificing the burnt offering and the fellowship offerings

This is a metonym for David directing the priests, who performed the actual sacrifices. (See: [Metonymy](#))

he blessed the people in the name of Yahweh

To bless “in the name of Yahweh” means to bless with Yahweh’s power and authority or as his representative. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [and he blessed](#)
- [the people](#)
- [in the name of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the priests](#)
- [David...to bless](#)
- [asked Yahweh](#)
- [asked Yahweh](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)

ULT

² And [David](#) finished bringing up the burnt offering and the peace offerings, and he blessed the people in the name of Yahweh.

UST

² When [the priests](#) finished presenting all those offerings, [David asked Yahweh to bless the Israelite people](#).

1 Chronicles 16:3

He distributed to every Israelite

This was done under David's authority and direction. (See: [Metonymy](#))

cake of raisins

a baked sweet bread made with dried grapes

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bread](#)
- [Israelite](#)

ULT

³ And he distributed to each person of [Israel](#), from man and as far as woman, to each a loaf of [bread](#), and a date cake, and a raisin cake.

UST

³ David ordered his servants to give a loaf of [bread](#), a baked good with dates, and a baked good with raisins to every [Israelite](#) who was there, both men and women.

1 Chronicles 16:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Box of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the Levites
- as ones who minister
- the God of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- the descendants of Levi
- the special tent in which the descendants of Levi placed... sacred chest
- Yahweh's
- Yahweh
- to lead the people who
- the God of
- the Israelite people

ULT

⁴ And he appointed before the face of the Box of Yahweh from the Levites as ones who minister, and to commemorate and to thank and to praise Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

⁴ Then David appointed some of the descendants of Levi to stand in front of the special tent in which the descendants of Levi placed Yahweh's sacred chest, to lead the people who worshiped and thanked and praised Yahweh, the God of the Israelite people.

1 Chronicles 16:5

**Zechariah ... Jaaziel ... Shemiramoth ... Jehiel ...
Mattithiah ... Eliab ... Benaiah ... Obed Edom ...
Jeiel**

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

second to him

This means next to him in authority and position. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

cymbals

These are two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asaph](#)
- [and Asaph](#)
- [the head](#)
- [Zechariah](#)
- [and Benaiah](#)
- [and lyres](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asaph](#)
- [and Asaph](#)
- [was their leader](#)
- [Zechariah](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [and lyres](#)

ULT

⁵ [Asaph the head](#), and second to him [Zechariah](#), [Jeiel](#), and [Shemiramoth](#), and [Jehiel](#), and [Mattithiah](#), and [Eliab](#), and [Benaiah](#), and [Obed Edom](#), and [Jeiel](#), with instruments of harps and [lyres](#), and [Asaph](#) with cymbals was playing,

UST

⁵ [Asaph was their leader](#). [Zechariah](#) was his assistant. The other descendants of Levi who helped were [Jaaziel](#), [Shemiramoth](#), [Jehiel](#), [Mattithiah](#), [Eliab](#), [Benaiah](#), [Obed-Edom](#), and [Jeiel](#). They played harps and [lyres](#), and [Asaph](#) played cymbals.

1 Chronicles 16:6

Benaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- and Benaiah
- the priests
- with trumpets
- the Box of
- the covenant of
- God

Translation Words - UST

- Benaiah
- were priests
- who blew trumpets
- the special tent in which the descendants of Levi placed the sacred chest
- symbolizing the agreement between God and the people of Israel
- symbolizing the agreement between God and the people of Israel

ULT

⁶ and Benaiah and Jahaziel the priests with trumpets regularly, before the face of the Box of the covenant of God.

UST

⁶ Benaiah and Jahaziel were priests who blew trumpets frequently in front of the special tent in which the descendants of Levi placed the sacred chest symbolizing the agreement between God and the people of Israel.

1 Chronicles 16:7

on that day

Here “that day” refers to the day the ark of the covenant was moved from the house of Obed Edom to Jerusalem.

song of thanksgiving

Alternate translation: “song of giving thanks”

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- first
- Yahweh
- by the hand of
- Asaph
- and his brothers

Translation Words - UST

- David
- first
- to Asaph and his helpers
- to Asaph and his helpers
- to Asaph and his helpers
- Yahweh

ULT

⁷ On that day then David first appointed to thank Yahweh by the hand of Asaph and his brothers.

UST

⁷ On that day, David first gave to Asaph and his helpers this song to praise Yahweh:

1 Chronicles 16:8

call on his name

Here “his name” represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: “call on Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the nations

This refers to the people in the nations. Alternate translation: “the people of the nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Yahweh](#)
- [call](#)
- [on his name](#)
- [make known](#)
- [among the peoples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [and pray](#)
- [to him](#)
- [Tell](#)
- [the people of all nations](#)

ULT

8 Give thanks [to Yahweh](#), [call on his name](#); [make known among the peoples](#) his deeds.

UST

8 Thank [Yahweh and pray to him](#). Tell [the people of all nations](#) what he has done.

1 Chronicles 16:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his wonderful acts

Translation Words - UST

- his miraculous deeds

ULT

⁹ Sing to him, make music to him; tell of all his wonderful acts.

UST

⁹ Sing to him; sing songs to praise him. Tell about all his miraculous deeds.

1 Chronicles 16:10

Boast in his holy name

Here “his holy name” represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: “Boast in who Yahweh is” or “Boast in Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

let the heart of those who seek Yahweh rejoice

- Here “the heart” represents the person who seeks Yahweh. Alternate translation: “let the people who seek Yahweh rejoice” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his holy](#)
- [in...name](#)
- [the heart of](#)
- [those who seek](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [let...rejoice](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that he is](#)
- [holy](#)
- [Those who follow](#)
- [Those who follow](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [should rejoice](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Glory in [his holy name](#); let [the heart of those who seek Yahweh](#) rejoice.

UST

¹⁰ Be glad [that he is holy](#). [Those who follow Yahweh](#) should rejoice.

1 Chronicles 16:11

Seek Yahweh and his strength

To “seek Yahweh’s strength” means to ask him to strengthen you. Alternate translation: “Seek Yahweh and ask him to give you his strength” (See: [Idiom](#))

seek his presence continually

Alternate translation: “seek to be near him always”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Seek](#)
- [seek](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and his strength](#)
- [his face](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ask...to help you](#)
- [pray](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and give you his strength](#)
- [to him](#)

ULT

¹¹ [Seek Yahweh and his strength; seek his face](#) continually.

UST

¹¹ [Ask Yahweh to help you and give you his strength. Frequently pray to him!](#)

1 Chronicles 16:12

Recall the marvelous things

Alternate translation: "Remember the marvelous things"

his miracles and

The understood verb may be supplied. Alternate translation: "remember his miracles and" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

decrees from his mouth

Here "mouth" refers to the things that Yahweh spoke. Alternate translation: "decrees that he has spoken" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his wonderful acts](#)
- [his miracles](#)
- [and the judgments of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the wonderful things](#)
- [the miracles he has done](#)
- [and the just laws that](#)

ULT

¹² Remember [his wonderful acts](#) which he has done, [his miracles and the judgments of](#) his mouth,

UST

¹² Think about [the wonderful things](#) that he has done, [the miracles he has done, and the just laws that](#) he has decreed.

1 Chronicles 16:13

you descendants of Israel his servant, you people of Jacob, his chosen ones

These phrases share similar meanings and are used for emphasis.
(See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- O seed of
- Israel
- his servant
- O sons of
- Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- We are the offspring of
- his servant
- Israel
- we are the descendants of
- Jacob

ULT

¹³ O seed of Israel his servant, O sons of Jacob, his chosen ones.

UST

¹³ We are the offspring of his servant Israel; we are the descendants of Jacob whom he has chosen.

1 Chronicles 16:14

His decrees are on all the earth

Here “all the earth” refers to all the people of the earth. Alternate translation: “His laws are for all the people of the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [our God](#)
- [are his judgments](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [our God](#)
- [his just laws](#)

ULT

¹⁴ He is [Yahweh, our God](#); in all the earth [are his judgments](#).

UST

¹⁴ [Yahweh](#) is [our God](#). People throughout the world know [his just laws](#).

1 Chronicles 16:15

Keep his covenant ... for a thousand generations

These two phrases share similar meanings and are used together for emphasis. Here “word” refers to the covenant. Alternate translation: “Keep his covenant in mind forever, the promise that he made for a thousand generations” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Keep his covenant in mind

This means to remember and think about his covenant. Alternate translation: “Remember his covenant” (See: [Idiom](#))

a thousand generations

“1,000 generations” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his covenant](#)
- [he commanded](#)
- [generations](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the agreement that he made](#)
- [he made](#)
- [generations](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Remember forever [his covenant](#), the word [he commanded](#) for 1,000 [generations](#),

UST

¹⁵ Think about for all of your life [the agreement that he made](#); [he made](#) a promise that will last for 1,000 [generations](#).

1 Chronicles 16:16

He calls to mind

The phrase “calls to mind” means to remember something. Alternate translation: “He remembers” (See: [Idiom](#))

the covenant that he made with Abraham, and his oath to Isaac

Both “the covenant” and “the oath” refer to the same promise that Yahweh made to his people. (See: [Parallelism](#))

his oath to Isaac

This refers to the oath that he had previously made to Issac. Alternate translation: “his oath that he made to Isaac” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he cut](#)
- [with Abraham](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he made with](#)
- [Abraham](#)

ULT

¹⁶ which [he cut with Abraham](#), and his oath to Isaac.

UST

¹⁶ That is the agreement that [he made with Abraham](#), and God repeated that promise to Isaac, Abraham's son.

1 Chronicles 16:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- for Jacob
- for Israel
- a covenant

Translation Words - UST

- for Isaac's son, Jacob
- as a promise
- to Israel and his descendants

ULT

¹⁷ And he established it for Jacob as a statute, for Israel a covenant forever,

UST

¹⁷ God continued the agreement for Isaac's son, Jacob, as a decree; as a promise to Israel and his descendants for all time.

1 Chronicles 16:18

General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in this verse refers to Israel.

as your share

Alternate translation: “as your part”

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan
- your inheritance

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan
- to belong to you and your descendants

ULT

18 saying, “To you I will give the land of Canaan the allotment of your inheritance.”

UST

18 God said, “I will give the region of Canaan to you, to belong to you and your descendants.”

1 Chronicles 16:19

General Information:

The word “they” in this verse refers to Israel.

strangers in the land

It is implied that “the land” refers to Canaan. Alternate translation: “foreigners in the land of Canaan” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁹ When you all were few in number, insignificant, and sojourners in it,

UST

¹⁹ When there were hardly any of your ancestors, just a tiny group of people who were living in that land like strangers,

1 Chronicles 16:20

General Information:

The word “they” in this verse refers to Israel.

from nation to nation, from one kingdom to another

These two phrases have similar meanings and are used together for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [nation](#)
- [people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [another](#)
- [another](#)

ULT

²⁰ and they walked back and forth from nation to [nation](#), and from a kingdom to another [people](#),

UST

²⁰ they continued to wander from one place to [another](#), from one kingdom to [another](#).

1 Chronicles 16:21

General Information:

The words “them” and “their” in this verse refers to Israel.

for their sakes

Alternate translation: “for their own well-being”

Translation Words - ULT

- kings

Translation Words - UST

- kings

ULT

²¹ he did not permit a person to oppress them; and he rebuked kings on account of them.

UST

²¹ God did not allow others to oppress them, and he warned kings on your ancestors' behalf by saying to them,

1 Chronicles 16:22

Do not touch my anointed ones

Here “touch” means to harm. It is an exaggeration Yahweh used to strengthen his warning to not harm his people. Alternate translation: “Do not harm the people I have anointed” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [do...do evil](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Do...wrong](#)

ULT

22 “Do not strike my anointed ones, and against my prophets do not [do evil](#).”

UST

22 “Do not harm the people whom I have chosen! Do not [wrong](#) my prophets!”

1 Chronicles 16:23

General Information:

Parallelism is common in Hebrew poetry. (See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#))

all the earth

This refers to the people of the earth. Alternate translation: “all you people who live on the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

announce his salvation

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **salvation**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “save.” Alternate translation: “announce that he has saved us” or “tell people that he is the one who saves” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

day after day

Alternate translation: “every day”

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to Yahweh](#)

ULT

²³ Sing [to Yahweh](#), all the earth; announce from day to day his salvation.

UST

²³ You people throughout the world, sing [to Yahweh](#). Every day proclaim to others that he has saved us.

1 Chronicles 16:24

Declare his glory among the nations

Alternate translation: "Tell all the people in every nation about his great glory"

Translation Words - ULT

- among the nations
- his glory
- the peoples
- his wonderful acts

Translation Words - UST

- among the nations
- he is great
- tell all the people groups
- the marvelous things that he has done

ULT

²⁴ Recount among the nations his glory, among all the peoples his wonderful acts.

UST

²⁴ Tell among the nations that he is great; tell all the people groups the marvelous things that he has done;

1 Chronicles 16:25

Yahweh is great and is to be praised greatly

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh is great. Praise him greatly" or "Yahweh is great, and people should praise him greatly" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he is to be feared above all other gods

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "fear him above all other gods" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is Yahweh](#)
- [and to be praised](#)
- [and to be feared](#)
- [gods](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [and he deserves praise](#)
- [Everyone should revere](#)
- [the gods](#)

ULT

²⁵ For great [is Yahweh and to be praised](#) much, [and to be feared](#) is he above all [gods](#).

UST

²⁵ because [Yahweh](#) is great, [and he deserves praise](#) very much. [Everyone should revere](#) him more than all [the gods](#),

1 Chronicles 16:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the gods of
- the peoples
- but Yahweh
- the heavens

Translation Words - UST

- the gods that the other people groups worship
- the gods that the other people groups worship
- but Yahweh is truly great; he
- the skies

ULT

²⁶ For all the gods of the peoples are worthless, but Yahweh, the heavens he made.

UST

²⁶ because all the gods that the other people groups worship are idols with no value, but Yahweh is truly great; he created the skies.

1 Chronicles 16:27

Splendor and majesty are in his presence

The author speaks as if splendor and majesty are people who can stand before a king. (See: [Personification](#))

in his presence

Alternate translation: "all around him" or "where he is"

Strength and joy are in his place

The author speaks as if strength and joy are people who can be in Yahweh's sanctuary. (See: [Personification](#))

in his place

Alternate translation: "in his temple" or "in his sanctuary"

ULT

²⁷ Splendor and majesty are before his face; strength and joy in his place.

UST

²⁷ Magnificence and grandeur come from where he is. Power and joy come from the place where he lives.

1 Chronicles 16:28

Ascribe to Yahweh

Alternate translation: "Give praise to Yahweh" or "Praise Yahweh"

ascribe to Yahweh glory and strength

The abstract nouns "glory" and "strength" can be stated as adjectives.
Alternate translation: "praise Yahweh because he is glorious and strong" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh
- to Yahweh
- O clans of
- peoples
- glory
- and strength

Translation Words - UST

- You people in nations all over the world
- You people in nations all over the world
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- his glorious power
- his glorious power

ULT

28 Ascribe to Yahweh, O clans of peoples, ascribe to Yahweh glory and strength!

UST

28 You people in nations all over the world, praise Yahweh! Praise Yahweh for his glorious power!

1 Chronicles 16:29

Ascribe to Yahweh the glory his name deserves

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **glory**, you could express the same idea with a verb or adjective. Alternate translation: “Glorify Yahweh just as his name deserves” or “Proclaim that Yahweh is glorious just as his name deserves” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

his name deserves

Here “his name” refers to the person of God. Alternate translation: “due to him” or “he deserves” or “he is worthy to receive” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Bow down to Yahweh

The implied information is that the people were to bow down in worship. Alternate translation: “Bow down to worship Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Symbolic Action](#))

in the splendor of holiness

The abstract nouns “splendor” and “holiness” can be translated as adjectives. Alternate translation: “because he is gloriously beautiful and holy” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- the glory of
- his name
- an offering
- worship
- holy

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- the glory
- his name deserves
- with offerings to give to him
- Bow down and worship
- because he is holy and his holiness shines out from him with wonderful beauty

ULT

²⁹ Ascribe to Yahweh the glory of his name; bring an offering and come before his face; worship Yahweh in holy splendor.

UST

²⁹ Attribute to Yahweh the glory his name deserves. Come to his place of worship with offerings to give to him! Bow down and worship Yahweh because he is holy and his holiness shines out from him with wonderful beauty.

1 Chronicles 16:30

Tremble

shake because of fear

all the earth

This is a metonym for all the people who live on the earth. Alternate translation: "all the people of the earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

³⁰ Tremble from before his face, all the earth. Indeed, the world is established; it cannot be shaken.

UST

³⁰ You people throughout the world, be reverent and respectful when you are in his place of worship because of his sheer power. As one example, he put the earth firmly in its place; nothing ever will be able to move it.

1 Chronicles 16:31

Let the heavens be glad, and let the earth rejoice

This could mean: (1) the heavens and the earth are spoken of as if they have emotions like people. Alternate translation: "Let it be as if the heavens are glad and the earth rejoices" or (2) "the heavens" and "the earth" are metonyms for those who dwell in those places. Alternate translation: "Let those who live in the heavens be glad and let those who live on the earth rejoice" (See: [Personification](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heavens](#)
- [Let...rejoice](#)
- [among the nations](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Everything in the sky](#)
- [should celebrate](#)
- [to all the people groups of the world](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

³¹ Let [the heavens rejoice](#), and let the earth shout in exultation; and let them say [among the nations](#), "Yahweh reigns."

UST

³¹ [Everything in the sky should celebrate](#) and everything on the earth should cheer. Everything in the sky and on the earth declare [to all the people groups of the world](#), "Yahweh is king!"

1 Chronicles 16:32

that which fills it shout with joy

The implied information is that this refers to all the creatures living in the sea. They are spoken of as if they should shout with joy like people might do. Alternate translation: “the sea creatures shout joyfully” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Personification](#))

Let the fields be joyful, and all that is in them

“Let the fields and all that is in them be joyful.” The author speaks as if the fields and the animals that live in them have emotions like people. Alternate translation: “Let it be as if the fields themselves and all the animals that live in them are rejoicing” (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

³² Let the sea roar and that which fills it.
Let the field exult, and all that is in it.

UST

³² The oceans and all the creatures in the oceans should shout; the fields and everything in them should rejoice.

1 Chronicles 16:33

let the trees in the forest shout for joy

This speaks about the trees as if they were people who could shout for joy. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to judge](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to judge](#)

ULT

³³ Then the trees of the forest will shout for joy from before the face of [Yahweh](#), for he is coming [to judge](#) the earth.

UST

³³ When that happens, the trees in the forest should cheer in front of [Yahweh](#), because he will come [to judge](#) everyone on the earth.

1 Chronicles 16:34

for his covenant faithfulness endures forever

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “faithfully” or “faithful.” Alternate translation: “for he faithfully loves us forever” or “for he is faithful to his covenant forever” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh
- he is good
- his loyal love

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- everything he does shows he is good
- he faithfully loves us

ULT

³⁴ Give thanks to Yahweh, for he is good, for forever is his loyal love.

UST

³⁴ Thank Yahweh, because everything he does shows he is good, because he faithfully loves us always.

1 Chronicles 16:35

from the other nations

Here “the other nations” represents the people in those nations. Alternate translation: “from the people of other nations” or “from the armies of other nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

give thanks to your holy name

Here Yahweh is referred to by his “holy name.” Alternate translation: “give thanks to you” or “give thanks to Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Save us](#)
- [and deliver us](#)
- [God of](#)
- [the nations](#)
- [your holy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [rescue us](#)
- [and save us](#)
- [the armies of other nations](#)
- [your sacred](#)

ULT

³⁵ And say, “[Save us](#), [God of](#) our salvation, and gather us [and deliver us](#) from [the nations](#), to give thanks to [your holy](#) name, to boast in your praise.”

UST

³⁵ Say to him, “[God](#) who provides our liberation, [rescue us](#), and bring us together [and save us](#) from [the armies of other nations](#), so that we will thank you for [your sacred](#) character and reputation, and revel in giving you praise.”

1 Chronicles 16:36

from everlasting to everlasting

This refers to two extremes and means for all time. Alternate translation: "for all eternity" (See: [Merism](#))

All the people

This is a generalization that refers to the group of people assembled to worship Yahweh. Alternate translation: "The people" or "Everyone who was there" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed be
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- the people
- Amen
- and praised

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the God of
- us Israelite people
- deserves praise
- the people...they all
- We agree
- and they praised

ULT

36 Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Israel, from everlasting and as far as everlasting. And all the people said, "Amen" and praised Yahweh.

UST

36 Yahweh, the God of us Israelite people, deserves praise, for all time, in the past and in the future. After the people finished singing that song, they all said "We agree!", and they praised Yahweh.

1 Chronicles 16:37

his brothers

Alternate translation: "his relatives"

as every day's work required

The implied information is that they were to perform the daily duties that were given in the law of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "as was required every day by the law" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the Box of
- the Box
- the covenant of
- Yahweh
- Asaph
- and his brothers

Translation Words - UST

- Asaph
- and the other members of his clan
- the tent where the sacred chest...was
- there
- symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel
- symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel

ULT

³⁷ And he left there before the face of the Box of the covenant of Yahweh Asaph and his brothers to minister before the face of the Box continually, according to the matter of the day in its day,

UST

³⁷ Then David left Asaph and the other members of his clan there in front of the tent where the sacred chest symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel was. David told them that they must do their work there every day.

1 Chronicles 16:38

Obed Edom ... Jeduthun ... Hosah

These were names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

sixty-eight relatives

"68 relatives" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and their brothers](#)
- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David also left Obed Edom and other descendants of Levi to work there](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

³⁸ and Obed Edom [and their brothers](#),
68, and Obed Edom [the son of](#)
Jeduthun, and Hosah, were
gatekeepers,

UST

³⁸ [David also left Obed Edom and other descendants of Levi to work there](#), 68 in all. Hosah and Obed Edom, Jeduthun's [son](#), guarded the entrances of the sacred tent.

1 Chronicles 16:39

to serve before the tabernacle

Alternate translation: "to serve at the tabernacle"

Translation Words - ULT

- and Zadok
- the priest
- the priests...of
- and his brothers
- the tabernacle of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Zadok
- the high priest
- and the other priests who worked with him
- and the other priests who worked with him
- Yahweh's
- sacred tent

ULT

³⁹ and Zadok the priest and his brothers the priests before the face of the tabernacle of Yahweh at the high place which was in Gibeon

UST

³⁹ David also told Zadok the high priest and the other priests who worked with him to remain in front of Yahweh's sacred tent, at the place where the Israelite people worshiped Yahweh there in the city of Gibeon.

1 Chronicles 16:40

General Information:

The word "They" in this verse refers to the priests.

continually morning

Alternate translation: "every day, morning"

Translation Words - ULT

- burnt offerings
- to Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the altar of
- in the law of
- he commanded
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- they burned offerings
- to Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the altar for
- the rules
- gave
- the Israelite people

ULT

⁴⁰ to bring up burnt offerings to Yahweh on the altar of burnt offering continually morning and evening, even according to all that is written in the law of Yahweh, which he commanded to Israel.

UST

⁴⁰ Every morning and every evening they burned offerings to Yahweh on the altar for such offerings, obeying the rules Moses wrote down, the rules that Yahweh gave to the Israelite people.

1 Chronicles 16:41

General Information:

The word “them” in this verse refers to the priests.

Heman ... Jeduthun

These were names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [by names](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [his loyal love](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [specifically](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [he faithfully loves his people](#)

ULT

⁴¹ And with them, Heman and Jeduthun and the rest of those chosen who were marked [by names](#) to give thanks to [Yahweh](#), for forever is [his loyal love](#).

UST

⁴¹ With them were Heman and Jeduthun and the other descendants of Levi whom David chose [specifically](#). They sang songs to praise [Yahweh](#) because [he faithfully loves his people](#) forever.

1 Chronicles 16:42

cymbals

These are two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

guarded the gate

The implied information is that they were to guard the entrance to the tabernacle. Alternate translation: "guarded the tabernacle gate" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- and the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- to God
- sons

ULT

42 And with them, Heman and Jeduthun for those playing trumpets and cymbals and the instruments of song of God; and the sons of Jeduthun for the gate.

UST

42 Heman and Jeduthun led the music, including those playing trumpets, cymbals, and other instruments for singing to God. Jeduthun's sons guarded the gates of the sacred tent.

1 Chronicles 16:43

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- to his house
- his house
- David

Translation Words - UST

- the people
- returned to their homes
- his family
- David

ULT

⁴³ And all the people went, each to his house, and David turned around to bless his house.

UST

⁴³ Then all the people left. They all returned to their homes, and David returned home to ask Yahweh to bless his family.

1 Chronicles 17

1 Chronicles 17 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Building the temple

David wanted to build a temple for God but God would not allow him to. Instead he promised that his son, Solomon, would build the temple and he promised David would have a descendant who would be king forever. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#) and [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#))

1 Chronicles 17:1

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

settled

comfortable and happy, without the desire to move or change

I am living in a house of cedar

Cedar is a kind of tree that is known for its strength. If you have an equivalent type of tree in your culture, you can use that name, otherwise you can reword this. Alternate translation: "I am living in a strong, permanent house" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the ark of the covenant of Yahweh is staying under a tent

Tents are temporary dwellings. If you do not have tents in your culture, you can word this differently. Alternate translation: "the ark of the covenant of Yahweh is staying in a temporary place" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [in his house](#)
- [in a house of](#)
- [curtains](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [I](#)
- [but the Box of](#)
- [the covenant of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [he](#)
- [in his palace](#)
- [in a palace](#)
- [a tent](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [I](#)
- [but the sacred chest](#)
- [symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#)
- [symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#)

ULT

¹ And it happened when [David](#) was living [in his house](#), and [David](#) said to [Nathan the prophet](#), "Behold, I am living in a house of cedars, but the Box of the covenant of Yahweh is under curtains."

UST

¹ After [David](#) began to live [in his palace](#), he said to [the prophet Nathan](#), "It does not seem right that I am living in a palace made of cedar wood, but the sacred chest symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel stays inside a tent!"

1 Chronicles 17:2

do what is in your heart

Here “heart” represents the mind. Alternate translation: “do what you think you should” (See: [Metonymy](#))

God is with you

Here “with you” means God is helping and blessing David. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Nathan](#)
- [David](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Nathan](#)
- [David](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

² And [Nathan](#) said to [David](#), “All which is in your heart, do, for [God](#) is with you.”

UST

² [Nathan](#) replied to [David](#), “Everything you are thinking about doing, do it, because [God](#) is with you.”

1 Chronicles 17:3

the word of God came to Nathan, saying,

The idiom “the word of God came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: “God gave a message to Nathan. He said,” or “God spoke this message to Nathan:” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Nathan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God...He](#)
- [Nathan](#)

ULT

³ And it happened in that night, and the word of [God](#) came to [Nathan](#), saying,

UST

³ But that night [God](#) spoke to [Nathan](#).
[He](#) said,

1 Chronicles 17:4

Go and tell David my servant, 'This is what Yahweh says: You will not build me a house in which to live

This has quotations within quotations. It may be necessary to translate them as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "Go and tell David my servant that he will not be the one to build a house in which I will live" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

build me a house

Here "house" means a temple. In [1 Chronicles 17:10](#) Yahweh will say that he will build a house for David. There "house" means a family. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 17:10.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Go](#)
- [David](#)
- [my servant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [a house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Go](#)
- [my servant](#)
- [David...him](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [a temple](#)

ULT

⁴ "Go and say to [David my servant](#), 'Thus says [Yahweh](#): You yourself shall not build for me [a house](#) in which to live,

UST

⁴ "Go and tell [my servant David](#) this is what I, [Yahweh](#), am saying to [him](#): 'You will not build [a temple](#) for me to live in,

1 Chronicles 17:5

that I brought up Israel

The implied information is that this refers to God bringing up Israel out of the land of Egypt. Alternate translation: “that I brought the Israelites to the promised land from the land of Egypt” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

a tent, a tabernacle

Both the words “tent” and “tabernacle” describe the same thing and emphasize that he had lived in a place that was not a permanent building. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in a house](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and from a tabernacle](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in any building](#)
- [the people of Israel](#)
- [in my sacred tent](#)

ULT

⁵ for I have not lived [in a house](#) from the day that I brought up [Israel](#) until this day, but I have been from tent to tent, [and from a tabernacle](#).

UST

⁵ since I have not lived [in any building](#) from the day that I brought [the people of Israel](#) up out of Egypt until now. Rather, I have lived [in my sacred tent](#), moving from one place to another when the Israelites moved around.

1 Chronicles 17:6

did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders whom I appointed to shepherd my people, saying, "Why have you not built me a house of cedar?"

This has a quotation within a quotation. The direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "did I ever ask any of Israel's leaders, whom I appointed to shepherd my people, why they had not built me a house of cedar?" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that he never asked any of Israel's leaders to build him a house. Alternate translation: "I never said anything to any of Israel's leaders" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

whom I appointed to shepherd my people

Those who are leaders of the people of Israel are spoken of as if they were shepherds and the people were sheep. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Why have you not built me a house of cedar?

If Yahweh had asked the leaders this question, he would have been using a question to scold them for not building him a house of cedar. But, Yahweh said previously that he did not ask them this question. Alternate translation: "You should have built me a house of cedar." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [I commanded](#)
- [my people](#)
- [a house of](#)
- [cedars](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelites](#)
- [their](#)
- [I appointed](#)
- [them](#)
- [a temple](#)
- [made of cedar wood](#)

ULT

⁶ In all where I have walked back and forth among all [Israel](#), what word did I speak to one of the judges of [Israel](#) whom I [commanded](#) to shepherd [my people](#), saying, "Why have you all not built for me [a house of cedars](#)?"

UST

⁶ Wherever I went with all [the Israelites](#) as they traveled, I never said to any of [their](#) leaders whom I [appointed](#) to lead [them](#), "Why have you not built me [a temple made of cedar wood](#)?"

1 Chronicles 17:7

General Information:

Yahweh describes his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

tell my servant David

Yahweh is still telling the prophet Nathan what he should tell David.

I took you from the pasture

David’s job as a shepherd is referred to by the place he watched his sheep. Alternate translation: “I took you from your job as a shepherd” (See: [Metonymy](#))

pasture

an area of land where animals feed on the grass. See how you translated this word in [1 Chronicles 4:39](#) and [4:40](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [to my servant](#)
- [Yahweh of](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [my people](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to my servant](#)
- [Yahweh, the commander of the angel armies](#)
- [where you were taking care of sheep](#)
- [Israel, my people](#)
- [Israel, my people](#)

ULT

⁷ And now, thus you shall say [to my servant](#), to David, ‘Thus says [Yahweh of Hosts](#): I myself took you from the pasture, from behind [sheep](#), to be a leader over [my people Israel](#).

UST

⁷ ‘Therefore, this is what you should say [to my servant](#) David: “[Yahweh, the commander of the angel armies](#), says, ‘I took you from a pasture [where you were taking care of sheep](#), and I appointed you to be the ruler of [Israel, my people](#).”

1 Chronicles 17:8

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

I have been with you

Here “with you” means that Yahweh has helped and blessed David. (See: [Idiom](#))

cut off all your enemies

Yahweh destroying David’s enemies is spoken of as if Yahweh cut them off, as one would cut a piece of cloth or cut a branch from a tree. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will make you a name

Here “name” represents a person’s reputation. Alternate translation: “I will make your name to be great and well known” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the great ones

The phrase “great ones” means famous persons.

Translation Words - ULT

- [and I have cut off](#)
- [your enemies](#)
- [a name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and I have removed](#)
- [your enemies](#)
- [to become very famous](#)

ULT

⁸ And I have been with you in all where you have gone, [and I have cut off](#) all [your enemies](#) from before your face, and I will make for you [a name](#), like a name of the great ones who are on the earth.

UST

⁸ I have been with you wherever you have gone, [and I have removed](#) all [your enemies](#) who opposed you. Now, I will cause you [to become very famous](#), as well known as the names of the greatest men who have ever lived on the earth.

1 Chronicles 17:9

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

I will appoint a place

Alternate translation: "I will choose a place"

will plant them there

God causing the people to live in the land permanently and securely is spoken of as if he would plant them in the land. Alternate translation: "I will settle them there" (See: [Metaphor](#))

be troubled no more

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "no one will ever trouble them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And I will set](#)
- [for my people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [they will...tremble](#)
- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [tremble, stagger, shake](#)

ULT

⁹ [And I will set](#) a place [for my people Israel](#), and I will plant them, and they will settle on it, and [they will not tremble](#) again. And [the sons of](#) injustice will not continue to trouble them, just as at the first,

UST

⁹⁻¹⁰ Formerly, during the time that I appointed leaders for my Israelite people, many violent groups oppressed them. But this will not happen anymore. I have chosen a place where my Israelite people can live peacefully and no one will disturb them anymore. I will give them rest from being attacked by their enemies. And I will defeat all your enemies. I declare to you that I, Yahweh, will enable your descendants to rule after you die.

1 Chronicles 17:10

General Information:

The words “your” and “you” in this verse refers to David.

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

from the days

Here “days” represents a longer period of time. Alternate translation: “from the time” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I commanded judges

After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble.

to be over my people Israel

To be in authority is referred to as being over someone. Alternate translation: “to rule my people Israel” (See: [Idiom](#))

subdue

make a person or animal unable to attack

build you a house

Here the metonym “house” refers to David’s ancestors continuing on as the rulers of Israel. In [1 Chronicles 17:4](#) God told David he would not be the one to build a house for Yahweh. There “house” represented a temple. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 17:4. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I commanded](#)
- [my people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [your enemies](#)
- [that a house](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

ULT

¹⁰ and from the days that I commanded judges over my people Israel. And I will humble all your enemies. And I declare to you that a house Yahweh will build for you.

UST

⁹⁻¹⁰ Formerly, during the time that I appointed leaders for my Israelite people, many violent groups oppressed them. But this will not happen anymore. I have chosen a place where my Israelite people can live peacefully and no one will disturb them anymore. I will give them rest from being attacked by their enemies. And I will defeat all your enemies. I declare to you that I, Yahweh, will enable your descendants to rule after you die.

- house, household
- people, people group

1 Chronicles 17:11

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

It will come about

Alternate translation: "It will happen"

when your days are fulfilled for you to go to your fathers

The two phrases "when your days are fulfilled" and "go to your fathers" have similar meanings and are combined for emphasis. They both are polite ways to refer to death and dying. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Euphemism](#))

I will raise up your descendant after you

God appointing David's descendant is spoken of as if Yahweh would raise or lift him up. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your fathers](#)
- [your seed](#)
- [from your sons](#)
- [his kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [your ancestors who have died](#)
- [one of your descendants](#)
- [one of your sons](#)
- [his kingdom](#)

ULT

11 And it will be when your days are fulfilled, to walk with [your fathers](#), then I will raise up [your seed](#) after you who will be [from your sons](#), and I will establish [his kingdom](#).

UST

11 When your life ends and you die and go to be with [your ancestors who have died](#), I will appoint [one of your descendants](#), [one of your sons](#), to become king, and I will enable [his kingdom](#) to be strong.

1 Chronicles 17:12

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

I will establish his throne forever

The right to rule as king is described by the place where a king sits.
Alternate translation: "I will make his rule over Israel to last forever"
(See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a house](#)
- [his throne](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a temple](#)
- [his ruling dynasty](#)

ULT

¹² He himself will build for me [a house](#), and I will establish [his throne](#) as far as forever.

UST

¹² He is the one who will lead the building of [a temple](#) for me. And I will make [his ruling dynasty](#) last forever.

1 Chronicles 17:13

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

I will be a father to him, and he will be my son

The prophecy in 17:11-14 refers to Solomon, David's son. But, aspects of the prophecy will be fulfilled by Jesus. So, here it is best to translate the words "father" and "son" with your normal words for a biological father and son.

I will not take my covenant faithfulness away from him, as I took it from Saul

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as "faithfully." Alternate translation: "I will never stop faithfully loving him, as I stopped loving Saul" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a father
- a son
- And my covenant faithfulness

Translation Words - UST

- like a father
- like a son
- but...faithful love

ULT

13 I myself will be to him a father, and he himself will be to me a son. And my covenant faithfulness I will not take away from with him, as I took away from who was before your face.

UST

13 I will be like a father to him, and he will be like a son to me. I stopped giving faithful love to Saul, the one who was the king before you became king, but I will never stop giving faithful love to your son.

1 Chronicles 17:14

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh finishes describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

I will set him over my house and in my kingdom forever, and his throne will be established forever

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that David's dynasty will last forever. (See: [Parallelism](#))

his throne will be established forever

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will establish his throne forever" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his throne

A king's right to rule is referred to by the place a king sits. Alternate translation: "his right to rule" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in my house](#)
- [and in my kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [over my people](#)
- [and my kingdom](#)

ULT

14 And I will set him up [in my house and in my kingdom](#) as far as forever, and his throne will be established as far as forever."

UST

14 I will cause him and his descendants to rule [over my people and my kingdom](#) forever. His ruling dynasty will last forever."

1 Chronicles 17:15

reported to him

Alternate translation: "told him"

all these words

Here "words" represents what Yahweh said. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Nathan](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Nathan](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

¹⁵ According to all these words and according to all this vision, thus [Nathan](#) spoke to [David](#).

UST

¹⁵ So [Nathan](#) reported to [David](#) everything that Yahweh had revealed to him.

1 Chronicles 17:16

he said

Alternate translation: "David said"

Who am I, Yahweh God, and what is my family, that you have brought me to this point?

- David asks this question to express the deep emotion he felt from hearing Yahweh's proclamation. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "My family and I are not worthy of this honor, Yahweh God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [is my house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King](#)
- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my God](#)
- [my family](#)

ULT

16 Then [the king David](#) went in and sat before the face of [Yahweh](#); and he said, "Who am I, [Yahweh God](#), and what [is my house](#), that you have brought me as far as here?"

UST

16 Then [King David](#) went into the tent housing the sacred chest, sat in the presence of [Yahweh](#), and prayed this prayer: "[Yahweh my God](#), I am certainly not worthy for you to have done of all these things for me, and [my family](#) is not worthy, either."

1 Chronicles 17:17

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

this was a small thing

Something that is not important is described as being small. (See: [Idiom](#))

in your sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “in your judgment” (See: [Metaphor](#))

your servant’s family

Here David refers to himself as “your servant.” This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “my family” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

for a great while to come

This speaks about time as if it were something that travels and arrives somewhere. Alternate translation: “and what will happen to them in the future” (See: [Metaphor](#))

your servant

Here David refers to himself as “your servant.” This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “me” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- the house of
- your servant
- the man
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- O God
- my God
- to my descendants
- to my descendants
- Yahweh
- I was...man

ULT

¹⁷ And a small thing was this in your eyes, [God](#), and you have spoken regarding [the house of your servant](#) from a distance; and you have seen me as an appearance of [the man](#) moving upwards, [Yahweh God](#).

UST

¹⁷ And [O God](#), now, in addition to everything else, you have spoken about what will happen [to my descendants](#) in the future for many generations. [Yahweh my God](#), you have acted toward me as though [I was](#) the most important [man](#) on the earth!

1 Chronicles 17:18

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

What more can I, David, say to you?

David uses this question to emphasize that he has nothing left to say to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "There is nothing more I can say to you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

You have honored your servant. You have given your servant special recognition

These two phrases have similar meanings and are repeated for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

You have given your servant special recognition

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **recognition**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as "recognize." Alternate translation: "You have recognized your servant in a special way" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [you know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I, David](#)
- [me](#)
- [what kind of person I am](#)
- [know](#)

ULT

18 What more can [David](#) still say to you about honoring [your servant](#). And you, [your servant you know](#).

UST

18 [I, David](#), cannot say anything more to you in exchange for you honoring [me](#). Yahweh, you [know what kind of person I am](#).

1 Chronicles 17:19

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

your servant's sake

Here David refers to himself as "your servant." This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "my sake" or "my benefit" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

to fulfill your own purpose

Alternate translation: "to accomplish what you planned to do"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [your servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [my](#)

ULT

¹⁹ [Yahweh](#), for the sake of [your servant](#) and according to your heart, you have done all this greatness to make known all the greatnesses.

UST

¹⁹ [Yahweh](#), you have done these great things for [my](#) sake, according to the way you wanted, and in order to reveal all of these great things.

1 Chronicles 17:20

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

there is none like you, and there is no God besides you

These phrases have similar meaning and are repeated for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

as we have always heard

Here “we” refers to David and the nation of Israel. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [You are the only true God](#)

ULT

²⁰ [Yahweh](#), there is none like you, and no [God](#) except you, in all which we have heard with our ears.

UST

²⁰ [Yahweh](#), there is no one like you. [You are the only true God](#). This is what we have always heard.

1 Chronicles 17:21

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

what nation on earth ... by great and awesome deeds?

This question expects a negative answer to make the point that there was no other nation like Israel. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "there is no nation on earth ... by great and awesome deeds." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you rescued from Egypt

The implied information is that they were rescued from slavery. Alternate translation: "you rescued from slavery in Egypt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to make a name for yourself

Here "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. Alternate translation: "to make all people know who you are" (See: [Metonymy](#))

You drove out nations

Here "nations" represents the people groups that were living in Canaan. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- is like your people
- a people
- your people
- Israel
- you ransomed
- from Egypt
- nation
- nations
- God
- a name
- great
- and to be feared

Translation Words - UST

- And there is no nation like
- people...to rescue to make them your people
- your people, the Israelites
- Israel
- you rescued

ULT

²¹ And who is like your people Israel, one nation on the earth whom God went to ransom for himself a people, to set for you a name great and to be feared, to drive out nations from the faces of your people whom you ransomed from Egypt?

UST

²¹ And there is no nation like Israel because Israel is the only nation on the earth whose people you went out to rescue to make them your people, to perform miracles and show how great and awesome you are, and to expel the people of other people groups in Canaan who were before your people, the Israelites, whom you rescued from being slaves in Egypt.

- from being slaves in Egypt
- because Israel is the only nation
- the people of other people groups in Canaan
- you
- to perform miracles and show how...you are
- great
- and awesome

1 Chronicles 17:22

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- your people
- a people
- Israel
- Yahweh
- God

Translation Words - UST

- us your...people
- as your people
- Israelite
- Yahweh
- God

ULT

²² And you made **your people Israel** for yourself **a people** as far as forever, and you, **Yahweh**, became to them **God**.

UST

²² You caused **us your Israelite people** to belong to you **as your people** forever, and you, **Yahweh**, became our **God!**

1 Chronicles 17:23

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

So now

Here “now” does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

may the promise that you made concerning your servant and his family be established forever

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “may you do what you promised to me and my family, and may your promise never change” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

your servant and his family

David is speaking about himself in the third person. This can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: “me and my family” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [his house](#)
- [may it be confirmed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [I pray that you will cause...to be fulfilled](#)
- [me](#)
- [my descendants](#)

ULT

²³ And now, [Yahweh](#), the word which you spoke concerning [your servant](#) and concerning [his house](#), [may it be confirmed](#) as far as forever, and do just as you have spoken.

UST

²³ And now [Yahweh](#), [I pray that you will cause](#) the things that you have promised about [me](#) and [my descendants to be fulfilled](#) forever, and do the things that you have said that you would do.

1 Chronicles 17:24

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

May your name

Here “name” represents Yahweh’s reputation. (See: [Metonymy](#))

the house of me, David, your servant

Here “house” represents family. Alternate translation: “my family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

is established before you

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “is secure because of you” or “continues because of you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your name](#)
- [Yahweh of](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [is God](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to Israel](#)
- [and the house of](#)
- [David](#)
- [your servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [your...reputation](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [is the God of](#)
- [He is the God](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [who rules Israel](#)
- [my](#)
- [my](#)
- [descendants](#)

ULT

²⁴ And may it be confirmed and may [your name](#) be great as far as forever, saying, ‘[Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, is God to Israel,](#)’ and the house of [David your servant](#) established before your face.

UST

²⁴ I pray that those things will happen so people will celebrate your excellent [reputation](#) forever. People will exclaim, ‘[Yahweh](#), commander of the angel armies, [is the God of Israel. He is the God who rules Israel!](#)’ You will cause [my descendants](#) to be the king of the people you rule,

1 Chronicles 17:25

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

your servant

David refers to himself as “your servant.” This can be expressed in the first person. Alternate translation: “me” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

that you will build him a house

Here the metonym “house” refers to David’s ancestors continuing on as the rulers of Israel. In [1 Chronicles 17:4](#) Yahweh tells David he would not be the one to build a house for Yahweh. There “house” represented a temple. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 17:4. (See: [Metonymy](#))

I, your servant, have found courage

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **courage**, you could express the same idea with the verb “encouraged.” Alternate translation: “I, your servant, am encouraged”

Translation Words - ULT

- [my God](#)
- [have uncovered](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [your servant](#) (2)
- [a house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [my God](#)
- [have revealed to](#)
- [me](#)
- [I](#) (2)
- [to have a ruling dynasty](#)

ULT

²⁵ For you, [my God](#), [have uncovered](#) the ear of [your servant](#) to build for him [a house](#); therefore [your servant](#) has found to pray before your face.

UST

²⁵ because you, [my God](#), [have revealed to me](#) that you will cause me [to have a ruling dynasty](#). So [I](#) am brave enough to pray like this to you.

1 Chronicles 17:26

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- your servant

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- God
- me

ULT

²⁶ And now, Yahweh, you are God, and you have spoken concerning your servant this good.

UST

²⁶ Now, Yahweh, you are God! You have promised to do these good things for me.

1 Chronicles 17:27

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

your servant's house

David speaks of himself in the third person. This can be expressed in the first person. Alternate translation: "my house" or "my family" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

You, Yahweh, have blessed it, and it will be blessed forever

These two phrases have about the same meaning and are repeated here for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

it will be blessed forever

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "you will continue to bless it forever" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house of](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [have blessed](#)
- [and it is blessed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [my](#)
- [descendants](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [have given your blessing](#)
- [and you will keep blessing them](#)

ULT

²⁷ And now, you have decided to bless [the house of your servant](#), to be forever before your face. For you, [Yahweh](#), [have blessed, and it is blessed](#) forever."

UST

²⁷ And now you have promised to bless [my descendants](#), in order that they will forever be king over the people you rule. Indeed, you, [Yahweh](#), [have given your blessing, and you will keep blessing them](#) forever."

1 Chronicles 18

1 Chronicles 18 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

David's victories

David conquered all kingdoms neighboring Israel. The gold, silver and bronze he received from these victories, he saved for building the temple. This may indicate that he believed that the victories were because of Yahweh and therefore the goods received in victory belonged to him. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

1 Chronicles 18:1

After this

Alternate translation: "After God's promise to bless David"

it came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- the Philistines
- the Philistines
- from the hand of

Translation Words - UST

- David's army
- the army of Philistia
- Philistine
- Philistine

ULT

¹ And it happened after this that David struck down the Philistines, and he humbled them. And he took Gath and its daughters from the hand of the Philistines.

UST

¹ Some time later, David's army attacked and defeated the army of Philistia, subduing them. They captured the Philistine city of Gath and its surrounding villages.

1 Chronicles 18:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moab
- the Moabites
- servants
- tribute

Translation Words - UST

- the army of the Moab people group
- the Moab people group
- had to accept...as their ruler
- They had to pay money each year to David's government, in order that David's army would protect them

ULT

² And he struck down Moab, and the Moabites became servants to David, carriers of tribute.

UST

² His army also defeated the army of the Moab people group, so the Moab people group had to accept David as their ruler. They had to pay money each year to David's government, in order that David's army would protect them.

1 Chronicles 18:3

David then defeated Hadadezer

Here David and Hadadezer are spoken of as if they were alone, but the reader should understand that these kings represent their armies that were with them. Alternate translation: “David and his army then defeated the army of Hadadezer” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Hadadezer

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zobah

This is the name of a country.

was traveling to establish his rule by the Euphrates River

Alternate translation: “was going to the Euphrates river to conquer people in that area”

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [his hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David's army](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [control](#)

ULT

³ And [David](#) struck down Hadadezer, [the king of](#) Zobah Hamath, when he went to set up [his hand](#) at the Euphrates River.

UST

³ [David's army](#) also fought and defeated the army of Hadadezer, [the king of](#) the region of Zobah in Aram near the city of Hamath, when Hadadezer was trying to establish [control](#) over the area near the Euphrates River.

1 Chronicles 18:4

a thousand chariots

“1,000 chariots” (See: [Numbers](#))

seven thousand horsemen

These are soldiers who rode on horses. “7,000 horsemen” (See: [Numbers](#))

twenty thousand footmen

These are soldiers who walked. “20,000 footmen” (See: [Numbers](#))

hamstrung all the chariot horses

David had his soldiers cut the hamstring muscles on the backs of the horses' thighs so they would no longer be able to run.

reserved

to keep for a special use

a hundred chariots

“100 chariots” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David's army](#)
- [David's army](#)

ULT

⁴ And [David](#) captured from him 1,000 chariots, and 7,000 horsemen, and 20,000 men on foot. And [David](#) hamstrung all the chariots, but spared from him 100 chariots.

UST

⁴ [David's army](#) captured 1,000 of Hadadezer's chariots, 7,000 chariot drivers, and 20,000 infantry soldiers. [David's army](#) hamstrung most of Hadadezer's horses; there were only 100 horses that they did not cripple.

1 Chronicles 18:5

killed twenty-two thousand

“killed 22,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Hadadezer's army](#)
- [David's army](#)

ULT

⁵ And Aram of Damascus came to help Hadadezer [the king of](#) Zobah, and [David](#) struck down of the Arameans 22,000 men.

UST

⁵ When the army of Aram came from the city of Damascus to fight alongside [Hadadezer's army](#), [David's army](#) killed 22,000 soldiers from the army of Aram.

1 Chronicles 18:6

garrisons

groups of soldiers assigned to particular areas

Yahweh gave victory to David

Alternate translation: "Yahweh caused David to be victorious"

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- And...set up
- servants
- tribute
- Yahweh
- And...saved

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Then...stationed groups of his soldiers
- had to accept...as their ruler
- They had to pay money each year to David's government, in order that David's army would protect them
- Yahweh
- enabled...to win battles

ULT

⁶ And David set up in Aram of Damascus, and Aram became servants to David, carriers of tribute. And Yahweh saved David in all where he went.

UST

⁶ Then David stationed groups of his soldiers in Damascus. So the people of Aram had to accept David as their ruler. They had to pay money each year to David's government, in order that David's army would protect them. Yahweh enabled David's army to win battles everywhere they went.

1 Chronicles 18:7

Hadadezer

This was the king of Zobah. See how you translated his name in [1 Chronicles 18:3](#).

that were on Hadadezer's servants

Alternate translation: "that Hadadezer's servants carried"

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [of gold](#)
- [the servants of](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David's soldiers](#)
- [gold](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁷ And [David](#) took the shields [of gold](#) that were on [the servants of](#) Hadadezer, and he brought them [to Jerusalem](#).

UST

⁷ [David's soldiers](#) took the [gold](#) shields that Hadadezer's [soldiers](#) carried and brought them [to Jerusalem](#).

1 Chronicles 18:8

Tebah ... Kun

These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

very much bronze

Alternate translation: "a large quantity of bronze"

It was with this bronze that Solomon later made the bronze basin called "The Sea," the pillars, and the bronze equipment

The writer adds this background information to explain what would happen to this bronze at a later time. (See: [Background Information](#))

the bronze basin called "The Sea,"

This a large bronze bowl, about 5 meters across, that was kept in the temple for ceremonial washing.

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [the pillars](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [David's son Solomon](#)
- [the pillars](#)

ULT

⁸ And from Tibhath and from Kun, cities of Hadadezer, [David](#) took very much [bronze](#). With it, [Solomon](#) made the sea of bronze and [the pillars](#) and bronze items.

UST

⁸ [They](#) also brought from Tebah and Kun, two cities that belonged to Hadadezer, a lot of [bronze](#), which [David's son Solomon](#) later used to make the huge bronze basin called "The Sea" and [the pillars](#) and other bronze items for the temple.

1 Chronicles 18:9

Tou

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hamath ... Zobah

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the king of](#)
- [King...of](#)
- [David's army](#)

ULT

⁹ And Tou, [the king of](#) Hamath, heard that [David](#) struck down all the army of Hadadezer, [the king of](#) Zobah.

UST

⁹ When Tou, [the king of](#) the city of Hamath in Aram, heard that [David's army](#) had defeated the entire army of [King](#) Hadadezer [of](#) Zobah in Aram,

1 Chronicles 18:10

Tou ... Hadoram

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fought against

Alternate translation: "been at war with"

Translation Words - ULT

- [his son](#)
- [King](#)
- [David](#)
- [of gold](#)
- [and silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his son](#)
- [King](#)
- [David](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And he sent Hadoram [his son](#) to [King David](#) to ask him for peace and to bless him because he had fought against Hadadezer and struck him down, for a man of war Tou was with Hadadezer, and all the items [of gold and silver](#) and bronze.

UST

¹⁰ he sent [his son](#) Hadoram to [King David](#), to greet him and congratulate him about his fighting and defeating Hadadezer's army because Tou's army had been fighting Hadadezer's. Hadoram brought to David many items made of [gold](#), [silver](#), and bronze,

1 Chronicles 18:11

set these objects apart to Yahweh

Alternate translation: "decided that these objects would only be used to worship Yahweh"

he carried away from all the nations

Alternate translation: "David took from all the nations that he defeated"

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- David
- consecrated
- to Yahweh
- the silver
- and the gold
- the nations
- from Edom
- and from the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- King
- David
- dedicated
- to Yahweh
- the silver
- and gold
- nations
- the Edom
- and Ammon people groups

ULT

11 Also these King David consecrated to Yahweh with the silver and the gold that he carried away from all the nations: from Edom, and from Moab, and from the sons of Ammon, and from the Philistines, and from Amalek.

UST

11 and King David dedicated those things to Yahweh, like he had done with the silver and gold that his soldiers had taken from other nations: the Edom, Moab, and Ammon people groups, the people from Philistia, and from the descendants of Amalek.

1 Chronicles 18:12

Abishai ... Zeruiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

eighteen thousand Edomites

"18,000 Edomites" (See: [Numbers](#))

Valley of Salt

This is the name of a valley between Edom and Judah that was used as a battlefield.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [whose mother was](#)

ULT

¹² And Abishai [the son of](#) Zeruiah struck down Edom in the Valley of Salt, 18,000.

UST

¹² The army of David's military commander Abishai, [whose mother was](#) Zeruiah, killed 18,000 soldiers from Edom in the Valley of Salt.

1 Chronicles 18:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And he set
- servants
- Yahweh
- And...saved
- David

Translation Words - UST

- Then David stationed
- had to accept...as their ruler
- Yahweh
- protected
- David and his army

ULT

¹³ And he set in Edom garrisons, and all Edom became servants to David. And Yahweh saved David in all where he went.

UST

¹³ Then David stationed groups of his soldiers there in Edom, and the people of Edom had to accept David as their ruler. Yahweh protected David and his army wherever they traveled.

1 Chronicles 18:14

over all Israel

Alternate translation: "over all the Israelites"

he administered justice and righteousness to all his people

The abstract nouns "justice" and "righteousness" can be translated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "he did what was just and right for all his people" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- And...reigned
- Israel
- judgment
- his people

Translation Words - UST

- David
- ruled
- the Israelite people
- them
- what was just

ULT

14 And [David](#) [reigned](#) over all [Israel](#). And it happened he was doing [judgment](#) and righteousness for all [his people](#).

UST

14 [David](#) [ruled](#) over all [the Israelite people](#), and he always did for [them](#) [what was just](#) and fair.

1 Chronicles 18:15

Zeruiah ... Ahilud

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

recorder

the person who writes down details of special events

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Joab](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [and Jehoshaphat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joab](#)
- [son of](#)
- [son of \(2\)](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

ULT

¹⁵ [And Joab the son of Zeruiah](#) was over the army, [and Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud](#), secretary.

UST

¹⁵ [Joab son of Zeruiah](#) was the chief army commander. [Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud](#) was the record keeper.

1 Chronicles 18:16

Ahitub ... Abiathar ... Shavsha

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ahimelech

This spelling represents a correction of the spelling "Abimelech," which some versions follow. The corrected spelling makes this verse agree with [2 Samuel 8:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Zadok](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [and Ahimelech](#)
- [Abiathar](#)
- [priests](#)
- [scribe](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Zadok](#)
- [son of](#)
- [son of \(2\)](#)
- [and Ahimelech](#)
- [Abiathar](#)
- [were priests](#)
- [was the official secretary](#)

ULT

16 [And Zadok the son of Ahitub and Ahimelech the son of Abiathar, priests, and Shavsha, scribe.](#)

UST

16 [Zadok son of Ahitub and Ahimelech son of Abiathar were priests. Shavsha was the official secretary.](#)

1 Chronicles 18:17

Benaiah ... Jehoiada

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kerethites ... Pelethites

These are the names of foreign people groups who became David's bodyguards. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And Benaiah
- the son of
- and the sons of
- Jehoiada
- the Kerethites
- David
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Benaiah
- son of
- sons were
- Jehoiada
- the Kereth and Peleth people groups who were David's bodyguards
- David's
- his most important officials

ULT

¹⁷ And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada was over the Kerethites and the Pelethites, and the sons of David, the heads at the hand of the king.

UST

¹⁷ Benaiah son of Jehoiada led the Kereth and Peleth people groups who were David's bodyguards. David's sons were his most important officials.

1 Chronicles 19

1 Chronicles 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the beginning of the story about the war against the Ammonites. This story continues in the first part of the next chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Insults

The young king of Ammon insulted David when he had David's servants shaved and cut off their garments. Knowing David was going to attack him for this, he hired mercenaries from Aram to help him. Israel was able to defeat the Aramean mercenaries.

1 Chronicles 19:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Nahash

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [his son](#)
- [and...died](#)
- [and...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the king of](#)
- [the Ammon people group](#)
- [his son Hanun](#)
- [died](#)
- [Then...became...king](#)

ULT

¹ And it happened after this, and Nahash, [the king of the sons of Ammon](#), [died](#), and [his son reigned](#) in his place.

UST

¹ Some time later, Nahash, [the king of the Ammon people group](#), [died](#). Then [his son Hanun](#) became their [king](#).

1 Chronicles 19:2

Nahash ... Hanun

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

I will show kindness ... showed kindness

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **kindness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "I will be kind ... was kind" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

console

comfort

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- David
- loyal kindness
- loyal kindness
- the land of
- the son of
- the sons of
- his father
- his father
- messengers
- the servants of

Translation Words - UST

- David
- David
- David's
- Nahash
- to tell Hanun that David was sorry to hear that Hanun's father had died
- the land where the Ammonite people group lived
- kind
- kind
- his son
- the land where the Ammonite people group lived
- some officials
- officials

ULT

² And David said, "I will do loyal kindness to Hanun the son of Nahash, because his father did to me loyal kindness." And David sent messengers to comfort him concerning his father. And the servants of David came to the land of the sons of Ammon, to Hanun, to comfort him.

UST

² When David heard about that, he thought to himself, "Nahash was kind to me, so I will be kind to his son." So David sent some officials there to tell Hanun that David was sorry to hear that Hanun's father had died. But when David's officials came to Hanun in the land where the Ammonite people group lived to deliver the message,

1 Chronicles 19:3

Do you think that David is honoring your father because he has sent men to comfort you?

The princes asked this question to turn the king against David. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not think that David is honoring your father because he has sent men to comfort you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Do not his servants come to you to explore and examine the land in order to overthrow it?

The princes asked this question to turn the king against David. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely his servants come to you to explore the land in order to overthrow it." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the chiefs of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [David](#)
- [your father](#)
- [comforters](#)
- [his servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the leaders of](#)
- [the Ammon people group](#)
- [David](#)
- [your father's memory](#)
- [these men to give his condolences](#)
- [his men](#)

ULT

³ And [the chiefs of the sons of Ammon](#) said to Hanun, "Is [David](#) honoring [your father](#) in your eyes because he sent to you [comforters](#)? Is it not for the sake of to explore and to overthrow and to spy the land [his servants](#) came to you?"

UST

³ [the leaders of the Ammon people group](#) said to Hanun, "David is not really honoring [your father's memory](#) by sending [these men to give his condolences](#). We think that [his men](#) have come to look around our land in order to determine how his army can conquer us."

1 Chronicles 19:4

So Hanun seized

Hanun did not do this personally, but ordered his men to do it.
Alternate translation: "So Hanun's men seized" (See: [Metonymy](#))

their garments

Alternate translation: "their clothes"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the servants of](#)
- [David](#)
- [and he cut](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David's](#)
- [officials](#)
- [and cutting off](#)

ULT

⁴ And Hanun took [the servants of David](#), and he shaved them, [and he cut](#) their garments in half, until the buttocks, and he sent them away.

UST

⁴ Hanun believed what the leaders said; so he commanded some soldiers to seize [David's officials](#). Hanun's soldiers insulted the officials by shaving off their beards [and cutting off](#) the lower part of their robes. Then Hanun sent David's officials away.

1 Chronicles 19:5

he sent to meet with them

Alternate translation: "David sent some messengers to encourage them"

deeply ashamed

In this idiom, shame is described as deep to show that it has greatly affected them. Alternate translation: "very ashamed" (See: [Idiom](#))

The king

This refers to David.

then return

Alternate translation: "then return to Jerusalem"

Translation Words - ULT

- [humiliated](#)
- [the king](#)
- [in Jericho](#)
- [then return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [humiliated](#)
- [to tell them](#)
- [at Jericho](#)
- [and then return home](#)

ULT

⁵ And they went, and they declared to David concerning the men. And he sent to meet them for the men were greatly [humiliated](#). And [the king](#) said, "Stay [in Jericho](#) until when your beards grow, [then return](#)."

UST

⁵ The officials left and were greatly [humiliated](#). When David found out about what had happened to his officials, he sent some messengers to them [to tell them](#), "Stay [at Jericho](#) until your beards have grown again, [and then return home](#)."

1 Chronicles 19:6

saw that they had become a stench to David

The word “stench” refers to a bad smell. This describes the Ammonites as something unpleasant and unwanted. Alternate translation: “realized that they had become repulsive to David” or “realized that they had angered David” (See: [Metaphor](#))

a thousand talents

“1,000 talents” (See: [Numbers](#))

talents

approximately 33 kilograms (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Naharaim ... Maacah ... Zobah

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [and the sons of](#)
- [David](#)
- [silver](#)
- [Maacah](#)
- [and horsemen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the leaders of](#)
- [and some of his officials](#)
- [David](#)
- [silver](#)
- [and chariot drivers](#)
- [Aram Maacah](#)

ULT

⁶ And [the sons of](#) Ammon saw that they were a stench to [David](#), and Hanun sent, [and the sons of](#) Ammon, 1,000 talents of [silver](#) to hire for themselves from Aram Naharaim, and from Aram [Maacah](#), and from Zobah, chariots [and horsemen](#).

UST

⁶ Then [the leaders of](#) the Ammon people group realized that they had greatly insulted [David](#). So Hanun [and some of his officials](#) sent 33,000 kilograms of [silver](#) to hire chariots [and chariot drivers](#) from the regions of Aram Naharaim, [Aram Maacah](#) and Zobah northeast of Israel.

1 Chronicles 19:7

thirty-two thousand chariots

“32,000 talents” (See: [Numbers](#))

Maacah ... Medeba

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

thirty-two thousand chariots

It is not clear if the Ammonites paid the entire thousand talents to the king of Maacah, or if they paid him only a portion of that amount and gave the rest to the other cities that sent additional chariots and horsemen.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Maacah](#)
- [his people](#)
- [And the sons of](#)
- [assembled](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the king of](#)
- [the region of Maacah](#)
- [his army](#)
- [The soldiers from the Ammon people group also](#)
- [marched out](#)

ULT

⁷ And they hired for themselves 32,000 chariots and [the king of Maacah](#) and [his people](#). And they came, and they encamped before the face of Medeba. [And the sons of Ammon assembled](#) from their cities, and came to battle.

UST

⁷ They hired 32,000 chariots and chariot drivers, as well as [the king of the region of Maacah](#) and [his army](#). They came and set up their tents near the city of Medeba in the region of Moab. [The soldiers from the Ammon people group also marched out](#) from their cities and were ready for battle.

1 Chronicles 19:8

heard of it

Alternate translation: "heard that the Ammonites were coming out for war"

to meet them

Alternate translation: "to fight against them"

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Joab
- of mighty ones

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Joab
- his army

ULT

⁸ And David heard, and he sent Joab and all the army of mighty ones.

UST

⁸ When David heard about that, he sent Joab and all his army.

1 Chronicles 19:9

at the city gate

this refers to the gate of the Ammonite capital city

the kings who had come

this refers to the Aramean kings that the Ammonites hired to help them fight Israel

by themselves in the field

in the field outside the city, separate from the Ammonites

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- And...came out
- the city
- And the kings

Translation Words - UST

- The soldiers of the Ammon people group
- came out of their city
- of their city
- Meanwhile, the other kings...with their armies

ULT

⁹ And the sons of Ammon came out, and they arrayed for battle at the entrance of the city. And the kings who came were by themselves in the field.

UST

⁹ The soldiers of the Ammon people group came out of their city and lined up for battle at the entrance of their city. Meanwhile, the other kings who had come with their armies stood in their positions in the open fields.

1 Chronicles 19:10

the battle lines

Alternate translation: "the enemy soldiers lined up for battle"

Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- the face of
- faces
- among Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Joab
- groups of enemy soldiers
- in front of his troops
- Israelite

ULT

¹⁰ And Joab saw that the face of the battle was to him faces and hindquarter, and he chose from all the choice ones among Israel, and he arrayed to meet Aram.

UST

¹⁰ Joab saw that there were groups of enemy soldiers in front of his troops and behind his troops. So he selected some of the best Israelite troops and put them in positions to fight against the soldiers of Aram.

1 Chronicles 19:11

put them into battle lines

Alternate translation: "arranged his soldiers in lines for battle"

Abishai

This is the name of Joab's brother. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [in the hand of](#)
- [his brother](#)
- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his older brother](#)
- [to be the commander of](#)
- [his...soldiers](#)
- [the Ammon people group](#)

ULT

¹¹ And the remainder of [the people](#) he placed [in the hand of](#) Abishai [his brother](#), and they arrayed to meet [the sons of Ammon](#).

UST

¹¹ He appointed [his older brother](#) Abishai [to be the commander of his](#) other [soldiers](#) and he told them to stand in their positions in front of the army of [the Ammon people group](#).

1 Chronicles 19:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- is too strong
- are too strong
- the sons of
- then I will save you

Translation Words - UST

- are...strong
- are...strong
- the soldiers from the Ammon people group
- then my soldiers will come and help your men

ULT

¹² And he said, "If Aram is too strong for me, then you shall be to me for salvation. And if the sons of Ammon are too strong for you, then I will save you.

UST

¹² Joab said to them, "If the soldiers from Aram are too strong for us to defeat them, then your soldiers must come and help us. But if the soldiers from the Ammon people group are too strong for you to defeat them, then my soldiers will come and help your men.

1 Chronicles 19:13

Be strong ... show ourselves to be strong

Alternate translation: "Be brave ... behave bravely"

for our people and for the cities of our God

Alternate translation: "for the sake of our people and for the cities of our God" or "to protect our people and the cities of our God"

what is good in his eyes

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "what he considers to be good" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Be strong](#)
- [our people](#)
- [our God](#)
- [and Yahweh](#)
- [the good](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [We must be strong](#)
- [our people](#)
- [that belong to our God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to be good](#)

ULT

¹³ [Be strong](#), and let us strengthen ourselves on behalf of [our people](#) and on behalf of the cities of [our God](#), and [Yahweh, the good](#) in his eyes, he will do."

UST

¹³ [We must be strong](#) and fight hard to defend [our people](#) and our cities [that belong to our God](#). [Yahweh](#) will do what he considers [to be good](#)."

1 Chronicles 19:14

advanced to the battle

Alternate translation: "moved forward to the battle" or "approached the enemy soldiers in the battle"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joab](#)

ULT

14 And [Joab](#) drew near, and the people who were with him, before the faces of Aram for battle. And they fled from his face.

UST

14 So [Joab](#) and his troops advanced to fight the army of Aram; and the soldiers from Aram ran away from Joab and his soldiers.

1 Chronicles 19:15

Then Joab returned ... and went back to Jerusalem

It does not appear that Joab and his soldiers continued to attack the Ammonites in their city. When the Ammonites went into their city, the battle ended and the Israelites returned home.

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- his brother
- to the city
- Joab
- to Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- And when the soldiers of the Ammon people group
- Abishai and his army
- inside the city
- Joab and his army
- to Jerusalem

ULT

¹⁵ And the sons of Ammon saw that Aram fled, and these also fled from the face of Abishai his brother. And they came to the city and Joab came to Jerusalem.

UST

¹⁵ And when the soldiers of the Ammon people group saw that the soldiers from Aram were running away, they also started to run away from Abishai and his army, and they retreated back inside the city. So Joab and his army returned to Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 19:16

General Information:

Verses 16-19 describes a second battle when the Arameans who fled from Joab in [1 Chronicles 19:15](#) were reinforced by other Arameans and attacked Israel again.

the Arameans saw

What the Arameans understood is spoken of as what they saw.
Alternate translation: "the Arameans understood" (See: [Metonymy](#))

sent for reinforcements

Alternate translation: "requested more soliders"

Shophak ... Hadadezer

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [messengers](#)
- [and they brought out](#)
- [the chief of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the army of Israel](#)
- [messengers](#)
- [and brought troops...to the battle area](#)
- [the commander of](#)

ULT

16 And Aram saw that they were defeated before the face of [Israel](#). And they sent [messengers, and they brought out](#) Aram, who was beyond the river, and Shophak [the chief of](#) the army of Hadadezer before their faces.

UST

16 After the leaders of the army of Aram realized that [the army of Israel](#) had defeated them, the leaders of the army of Aram sent [messengers](#) to another part of Aram on the east side of the Euphrates river, [and brought troops](#) from there [to the battle area](#), with Shophak, [the commander of](#) Hadadezer's army, leading them.

1 Chronicles 19:17

Connecting Statement:

This verse continues to describe a second battle when the Arameans who fled from Joab in [1 Chronicles 19:15](#) were reinforced by other Arameans and attacked Israel again.

When David was told this

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "When David's messengers told him that a larger Aramean army was coming" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he gathered ... He arranged

David did not do these things alone. His official and officers helped him. Alternate translation: "David and his officials gathered ... David and his officers arranged" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all Israel

This is a generalization. Not every person in Israel came to fight. Alternate translation: "a very large number of Israelites" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

He arranged

Alternate translation: "He organized"

they fought him

Here "him" refers to David's soldiers, in addition to David. Alternate translation: "the Arameans fought David and his soldiers" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [And he passed over](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelite soldiers](#)
- [and they crossed](#)
- [the Jordan River](#)
- [With David's army](#)

ULT

17 And it was told to David, and he gathered all [Israel](#). [And he passed over the Jordan](#), and he came to them. And he arrayed against them. And [David](#) arrayed to meet Aram for battle, and they fought with him.

UST

17 When David heard about that, he gathered all [the Israelite soldiers](#), [and they crossed the Jordan River](#). They advanced against the army of Aram and took their battle positions to attack them. [With David's army](#) on the battle field ready to fight, the army of Aram attacked David's army.

1 Chronicles 19:18

Connecting Statement:

This verse continues to describe a second battle when the Arameans who fled from Joab in [1 Chronicles 19:15](#) were reinforced by other Arameans and attacked Israel again.

killed seven thousand ... forty thousand

“killed 7,000...40,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [David](#)
- [the chief of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the soldiers of Israel](#)
- [David's soldiers](#)
- [their...commander](#)

ULT

18 And Aram fled from before the face of [Israel](#), and [David](#) killed from Aram 7,000 chariots and 40,000 men on foot. And Shophak [the chief of](#) the army, he killed.

UST

18 But the army of Aram ran away from [the soldiers of Israel](#). However, [David's soldiers](#) killed 7,000 of their chariot drivers and 40,000 infantry soldiers. They also killed Shophak, their army [commander](#).

1 Chronicles 19:19

Connecting Statement:

This verse finishes describing a second battle when the Arameans who fled from Joab in [1 Chronicles 19:15](#) were reinforced by other Arameans and attacked Israel again.

they were defeated by Israel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Israel had defeated them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they made peace with David and served them

They made the peace agreement with David as the king, and served the Israelites.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the servants of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [David](#)
- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the kings who had been subjects of](#)
- [the Israelite army](#)
- [David](#)
- [the rulers of the Ammon people group](#)

ULT

19 And [the servants of](#) Hadadezer saw that they were defeated before the face of [Israel](#), and they made peace with [David](#), and they served him. And Aram was not willing to save [the sons of](#) Ammon again.

UST

19 When [the kings who had been subjects of](#) Hadadezer realized that [the Israelite army](#) had defeated them, they made peace with [David](#), and agreed to have him rule over them. So the rulers of Aram did not want to help [the rulers of the Ammon people group](#) anymore.

1 Chronicles 20

1 Chronicles 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter ends the story of the war with Ammon and tells of giants being killed by David's soldiers.

Special concepts in this chapter

“When kings normally go to war”

It was advantageous for kings to go to war in the springtime. This was possibly due to the weather being neither too hot nor too cold.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“It came about”

This is a phrase used to indicate the next event in a series. It can often be translated as “after,” “then” or “next.”

1 Chronicles 20:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

at the time when kings normally go to war

This is background information from the author. It was harder to fight wars in the cold winter, so kings normally waited for spring to attack their enemies. (See: [Background Information](#))

kings normally go to war ... Joab led the army into battle

Here “kings” is a metonym that means the kings sent their armies into battle. Joab was the commander of David’s army. Alternate translation: “kings normally send their armies to war ... Joab led David’s army into battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

devastated the land

“destroyed the land.” This refers to when an army will ruin the land where their enemies grow food.

He went and besieged Rabbah

“He” refers to the soldiers as well as Joab. Alternate translation: “Joab and his soldiers surrounded Rabbah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the going out of](#)
- [kings](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [the land of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Rabbah](#)
- [Rabbah](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [kings usually went with their armies to fight their enemies](#)
- [kings usually went with their armies to fight their enemies](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Joab and his troops](#)
- [the land of](#)

ULT

¹ And it happened at the time of the turning of the year, at the time of [the going out of kings](#), that [Joab](#) led out the army for war and he devastated [the land of the sons of Ammon](#). And he came, and he besieged [Rabbah](#). And David stayed [in Jerusalem](#). And [Joab](#) struck down [Rabbah](#), and he tore it down.

UST

¹ In that region, [kings usually went with their armies to fight their enemies](#) in the springtime. But the following year, David did not do that. Instead, he stayed [in Jerusalem](#) and sent his commander [Joab](#) to lead the army. Joab and his troops ruined [the land of the Ammon people group](#). Then they went to [Rabbah, the capital city](#), and surrounded it. [Joab and his troops](#) killed [the army in the city of Rabbah](#) and demolished the city.

- the Ammon people group
- Rabbah, the capital city...it
- the army in the city of Rabbah

1 Chronicles 20:2

talent

about 33 kilograms (See: [Biblical Money](#))

The crown was set on David's head

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This could mean: (1) David put the crown on his own head or (2) David's men placed the crown on his head. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he brought out

The word "he" refers to David, but also refers to David's soldiers who helped David do this. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

plunder

valuable items taken in war

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [their king](#)
- [his head](#)
- [the head of](#)
- [of gold](#)
- [the city](#)
- [he brought out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [his own](#)
- [from the head of the king of Rabbah](#)
- [head](#)
- [from the head of the king of Rabbah](#)
- [and was gold](#)
- [They...took](#)
- [from the city](#)

ULT

² And [David](#) took the crown of [their king](#) from on [his head](#), and he found the weight was a talent [of gold](#), and in it was a precious stone. And it was on [the head of David](#), and the plunder of [the city he brought out](#), a very great amount.

UST

² [David](#) then came to Rabbah, took the crown [from the head of the king of Rabbah](#) and put it on [his own head](#). It weighed thirty-three kilograms [and was gold](#). It had a valuable stone in it. [They](#) also [took](#) many other valuable things [from the city](#).

1 Chronicles 20:3

He brought out

The word “He” refers to David, but also refers to David’s soldiers who helped David do this. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

forced them to work with saws and iron picks and axes

These terms describe difficult manual labor that the defeated people were forced to do.

David required all the cities of the people

The people are referred to by their city. Alternate translation: “David required all the peoples of the cities” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- the people
- he brought out
- David
- David
- the sons of
- Then...returned
- to Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- they brought
- Then...the people
- his army
- David’s soldiers
- David
- the Ammon people group
- Then...returned
- to Jerusalem

ULT

³ And [the people](#) who were in it, [he brought out](#), and they sawed with saws and with sharp instruments of iron and with axes. And thus [David](#) did to all the cities of [the sons of Ammon](#). Then [David](#) and all [the people](#) returned to [Jerusalem](#).

UST

³ Then [they brought the people](#) out of the city and forced them to work for their army, using saws and iron picks and axes. [David’s soldiers](#) did this in all the cities of [the Ammon people group](#). Then [David](#) and all of [his army](#) returned to [Jerusalem](#).

1 Chronicles 20:4

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

there was a battle at Gezer with the Philistines

Alternate translation: "the Israelites battled the Philistines at Gezer"

Gezer

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Sibbekai ... Sippai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hushathite ... Rephaim

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Philistines were subdued

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "they subdued the Philistines" or "they defeated the Philistines" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the army of Philistia](#)

ULT

⁴ And it happened after this that war arose at Gezer with [the Philistines](#). Then Sibbekai the Hushathite struck down Sippai, from the descendants of the Rephaim, and they were humbled.

UST

⁴ Some time later, David's army fought with [the army of Philistia](#), at the city of Gezer. During the battle Sibbekai, from the Hushah clan, killed Sippai, one of the descendants of the Rapha giants. So David's army defeated the army of Philistia.

1 Chronicles 20:5

Gob

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Elhanan ... Jair ... Lahmi

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bethlehemite ... Gittite

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

staff

a long and thin pole.

the staff of whose spear was like a weaver's beam

A weaver's beam was a very large piece of wood used to stretch strings as the threads of a rug are weaved together around them. This means the handle of Lahmi's spear was very large.

Translation Words - ULT

- [with the Philistines](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the brother of](#)
- [Goliath](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the soldiers of Philistia](#)
- [son of](#)
- [the younger brother of](#)
- [the giant Goliath](#)

ULT

⁵ And there was again war [with the Philistines](#), and Elhanan [the son of](#) Jair struck down Lahmi [the brother of Goliath](#) the Gittite; and the wood of his spear was like a beam of a weaver.

UST

⁵ In another battle against [the soldiers of Philistia](#), Elhanan [son of](#) Jair, killed Lahmi, [the younger brother of the giant Goliath](#) from the city of Gath, who had a spear which was as thick as a weaver's rod.

1 Chronicles 20:6

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Rephaim

This is the name given to a race of people who were very tall and strong. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶ And there was again war in Gath. And there was a man of stature. And his digits were six and six, 24, and he also was born of Rapha.

UST

⁶ There was another battle near Gath. A huge man was there who had six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot. He was also a descendant of the Rapha giants.

1 Chronicles 20:7

Jehonadab ... Shimea

These are names of men.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- the son of
- the brother of
- David

Translation Words - UST

- the soldiers of Israel
- son of
- was one of...older brothers
- David's

ULT

⁷ And he taunted [Israel](#). And Jonathan [the son of Shimea, the brother of David](#), struck him down.

UST

⁷ When he insulted [the soldiers of Israel](#), Jonathan [son of Shimea](#) killed him. Shimea [was one of David's older brothers](#).

1 Chronicles 20:8

These were descendants of the Rephaim of Gath

Here “these” refer to Sippai in [1 Chronicles 20:4](#), Lahmi in [1 Chronicles 20:5](#), and the giant in verse 6.

they were killed by the hand of David and by the hand of his soldiers

David and his soldiers are referred to by the part of their bodies used to hold a sword. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “David and his soldiers killed the descendants of the Rephaim” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁸ These were born to Rapha in Gath, and they fell by the hand of David and by the hand of his servants.

UST

⁸ Those were some of the descendants of the Rapha giants who had lived in Gath. David and his soldiers killed them.

Translation Words - ULT

- [and they fell](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [and by the hand of](#)
- [David](#)
- [his servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [and his soldiers](#)
- [and his soldiers](#)
- [killed them](#)

1 Chronicles 21

1 Chronicles 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust

To trust in one's own power instead of God's protection is a sin. David had been trusting God to protect him, but now he counted the men of military age so he could know the strength of his army. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

1 Chronicles 21:1

An adversary arose against Israel

Possible meanings of **adversary** are: (1) this refers to Satan who decided to cause trouble for Israel or (2) this refers to an enemy army that began to threaten Israel.

incited David to count Israel

“caused David to do wrong, to count Israel.” If your language has a word for getting someone to become angry and do something he knows is wrong, you should use it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel
- David

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- to find out how many men in Israel were able to be in the army
- David

ULT

¹ And an adversary stood against Israel, and he incited David to count Israel.

UST

¹ An opponent decided to cause the Israelite people to have trouble. So he provoked David to find out how many men in Israel were able to be in the army.

1 Chronicles 21:2

count the people of Israel ... that I may know their number

It is apparent from [1 Chronicles 21:5](#) that David wanted to count only the men who were able to fight.

from Beersheba to Dan

The Israelites considered these two cities their most southern and most northern cities. David uses these cities to refer to all of Israel. (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [the chiefs of](#)
- [the people](#)
- [Go](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [from Beersheba](#)
- [from Beersheba](#)
- [that I may know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [the other army commanders](#)
- [the other army commanders](#)
- [Go out](#)
- [and count all the men in Israel who are able to be in the army](#)
- [Start at Beersheba in the south](#)
- [Start at Beersheba in the south](#)
- [in order that I may know](#)

ULT

² And [David](#) said to [Joab](#) and to [the chiefs of the people](#), “Go, count [Israel from Beersheba](#) and as far as [Dan](#), and bring to me, [that I may know](#) their number.”

UST

² So [David](#) commanded [Joab](#) and [the other army commanders](#), “Go out and count all the men in Israel who are able to be in the army. Start at [Beersheba in the south](#) and go all the way to [Dan in the north](#). Then come back and report to me, [in order that I may know](#) how many men there are.”

1 Chronicles 21:3

a hundred times greater than it is

Joab expresses the desire for an army the size of 100 armies to say he would like the army to have more soldiers and be more powerful. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

But my master the king, do they not all serve my master? Why does my master want this? Why bring guilt on Israel?

Joab uses these three rhetorical questions to tell David that the census was a bad idea. It appears that David was trusting the size of his army instead of trusting Yahweh, and thus making Israel guilty of sin. These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: But my master the king, they all serve you already. My master should not request this. You will only bring guilt on the people of Israel by trusting your military power." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Why does my master want this?

The word "this" refers to David's plan to count all the men of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- Yahweh
- his people
- my lord
- my lord
- the king
- servants
- does...seek
- for Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Joab
- Your Majesty
- Your Majesty
- your Highness
- Yahweh
- our army a hundred times larger than it is now
- we all serve you
- So you should not commit this sin
- Israel

ULT

³ And Joab said, "May Yahweh add to his people like them 100 times. Are not, my lord the king, all of them servants to my lord? Why does my lord seek this? Why should it be guilt for Israel?"

UST

³ But Joab replied, "Your Majesty, I hope that Yahweh will make our army a hundred times larger than it is now. But we all serve you. So you should not commit this sin, your Highness, and make Israel suffer for it."

1 Chronicles 21:4

the king's word was enforced against Joab

Alternate translation: "the command of the king prevailed despite Joab's objections"

So Joab left and went throughout all Israel

It is understood from David's command in [1 Chronicles 21:2](#) that Joab went to count the people of Israel. It can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "So Joab left and went throughout all Israel to count the people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [was strong](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [So...went out](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But David would not change his mind](#)
- [Joab and his soldiers](#)
- [But David would not change his mind](#)
- [But David would not change his mind](#)
- [So](#)
- [went everywhere in Israel and in Judah, and counted the people](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁴ But the word of [the king](#) was strong against [Joab](#). [So Joab went out](#) and walked back and forth in all [Israel](#). Then he came [to Jerusalem](#).

UST

⁴ [But David would not change his mind](#). [So Joab and his soldiers went everywhere in Israel and in Judah, and counted the people](#). Then they returned [to Jerusalem](#),

1 Chronicles 21:5

1,100,000 men

“one million, one hundred thousand men” (See: [Numbers](#))

men who drew the sword

The soldiers in Israel are described by the action of pulling out a sword to fight with it. Alternate translation: “men who were prepared to serve as soldiers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

470,000 soldiers

“four hundred seventy thousand soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [the people](#)
- [David](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the sword](#)
- [the sword](#)
- [and Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and they reported](#)
- [and they reported](#)
- [David](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [who could be in the army](#)
- [who could be in the army](#)
- [and...in Judah](#)

ULT

⁵ And [Joab](#) gave the number of the numbering of [the people](#) to [David](#). And all [Israel](#) was 1,100,000 men who drew [the sword](#), and [Judah](#), 470,000 men who drew [the sword](#).

UST

⁵ [and they reported](#) to [David](#) that there were 1,100,000 men [in Israel who could be in the army](#), and 470,000 men [in Judah who could be in the army](#).

1 Chronicles 21:6

But Levi and Benjamin were not counted among them

The Levites were supposed to lead worship and not to fight. It is unclear why Joab did not count Benjamin. This can be stated in active voice. Alternate translation: "But Joab did not count the men from the tribes of Levi and Benjamin" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the king's command had disgusted Joab

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Joab was offended by what David had commanded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Benjamin](#)
- [he did...number](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Joab](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joab](#)
- [did...count the men](#)
- [and Benjamin](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

⁶ But Levi [and Benjamin he did not number](#) in their midst, for the word of [the king](#) was abhorrent to [Joab](#).

UST

⁶ However, [Joab](#) did not [count the men](#) from the tribes of Levi [and Benjamin](#), because he was disgusted with what [the king](#) had commanded.

1 Chronicles 21:7

by this action

Here “this action” refers to David’s plan to count all the men of Israel who are able to fight.

so he attacked Israel

The nature of this attack is not clear. It was apparently enough to cause David to realize that Yahweh was angry with him for counting the people.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- caused God to become angry
- so he told David that he had decided to punish the people of Israel

ULT

⁷ And it was evil in the eyes of God concerning this word, and he struck Israel.

UST

⁷ David’s command to count the people caused God to become angry, so he told David that he had decided to punish the people of Israel.

1 Chronicles 21:8

take away your servant's guilt

This is an idiom. Forgiveness is here spoken of as having guilt taken away. Alternate translation: "forgive me" (See: [Idiom](#))

your servant's guilt

David refers to himself as God's servant. Alternate translation: "my guilt" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [God](#)
- [I have sinned](#)
- [cause to pass](#)
- [the iniquity of](#)
- [your servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [God](#)
- [I committed a...sin](#)
- [forgive](#)
- [me](#)
- [me](#)

ULT

⁸ And [David](#) said to [God](#), "I have sinned greatly in that I have done this thing. And now please [cause to pass the iniquity of your servant](#), for I have acted very foolishly."

UST

⁸ Then [David](#) prayed to [God](#), "What I did was very foolish. I committed a terrible [sin](#) by what I have done. So now I plead with you, please [forgive me](#)."

1 Chronicles 21:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- David

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh said
- David's

ULT

⁹ And Yahweh spoke to Gad, the seer of David, saying,

UST

⁹ Then Yahweh said to Gad, David's prophet,

1 Chronicles 21:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Go](#)
- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Go](#)
- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹⁰ "Go and speak to [David](#), saying, 'Thus says [Yahweh](#), three I am stretching over you; choose for yourself one from them, and I will act towards you.'"

UST

¹⁰ "Go and tell this to [David](#): '[Yahweh](#) says, "I am allowing you to choose one of three things to punish you. I will do whichever one you choose.'"

1 Chronicles 21:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Yahweh

ULT

¹¹ And Gad came to David, and he said to him, "Thus says Yahweh, 'Take for yourself:

UST

¹¹ So Gad went to David and said to him, "Yahweh says: 'You can choose one of these punishments:

1 Chronicles 21:12

being caught by their swords

Here “their swords” represents death in battle. Alternate translation: “being killed by them in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Yahweh’s sword, that is, a plague in the land

Here the plague is spoken of as Yahweh’s sword because the “sword” is a metonym for death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

destroying throughout all the land

Alternate translation: “killing people who live in every part of the land”

I should take to the one who sent me

The one who sent him was Yahweh. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “I should take to Yahweh who sent me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [famine](#)
- [your foes](#)
- [your enemies](#)
- [the sword of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [shall I bring back to](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of famine in Israel](#)
- [their enemies](#)
- [with swords](#)
- [of direct punishment from me](#)
- [of direct punishment from me](#)
- [I will send my angel](#)
- [many people in the country](#)
- [to answer Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹² either three years [famine](#), or three months being swept away from the faces of [your foes](#) and overtaken by the sword of [your enemies](#), or three days of [the sword of Yahweh](#), even pestilence in the land and the angel of [Yahweh](#) destroying in all the territory of [Israel](#).¹ And now, see; what word [shall I bring back to](#) the one who sent me?”

UST

¹² either three years [of famine in Israel](#), or three months during which your armies will run away from [their enemies](#) who will attack and overrun them [with swords](#), or three days [of direct punishment from me](#) during which [I will send my angel](#) to cause [many people in the country](#) to die because of a plague.¹ So you must decide what I will say [to answer Yahweh](#), the one who sent me.”

1 Chronicles 21:13

Let me fall into the hand of Yahweh rather than into the hand of man

Here “hand” represents power to harm or punish Israel. Alternate translation: “Let me be punished by Yahweh, rather than be punished by people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Let me fall

The people of Israel are the ones who would die from the plague, but David is personalizing this judgment as if he himself was being killed.

hand of man

Here “man” is used in the generic sense of “people.”

his merciful actions are very great

Alternate translation: “Yahweh is very merciful”

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [There is...distress](#)
- [into the hand of](#)
- [but into the hand of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [man](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [distressed](#)
- [Allow...to punish me](#)
- [and do...allow...to punish me](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [humans](#)

ULT

¹³ And [David](#) said to Gad, “[There is](#) great [distress](#) to me! Please let me fall [into the hand of Yahweh](#), for many are his great mercies, [but into the hand of man](#), do not let me fall.”

UST

¹³ [David](#) replied to Gad, “I am very [distressed](#). [Allow Yahweh to punish me](#), because he is very merciful, [and do not allow humans to punish me](#).”

1 Chronicles 21:14

on Israel

Here Israel is a metonym that represents the people of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

seventy thousand people died

“70,000 people died” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [on Israel](#)
- [from Israel](#)
- [and...fell](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [on the people of Israel](#)
- [Israelite](#)
- [and...died because of the plague](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And [Yahweh](#) gave a pestilence [on Israel](#), and [from Israel](#) fell 70,000 men.

UST

¹⁴ So [Yahweh](#) sent a plague [on the people of Israel](#), and 70,000 [Israelite](#) people [died because of the plague](#).

1 Chronicles 21:15

changed his mind about the harm

Here “mind” represents his decision. Alternate translation: “decided not to destroy Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Enough!

This exclamation means “You have killed enough people!” (See: [Exclamations](#))

draw back your hand

This is an idiom that means to stop doing something. Alternate translation: “do not kill attack the people of Jerusalem” (See: [Idiom](#))

Ornan

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [an angel](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [the disaster](#)
- [your hand](#)
- [was standing](#)
- [the threshing floor of](#)
- [the Jebusite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [an angel](#)
- [Stop what you are doing](#)
- [the people in Jerusalem](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [when the angel \(2\)](#)
- [the killing](#)
- [was standing](#)
- [the place where...threshed grain](#)
- [from the Jebus people group](#)

ULT

15 And [God](#) sent [an angel to Jerusalem](#) to destroy her. And when destroying, [Yahweh](#) saw, and he relented concerning [the disaster](#). And he said to the angel who was destroying, “Enough! Now release [your hand](#).” And the angel of [Yahweh was standing at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite](#).

UST

15 And [God](#) sent [an angel](#) to kill [the people in Jerusalem](#) with the plague. While the angel was killing people, [Yahweh](#) saw all the suffering that the people had endured and decided to stop [the killing](#). So he said to the angel [when the angel was standing at the place where Ornan, from the Jebus people group, threshed grain](#), “[Stop what you are doing!](#) That is enough!”

1 Chronicles 21:16

standing between earth and heaven

This is symbolic language to indicate that the angel was sent from Yahweh in heaven to judge the people on the earth. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

having a drawn sword in his hand raised over Jerusalem

The angel holding a sword in his hand is a symbolic action that shows he is ready to attack Jerusalem. This is symbolic, because the judgment was sickness. Alternate translation: "holding a sword in his hand as if ready to attack Jerusalem" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

clothed in sackcloth, lay facedown on the ground

These were symbols of repentance. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [the angel of](#)
- [in sackcloth](#)
- [their faces](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [standing](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [in his hand](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [And...fell](#)
- [and the elders](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [the angel whom Yahweh had sent](#)
- [Then...prostrated](#)
- [themselves on the ground](#)
- [the angel whom Yahweh had sent](#)
- [standing](#)
- [the sky](#)
- [in his hand](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [and the elders of the city](#)
- [clothes made of rough sackcloth](#)

ULT

16 And [David](#) lifted his eyes and saw [the angel of Yahweh standing](#) between the earth and between [the heavens](#) and his sword drawn [in his hand](#) stretched out over [Jerusalem](#). And [David fell](#), and [the elders](#), covered [in sackcloth](#), on [their faces](#).

UST

16 [David](#) looked up and saw [the angel whom Yahweh had sent](#), [standing](#) between [the sky](#) and the ground. The angel had a sword [in his hand](#) that he pointed toward [Jerusalem](#). Then [David and the elders of the city](#), who were wearing [clothes made of rough sackcloth](#), [prostrated themselves on the ground](#).

1 Chronicles 21:17

Is it not I that commanded that the army be numbered?

David uses this question to emphasize that his is the one who sinned by counting the people. Alternate translation: "I am the one who commanded that the army be numbered." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

But these sheep

David speaks of the people of Israel as if they were sheep, who are known for trusting and following their leader. (See: [Metaphor](#))

what have they done?

David uses this question to asks God not to punish the people. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "they certainly have done nothing that deserves punishment." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Let your hand strike me and my family

Here "hand" represents Yahweh's power to punish. Alternate translation: "Punish me and my family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [God](#)
- [my God](#)
- [my father](#)
- [the people](#)
- [sinned](#)
- [I have...done evil](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [your hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [God](#)
- [my God](#)
- [the men who could be in the army](#)
- [has sinned](#)
- [and done what is wrong](#)
- [as innocent as sheep](#)
- [So Yahweh](#)
- [punish me](#)
- [and my family](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And [David](#) said to [God](#), "Was it not I myself who said to count [the people](#)? And it is I who [sinned](#), and I [have](#) surely [done evil](#), but these [sheep](#), what have they done? [Yahweh my God](#), please let [your hand](#) be against me and against the house of [my father](#), but not on your people a plague."

UST

¹⁷ [David](#) prayed to [God](#), "I am the one who ordered the census of [the men who could be in the army](#). I am the one who [has sinned and done what is wrong](#), but these people are [as innocent as sheep](#). They have certainly not done anything that is wrong. [So Yahweh my God](#), [punish me and my family](#), but do not allow this plague to continue to cause your people to become sick and die."

1 Chronicles 21:18

David should go up

This is a reference to elevation. This threshing floor which became the future site of the temple was the highest point in Jerusalem.

Ornan

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 21:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- to Yahweh
- David
- to raise
- an altar
- the Jebusite

Translation Words - UST

- Then the angel whom Yahweh had sent
- to worship Yahweh
- to go up
- Ornan
- and build
- an altar

ULT

18 And the angel of Yahweh said to Gad to say to David that David should go up to raise an altar to Yahweh at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite.

UST

18 Then the angel whom Yahweh had sent told Gad to tell David to go up to the place where Ornan threshed grain and build an altar to worship Yahweh there.

1 Chronicles 21:19

David went up

This is a reference to elevation. This threshing floor which became the future site of the temple was the highest point in Jerusalem.

as Gad instructed him to do in the name of Yahweh

Speaking “in the name of Yahweh” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative. Alternate translation: “as Gad, speaking for Yahweh, instructed David to do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [in the name of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David, he...he](#)
- [Yahweh had given to Gad](#)
- [Yahweh had given to Gad](#)

ULT

¹⁹ So [David](#) went up at the word of Gad who spoke [in the name of Yahweh](#).

UST

¹⁹ So after Gad told [David](#), [he](#) obeyed the message that [Yahweh had given to Gad](#), and [he](#) went up there.

1 Chronicles 21:20

hid themselves

They were afraid of the angel. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "hid themselves because they were afraid of the angel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And...turned
- his sons
- wheat

Translation Words - UST

- some wheat
- turned
- His...sons

ULT

²⁰ And Ornan **turned**, and he saw the angel. And four of **his sons** with him were hiding themselves. And Ornan was threshing **wheat**.

UST

²⁰ While Ornan was threshing **some wheat**, he **turned** and saw the angel. **His** four **sons** who were with him also saw the angel, and they hid themselves.

1 Chronicles 21:21

with his face to the ground

This phrase describes that Ornan bowed far forward. To bow before someone is a way to show humility and respect. A deeper bow shows greater humility and respect. Alternate translation: "bowed very low to the ground" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- And he went out
- the threshing floor
- and he bowed down
- to the ground

Translation Words - UST

- David
- him
- Ornan left
- the place where he was threshing grain
- and prostrated himself
- touching the ground

ULT

²¹ And David came to Ornan. And Ornan looked, and he saw David. And he went out from the threshing floor, and he bowed down to David, face to the ground.

UST

²¹ Then David approached the place where Ornan was. When Ornan saw him, Ornan left the place where he was threshing grain and prostrated himself in front of David, with his face touching the ground.

1 Chronicles 21:22

full price

Alternate translation: "I will pay the full price for what this threshing floor is worth"

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- the threshing floor
- an altar
- to Yahweh
- At the...price
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- David
- this threshing place
- an altar
- to worship Yahweh
- this plague
- the...price

ULT

²² And David said to Ornan, "Give to me the place of the threshing floor, and I will build on it an altar to Yahweh. At the full price give it to me, so the plague may be restrained from against the people."

UST

²² David said to Ornan, "Sell me this threshing place so I can build an altar here to worship Yahweh, in order that he will stop this plague. I will pay the full price."

1 Chronicles 21:23

Take it as your own

This implies that David should take the land without paying for it. Alternate translation: "Take it as a gift" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

what is good in your sight

David's understanding is described as his sight. Alternate translation: "whatever you decide to do with it" (See: [Metonymy](#))

threshing sledges

These are wooden sleds with rocks or metal fitted underneath, dragged by oxen over the grain on the threshing floor to separate the grain from its stalks. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [my lord](#)
- [the king](#)
- [good](#)
- [for the offering](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [Your Majesty](#)
- [Your Majesty](#)
- [whatever you want to](#)
- [for a flour offering](#)

ULT

²³ And Ornan said to [David](#), "Take for yourself that [my lord the king](#) may do [good](#) in his eyes. See, I give the cattle for the burnt offerings and the threshing sledges for wood, and the wheat [for the offering](#); all I give."

UST

²³ Ornan answered [David](#), "Take it! [Your Majesty](#), do [whatever you want to](#). I will even give you the oxen that thresh the grain for a fully burnt offering on the altar, the threshing boards to use as wood on the altar, and the flour [for a flour offering](#). I will provide everything."

1 Chronicles 21:24

full price

See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 21:22](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- David
- surely
- I will...buy
- at the...price
- to Yahweh
- a burnt offering

Translation Words - UST

- King David
- King David
- I must pay you
- I must pay you
- the...price
- them...as a fully burnt offering
- to Yahweh

ULT

²⁴ And King David said to Ornan, “No, for I will surely buy at the full price, for I will not lift up what is yours to Yahweh and offer a burnt offering without paying compensation.”

UST

²⁴ But King David said to Ornan, “No, I must pay you the full price, because I will not take things that belong to you and offer them to Yahweh as a fully burnt offering when they cost me nothing.”

1 Chronicles 21:25

six hundred shekels of gold

“600 shekels of gold” (See: [Numbers](#))

shekels

a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams (See: [Biblical Money](#))

for the place

Alternate translation: “to buy the threshing floor”

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [of gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [six and one-half kilograms of gold](#)

ULT

²⁵ And [David](#) gave to Ornan for the place 600 shekels [of gold](#) by weight.

UST

²⁵ So [David](#) paid Ornan [six and one-half kilograms of gold](#) for the whole area.

1 Chronicles 21:26

He called on Yahweh

Alternate translation: "He prayed for help to Yahweh"

who answered him with fire from heaven on the altar for burnt offerings

Alternate translation: "who answered him by sending fire from heaven to the alter where David would offer the burnt offerings"

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- an altar
- the altar of
- to Yahweh
- Yahweh
- burnt offerings
- And he called
- with fire
- the heavens

Translation Words - UST

- David
- an altar
- on the altar
- to worship Yahweh
- Yahweh
- fully burnt sacrifices
- David prayed
- by sending a fire
- heaven

ULT

²⁶ And David built there an altar to Yahweh and he offered burnt offerings and peace offerings. And he called to Yahweh, and he answered him with fire from the heavens on the altar of the burnt offering.

UST

²⁶ David built an altar to worship Yahweh there, and he offered on the altar fully burnt sacrifices and sacrifices to restore fellowship with Yahweh. David prayed to Yahweh, and Yahweh answered by sending a fire from heaven to burn up the offerings on the altar.

1 Chronicles 21:27

the angel put his sword back into its sheath

The angel putting his sword back in the sheath is a symbolic action to show that he would not continue to kill the people. Alternate translation: the angel put his sword in its sheath to show that he would stop killing the people" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

sheath

cover for a sword or knife

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- and he returned
- his sword

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- to put...So...did
- his sword back into its sheath...that

ULT

²⁷ And Yahweh spoke to the angel, and he returned his sword to its sheath.

UST

²⁷ Then Yahweh told the angel to put his sword back into its sheath. So the angel did that.

1 Chronicles 21:28

Ornan

Translate his name as in 1 Chronicles 21:15.

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Yahweh
- had answered him
- the Jebusite

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Yahweh
- had answered him...and had ended the plague
- Ornan

ULT

²⁸ At that time, when David saw that Yahweh had answered him at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite, then he sacrificed there.

UST

²⁸ And when David saw that Yahweh had answered him there at the place where Ornan threshed grain and had ended the plague, he offered sacrifices there.

1 Chronicles 21:29

Now at that time

Verses 29-30 are background information to explain why David offered this sacrifice at the threshing floor instead of on the altar at the tabernacle. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the tabernacle of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [and the altar of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh's](#)
- [sacred tent](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [and the altar](#)

ULT

²⁹ [And the tabernacle of Yahweh](#) which [Moses](#) made in the wilderness [and the altar of](#) the burnt offering at that time were at the high place at Gibeon.

UST

²⁹ At that time, [Yahweh's sacred tent](#), which [Moses](#) had commanded others to build in the wilderness, [and the altar](#) for burning sacrifices completely, were on a hill used for worship near the city of Gibeon.

1 Chronicles 21:30

Verses 29-30 are background information to explain why David offered this sacrifice at the threshing floor instead of on the altar at the tabernacle. (See: [Background Information](#))

to ask for God's direction

Alternate translation: "to ask God to tell him what he should do"

afraid of the sword of the angel of Yahweh

Here "sword" represents being killed by the angel of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "afraid he would be killed by the angel of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- to seek
- God
- sword of
- the angel of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- David
- to request...to tell him what...wanted David to do
- God...he
- the angel sent from Yahweh
- the angel sent from Yahweh
- might strike him with his sword

ULT

³⁰ And David was not able to go to its face to seek God, for he was terrified from the faces of the sword of the angel of Yahweh.

UST

³⁰ But David did not want to go there to request God to tell him what he wanted David to do, because he was afraid that the angel sent from Yahweh might strike him with his sword.

1 Chronicles 22

1 Chronicles 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a new section lasting for the remainder of the book. David begins preparing the things needed for building the temple. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Solomon

In addition to preparing for the construction of the temple by gathering supplies, David also prepares his son, Solomon, to build the temple. David instructs Solomon to obey God. This is what is most necessary.

1 Chronicles 22:1

This is where

Alternate translation: "This threshing floor is where"

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- the house of
- Yahweh
- God
- the altar
- of Israel

Translation Words - UST

- David
- the temple for
- our God
- Yahweh
- the altar
- that the Israelite people will bring

ULT

¹ And David said, "This is the house of Yahweh God, and this is the altar for the burnt offering of Israel."

UST

¹ David realized that this was the place that Yahweh now wanted sacrifices to be made and announced, "Here, at the edge of Jerusalem, is where we will build the temple for our God Yahweh, and where we will make the altar for fully burning the offerings that the Israelite people will bring."

1 Chronicles 22:2

stonecutters

persons who gathered large stones and cut them to the correct size so builders could use the rocks in walls and buildings

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Israel
- the house of
- God

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Israel
- the temple of
- God

ULT

² And David said to gather the foreigners who were in the land of Israel. And he assigned stonemasons to hew out cut stones to build the house of God.

UST

² So David commanded that the foreigners who lived in Israel must assemble together. When they did that, he appointed some of those men to cut huge stones from the quarries and to smooth their surfaces for use in building the temple of God.

1 Chronicles 22:3

braces

items that connect two things together. “clamps” or “hinges”

more bronze than could be weighed

This is an exaggeration to show that there was a very large quantity of bronze. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “so much bronze that no one could weigh it” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the gates](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [in the gates of the temple](#)

ULT

³ And a large amount of iron for the nails for the doors of [the gates](#) and for braces, [David](#) prepared; and a large amount of bronze, there is no weighing.

UST

³ [David](#) provided a lot of iron for making nails and hinges for the doors [in the gates of the temple](#). He also provided a huge amount of bronze for making various things. There was so much bronze, no one could weigh it all.

1 Chronicles 22:4

more cedar trees than could be counted

This is an exaggeration to show that there was a very large number of cedar trees. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so many cedar trees that no one could count them" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

The Sidonians and the Tyrians brought too many cedar logs to David to count

This is background information to explain who provided so many logs. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- cedar
- cedar

Translation Words - UST

- they brought so many logs
- cedar

ULT

⁴ And trees of cedar without number, for the Sidonians and the Tyrians brought a large amount of cedar trees to David.

UST

⁴ David also provided money for buying a lot of cedar logs for use in building the temple. Men from the cities of Tyre and Sidon brought the logs to David that he purchased. Because they brought so many logs, no one could count them.

1 Chronicles 22:5

the house that is to be built for Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the house that he will build for Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

so that it will be famous and glorious in all other lands

Here the word “lands” refers to the people who lived there. Alternate translation: “so that people in every other land will know about it and think that it is glorious” (See: [Metonymy](#))

prepare for its building

Alternate translation: “prepare to build it”

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [my son](#)
- [is young](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [My son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [is still young](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁵ And [David](#) said, “[Solomon my son is young](#) and tender, and the house to be built [for Yahweh](#) must be great for the sake of a name and for beauty in all the lands. I will now prepare for it.” And [David](#) prepared a large amount before the face of his death.

UST

⁵ [David](#) provided all those things because he thought, “[My son Solomon is still young](#) and he does not yet know what he needs to know about building buildings, and the temple constructed [for Yahweh](#) must be magnificent. It must be a glorious building that will become famous, and people throughout the world must consider it beautiful. So now I will begin to prepare for its construction.” So [David](#) collected a great amount of building materials before he died.

1 Chronicles 22:6

he called

Alternate translation: "David called"

commanded him to build

The readers should understand that David intended for laborers to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "commanded him to oversee the building of" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And he called
- for Solomon
- his son
- and he commanded him
- a house
- for Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Then David summoned
- his son
- Solomon
- and told him
- a temple
- for Yahweh
- the God
- whom the Israelites worshipped

ULT

6 And he called for Solomon his son, and he commanded him to build a house for Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

6 Then David summoned his son Solomon and told him to arrange for the construction of a temple for Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites worshipped.

1 Chronicles 22:7

it was my intention to build a house myself

The readers should understand that David intended for laborers to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "it was my intention to oversee the building of the house myself" (See: [Metonymy](#))

it was my intention

Alternate translation: "I intended"

to build a house myself

The reflexive "myself" means that David originally planned to build the temple. Alternate translation: "that I would be the one to build the temple" (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

for the name of Yahweh my God

Here "name" represents God's honor. Alternate translation: "in order to honor Yahweh my God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [to Solomon](#)
- [My son](#)
- [my heart](#)
- [a house](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [My son](#)
- [wanted](#)
- [a temple](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my God](#)

ULT

⁷ And [David](#) said [to Solomon](#), "[My son](#), it was with [my heart](#) to build [a house](#) myself for the name of [Yahweh my God](#)."

UST

⁷ [David](#) told [Solomon](#), "[My son](#), I wanted to build [a temple](#) to honor [Yahweh](#), [my God](#)."

1 Chronicles 22:8

shed much blood

Here the killing of people is spoken of as shedding their blood, where “blood” represents their lives. Alternate translation: “killed many people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

for my name

Here “name” represents God’s honor. Alternate translation: “to honor me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

you have shed ... in my sight

Here “sight” refers to what God has seen. Alternate translation: “I have seen that you have shed much blood on the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- blood
- blood
- a house
- on the ground

Translation Words - UST

- But Yahweh told a prophet to tell me
- You have killed many men
- all the people you have killed
- all the people you have killed
- a temple

ULT

⁸ But the word of Yahweh was to me, saying, ‘A large amount of blood you have shed and great wars you have made; you shall not build a house for my name because a large amount of blood you have shed on the ground before my face.

UST

⁸ But Yahweh told a prophet to tell me, ‘You have killed many men in the big battles that you have fought. I have seen all the people you have killed, so you will not be the one who will arrange for the construction of a temple to honor me.

1 Chronicles 22:9

Connecting Statement:

David continues telling Solomon what Yahweh said to him.

be a peaceful man

Alternate translation: "live at peace with everyone"

give him rest from all his enemies

Alternate translation: "cause there to be peace between him and all his enemies"

on every side

This means in every place surrounding Israel.

For his name will be Solomon

The name "Solomon" sounds like the Hebrew word for "peace." This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "His name will be Solomon, which sounds like the word for peace" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in his days

Alternate translation: "while he rules"

Translation Words - ULT

- a son
- rest
- And I will give rest
- his enemies
- Solomon
- his name
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- you will have a son who will be king of Israel after you
- without war during his reign
- I will cause peace
- his enemies
- his name
- Solomon (which sounds like the word for peace)
- the people in Israel

ULT

⁹ Behold, a son is being born to you; he himself will be a man of rest. And I will give rest to him from all his enemies from all around. For Solomon will be his name, and peace and quietness I will give to Israel in his days.

UST

⁹ But you will have a son who will be king of Israel after you. He will be a man without war during his reign. I will cause peace between him and his enemies who are in all the nearby lands. That is why his name will be Solomon (which sounds like the word for peace). During the time that he is king, I will provide peace and safety for the people in Israel.

1 Chronicles 22:10

Connecting Statement:

David finishes telling Solomon what Yahweh said to him.

a house for my name

Here “name” refers to honor. Alternate translation: “a temple to honor me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

He will be my son, and I will be his father

God will treat Solomon as if he were God’s own son. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel forever

Here “throne” refers to the authority to rule as king. Alternate translation: “I will make his descendants rule over Israel forever” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a house
- a son
- a father
- the throne of
- his kingdom
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- a temple
- like a son
- will be like...father
- his dynasty
- his dynasty
- Israel

ULT

¹⁰ He himself will build a house for my name. And he himself will be to me a son, and I to him a father. And I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel as far as forever.’

UST

¹⁰ He is the one who will arrange for the construction of a temple to honor me. He will be like a son to me, and I will be like his father. I will cause his dynasty to rule over Israel forever.’

1 Chronicles 22:11

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

Now

David uses this word to introduce something important he is about to say.

May you build

Solomon would not personally do the building, but he would direct others to do it. Alternate translation: "May you direct people to build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- my son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- and may you be successful
- a house of
- your God

Translation Words - UST

- my son
- I hope that Yahweh will help you
- for Yahweh
- and enable you to succeed in
- a temple
- your God

ULT

¹¹ Now, my son, may Yahweh be with you, and may you be successful and build a house of Yahweh your God, just as he spoke concerning you.

UST

¹¹ So now, my son, I hope that Yahweh will help you and enable you to succeed in arranging for the construction of a temple for Yahweh, your God, which is what he said that you would do.

1 Chronicles 22:12

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

when he places you in charge over Israel

Alternate translation: "when he makes you king of Israel"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- insight
- and give you charge
- Israel
- the law of
- your God

Translation Words - UST

- I...hope that he will enable you
- his
- to be wise
- and enable you...while you rule
- his
- laws
- Israel

ULT

¹² Only may Yahweh give to you insight and understanding, and give you charge over Israel so that you may keep the law of Yahweh your God.

UST

¹² I also hope that he will enable you to be wise and to understand what you need to know, and enable you to obey his laws while you rule over Israel.

1 Chronicles 22:13

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

Be strong and courageous ... Do not fear or be discouraged

These two sentences mean the same thing, stated in different ways in order to emphasize that Solomon should not be afraid. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- you will succeed
- you are careful
- the statutes
- the judgments
- Yahweh
- commanded
- Moses
- Israel
- Be strong
- Do...fear

Translation Words - UST

- you carefully obey
- all the laws
- decrees
- Yahweh
- told
- Moses
- Israel
- you will do well in constructing a temple and ruling Israel
- Now, demonstrate strength
- Do...be afraid of anything

ULT

¹³ Then you will succeed, if you are careful to do the statutes and the judgments which Yahweh commanded Moses concerning Israel. Be strong and courageous. Do not fear and do not be dismayed.

UST

¹³ If you carefully obey all the laws and decrees which Yahweh told Moses to tell Israel to do, then you will do well in constructing a temple and ruling Israel. Now, demonstrate strength and courage. Do not be afraid of anything, and do not become discouraged!

1 Chronicles 22:14

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

Now, see, at great

The words "Now, see" introduce something important David is about to say. Alternate translation: "Listen! At great"

at great effort I have prepared

Alternate translation: "I have worked hard to prepare"

100,000 talents

"one hundred thousand talents" (See: [Numbers](#))

talents

about 33 kilograms (See: [Biblical Money](#))

one million

"1,000,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

You must add more to all this

Alternate translation: "You will need to increase that amount"

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [gold](#)
- [and silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the temple of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

14 Now, see, in my affliction, I have prepared [for the house of Yahweh gold](#) talents, 100,000, [and silver](#), 1,000,000 talents, and for bronze and for iron, there is no weighing, for there is a large amount. And trees and stones I have prepared. And to them you will add.

UST

14 I have tried hard to provide materials for building [the temple of Yahweh](#), including 3,300 metric tons of [gold](#), 33,000 metric tons of [silver](#), and a very large amount of iron and bronze (so much that no one can weigh it all). I have also gathered lumber and stone, but you will need to acquire more of those things.

1 Chronicles 22:15

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

stonecutters, masons

These are both workers who cut stone and prepare it for builders to use in walls and buildings.

carpenters

persons who work with wood

skillful craftsmen without number of every kind

Here “without number” is an exaggeration to emphasize that there were a large number of them. Alternate translation: “a very large number of every kind of skillful craftsmen” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wise](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men who are very skilled](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And with you is a large amount of doers of work: stonemasons, and craftsmen of stone and wood, and all [wise](#) in all work,

UST

¹⁵ There are many men in Israel who have good ability to cut big stones and work with different types of stone, carpenters, and [men who are very skilled](#) at making various kinds of things.

1 Chronicles 22:16

Connecting Statement:

David finishes speaking to Solomon.

may Yahweh be with you

This is an idiom that implies that Yahweh will help Solomon be successful in the project. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for gold](#)
- [Arise](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#)
- [So now I say to you, begin](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

16 [for gold](#), for silver, and for bronze, and for iron; there is no numbering. [Arise](#) and work. And may [Yahweh](#) be with you.”

UST

16 There are many men who know how to make things from [gold](#), silver, bronze, and iron. [So now I say to you, begin](#) the work of building the temple, and I hope that [Yahweh](#) will be with you.”

1 Chronicles 22:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- And...commanded
- the chiefs of
- Israel
- Solomon
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Then...commanded
- Israelite
- the...leaders
- his son
- Solomon

ULT

¹⁷ And David commanded all the chiefs of Israel to help Solomon his son,

UST

¹⁷ Then David commanded that all the Israelite leaders must assist his son Solomon:

1 Chronicles 22:18

Yahweh your God is with you

This is an idiom that implies that Yahweh will help Israel to prosper. (See: [Idiom](#))

your ... you

Here these pronouns are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

has given you peace on every side

Alternate translation: "has caused all the nations who live around Israel to live peacefully with you"

He has given the region's inhabitants into my hand

Here "hand" refers to power to defeat his enemies. Alternate translation: "He has given me power over everyone who lives around us" (See: [Metonymy](#))

The region is subdued before Yahweh and his people

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. "The other nations no longer attack Yahweh and his people" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- your God
- and given rest
- into my hand
- his people

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- our God
- He has allowed...to have peace
- my army to conquer
- my people

ULT

18 "Is not Yahweh your God with you all and given rest to you all from all around? For he has given into my hand the inhabitants of the land, and the land is subdued before the face of Yahweh and before the faces of his people.

UST

18 "Yahweh our God is certainly with you. He has allowed you to have peace with all the nearby nations because he has enabled my army to conquer them. Yahweh and my people control them.

1 Chronicles 22:19

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to all the leaders of Israel.

Now

This word introduces something important that David is about to say.

seek Yahweh your God

Seeking **Yahweh** could mean: (1) asking God for help or (2) thinking about God and obeying him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

your ... you

Here these pronouns are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

with all your heart and your soul

Here “heart” and “soul” refer to the whole person. Alternate translation: “with your whole being” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Get up and build the holy place

It is understood that Solomon will not do the work personally, but he will direct others to do it. Alternate translation: “Get up and direct the workers as they build the holy place” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the house built for Yahweh’s name

Here “name” refers to honor. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the temple you will build to honor Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your heart](#)
- [to seek](#)
- [sacred](#)
- [to the house](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [your God](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [the sanctuary of](#)
- [the Box of](#)
- [the covenant of](#)

ULT

19 Now, give [your heart](#) and your life to [seek Yahweh your God](#), and arise and build [the sanctuary of Yahweh God](#) to bring [the Box of the covenant of Yahweh](#) and the [sacred](#) items of [God](#) to [the house](#) to be built for the name of [Yahweh](#).”

UST

19 Now [you must obey your God, Yahweh, with your entire lives](#). Help Solomon to arrange for the construction of [the temple for Yahweh God](#), in order that you can bring [the sacred chest symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#) and the other [sacred items that belong to God](#) into the [temple](#) that you will build to honor him.”

Translation Words - UST

- you must obey
- your God
- God
- that belong to God
- sacred
- into the temple
- Yahweh
- for Yahweh
- symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel
- him
- with your entire lives
- the temple
- the sacred chest
- symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel

1 Chronicles 23

1 Chronicles 23 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the construction of the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Organizing the Levites

As priests, the Levites had a significant role in the construction of the temple. David organized the Levites according to their families and explained what each group was to do. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

1 Chronicles 23:1

General Information:

David appoints Solomon as his successor and organizes Levitical priests and staff for temple service.

Translation Words - ULT

- and he made...king
- Solomon
- his son
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- when he appointed...to be the next king
- his son
- Solomon
- Israel

ULT

¹ And David was old and was full of days, and he made Solomon his son king over Israel.

UST

¹ David was a very old man when he appointed his son Solomon to be the next king over Israel.

1 Chronicles 23:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the chiefs of
- Israel
- and the priests
- and the Levites

Translation Words - UST

- the leaders of
- Israel
- and the priests
- and other descendants of Levi

ULT

² And he gathered all the chiefs of Israel and the priests and the Levites.

UST

² David gathered the leaders of Israel and the priests and other descendants of Levi.

1 Chronicles 23:3

The Levites who were thirty years old and older were counted

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Some of David's men counted the Levites who were 30 years old and older" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

They numbered thirty-eight thousand

"There were 38,000 of them" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [from sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the descendants of Levi](#)
- [who were...30 years old](#)

ULT

³ And [the Levites](#) were counted [from sons of](#) 30 years and upward and the numbering was by their heads, by males, 38,000.

UST

³ He commanded some of his officials to count [the descendants of Levi who were](#) at least [30 years old](#), and they found out that there were 38,000 men.

1 Chronicles 23:4

Of these, twenty-four thousand

“Of these Levities, 24,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

six thousand

“6,000 Levites” (See: [Numbers](#))

officers and judges

These Levites listened to legal arguments and administered justice according to the law of Moses.

four thousand

“4,000 Levites” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to lead
- the house of
- Yahweh
- and judges

Translation Words - UST

- I want...to supervise
- at the temple of
- Yahweh
- and judges

ULT

⁴ “From these, to lead the work of the house of Yahweh, 24,000, and officers and judges, 6,000,

UST

⁴ Then David said, “From those descendants of Levi, I want 24,000 of them to supervise the work at the temple of Yahweh, 6,000 to be officials and judges,

1 Chronicles 23:5

gatekeepers

These Levites guarded the temple entrance so no person who was ceremonially unclean entered.

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh
- to praise

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- I have provided for them

ULT

⁵ and 4,000 gatekeepers and 4,000 praisers to Yahweh with the instruments which I made to praise.”

UST

⁵ 4,000 to be guards at the gates, and 4,000 to praise Yahweh, using the musical instruments that I have provided for them.”

1 Chronicles 23:6

that corresponded to

Alternate translation: “based on” or “according to the descendants of”

Gershon, Kohath, and Merari

These are names of Levi’s sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [according to the sons of](#)
- [Levi](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [the descendants of...descendants of one of the three sons of](#)
- [Levi...Levi](#)

ULT

⁶ And [David](#) divided them into divisions [according to the sons of Levi](#): of Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

UST

⁶ [David](#) divided [the descendants of Levi](#) into three groups; each group consisted of men who were [descendants of one of the three sons of Levi](#)—Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

1 Chronicles 23:7

General Information:

This is the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷ Of the Gershonites: Ladan and Shimei.

UST

⁷ The descendants of Gershon were Ladan and Shimei.

1 Chronicles 23:8

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- the head
- and Joel

Translation Words - UST

- had...sons
- the oldest
- and Joel

ULT

⁸ The sons of Ladan: the head Jehiel, and Zetham, and Joel, three.

UST

⁸ Ladan had three sons: the oldest Jehiel, then Zetham and Joel.

1 Chronicles 23:9

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- and Haran
- the heads of
- the fathers of

Translation Words - UST

- had...sons
- and Haran
- leaders of
- the clans

ULT

⁹ The sons of Shimei: Shelomoth, and Haziel, and Haran, three. These, the heads of the fathers of Ladan.

UST

⁹ Shimei had three sons: Shelomoth, Haziel, and Haran. They were leaders of the clans of Ladan.

1 Chronicles 23:10

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [in total](#)

ULT

¹⁰ [And the sons of](#) Shimei: Jahath, and Zina, and Jeush, and Beriah. These, [the sons of](#) Shimei, four.

UST

¹⁰ Shimei's [sons were](#) Jahath, Zina, Jeush, and Beriah; four [in total](#).

1 Chronicles 23:11

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the oldest ... the second

The word "son" is understood. Also, "second" is in ordinal form. Alternate translation: "the oldest son ... the second son" (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

so they were considered as one clan

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so David considered them to be one clan" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the head
- sons
- to a house of
- a father

Translation Words - UST

- the oldest son
- sons
- so the officials counting the descendants of Levi counted the families of Jeush and Beriah as though they were...family
- so the officials counting the descendants of Levi counted the families of Jeush and Beriah as though they were...family

ULT

¹¹ And Jahath was the head, and Zizah the second, but Jeush and Beriah did not have many sons, and they were to a house of a father for one group.

UST

¹¹ Jahath was the oldest son. Ziza was the second. Jeush and Beriah did not have many sons, so the officials counting the descendants of Levi counted the families of Jeush and Beriah as though they were one family.

1 Chronicles 23:12

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

There were four of Kohath's sons

Alternate translation: "Kohath had 4 sons"

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had...sons](#)

ULT

¹² [The sons of](#) Kohath: Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel, four.

UST

¹² Kohath had four [sons](#): Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

1 Chronicles 23:13

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Aaron was chosen to set apart the most holy things

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh chose Aaron to dedicate the most holy things" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to give blessings in his name forever

Here "in his name" refers to the authority to speak as his representative. Alternate translation: "to bless the people as representatives of God forever" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [and his sons](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [in his name](#)
- [and Moses](#)
- [And...was set apart](#)
- [for him to consecrate](#)
- [the most](#)
- [holy things](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons were](#)
- [and his descendants](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [and to declare to the people what Yahweh would do to bless them](#)
- [and Moses](#)
- [Yahweh chose](#)
- [to dedicate to Yahweh](#)
- [the very holy things](#)
- [the very holy things](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹³ [The sons of Amram: Aaron and Moses.](#) And [Aaron was set apart for him to consecrate the most holy things,](#) he and [his sons](#) until forever, to make sacrifices before the face of [Yahweh](#) to minister for him and to bless [in his name](#) until forever.

UST

¹³ Amram's [sons were Aaron and Moses.](#) [Yahweh chose Aaron,](#) that is, [Aaron and his descendants](#) perpetually, [to dedicate to Yahweh the very holy things,](#) to offer sacrifices [to Yahweh,](#) to serve in his presence, [and to declare to the people what Yahweh would do to bless them.](#) They were to do those things forever.

1 Chronicles 23:14

his sons were considered to be Levites

The sons of Aaron were the most important Levite clan, but the sons of Moses were also considered to be Levites. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the people considered Moses' sons to be part of the Levite clan" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Moses](#)
- [God](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [were called](#)
- [Levi](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The officials counting the descendants of Levi counted](#)
- [the descendants of](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [the man who served God well](#)
- [Levi](#)

ULT

14 [And Moses](#), the man of [God](#), [his sons were called](#) according to the tribe of [Levi](#).

UST

14 [The officials counting the descendants of Levi counted the descendants of Moses, the man who served God well](#), as part of the tribe of [Levi](#).

1 Chronicles 23:15

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Moses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [sons were](#)

ULT

¹⁵ [The sons of Moses](#): Gershom and Eliezer.

UST

¹⁵ [Moses' sons were](#) Gershom and Eliezer.

1 Chronicles 23:16

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [the head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The oldest](#)
- [son of...was](#)

ULT

¹⁶ [The sons of](#) Gershom: Shebuel [the head](#).

UST

¹⁶ [The oldest son of](#) Gershom [was](#) Shubael.

1 Chronicles 23:17

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- sons
- but the sons of
- the head

Translation Words - UST

- oldest
- child
- sons
- but...sons

ULT

¹⁷ And [the sons of](#) Eliezer were Rehabiah [the head](#), and there were not to Eliezer other [sons](#), [but the sons of](#) Rehabiah were many above that.

UST

¹⁷ Eliezer's [oldest child](#) was Rehabiah. Eliezer had no other [sons](#), [but](#) Rehabiah had many [sons](#).

1 Chronicles 23:18

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [the head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [oldest](#)
- [son was](#)

ULT

¹⁸ [The sons of](#) Izhar: Shelomith [the head](#).

UST

¹⁸ Izhar's [oldest son was](#) Shelomith.

1 Chronicles 23:19

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the oldest ... the second ... the third ... the fourth

The word “son” is understood. Also, these numbers are in ordinal form. Alternate translation: “the oldest son ... the second son ... the third son ... the fourth son” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [the head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had four sons](#)
- [was his oldest son](#)

ULT

¹⁹ [The sons of](#) Hebron: Jeriah [the head](#), Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, and Jekameam the fourth.

UST

¹⁹ Hebron [had four sons](#). Jeriah [was his oldest son](#); Amariah was the second; Jahaziel was the third; and Jekameam was the fourth.

1 Chronicles 23:20

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the oldest ... the second

The word "son" is understood. Also, "second" is in ordinal form. Alternate translation: "the oldest son ... the second son" (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Micah](#)
- [the head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had two sons](#)
- [Micah](#)
- [was the older son](#)

ULT

²⁰ [The sons of](#) Uzziel: [Micah the head](#), and Isshiah the second.

UST

²⁰ Uzziel [had two sons](#). [Micah was the older son](#), and Isshiah was the younger.

1 Chronicles 23:21

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [The sons of](#)
- [Eleazar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had two sons](#)
- [sons were](#)
- [Eleazar](#)

ULT

²¹ [The sons of](#) Merari: Mahli and Mushi.
[The sons of](#) Mahli: [Eleazar](#) and Kish.

UST

²¹ Merari [had two sons](#): Mahli and Mushi. Mahli's [sons were](#) [Eleazar](#) and Kish.

1 Chronicles 23:22

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Eleazar
- And...died
- sons
- the sons of
- their brothers

Translation Words - UST

- Eleazar
- died
- without having sons
- sons
- Their cousins

ULT

²² And **Eleazar died** and there were not to him **sons**, but only daughters. And **the sons of Kish, their brothers**, lifted them.

UST

²² **Eleazar died without having sons**; he only had daughters. **Their cousins**, Kish's **sons**, married them.

1 Chronicles 23:23

This ends the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had...sons](#)

ULT

²³ [The sons of](#) Mushi: Mahli, and Eder, and Jerimoth, three.

UST

²³ Mushi had three [sons](#): Mahli, Eder, and Jerimoth.

1 Chronicles 23:24

These were Levi's descendants corresponding to their clans. They were the leaders, counted and listed by name, of the clans

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "These were the names of Levi's descendants and their families, whom David's men counted and listed. They were the leaders of the clans" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from twenty years old and upward

"from 20 years old and older" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- from the sons of
- Levi
- according to the house of
- the house of
- their fathers
- the fathers
- heads of
- names
- of the service of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- the descendants of
- The officials counted each person who was
- Levi
- that the officials counted according to the descendants' families
- those families
- that the officials counted according to the descendants' families
- in the temple of
- and the leaders of
- and the leaders of those jobs
- They all worked
- Yahweh

ULT

²⁴ These were the sons of Levi according to the house of their fathers, heads of the fathers, by their appointments, in the numbering of names by their heads, the doer of the work of the service of the house of Yahweh; from the sons of 20 years and upward.

UST

²⁴ Those were the descendants of Levi that the officials counted according to the descendants' families and the leaders of those families, as well as according to the descendants' special jobs and the leaders of those jobs. They all worked in the temple of Yahweh. The officials counted each person who was at least 20 years old.

1 Chronicles 23:25

has given rest

Here “rest” refers to peace with surrounding nations. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Chronicles 22:9](#).

He makes his home in Jerusalem forever

This could mean: (1) Yahweh will be present in Jerusalem forever or (2) Yahweh’s temple will be present in Jerusalem forever.

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [has given rest](#)
- [to his people](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God](#)
- [to whom we...people belong](#)
- [Israelite](#)
- [has enabled us to have peace](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

ULT

²⁵ For [David](#) said, “[Yahweh, the God of Israel, has given rest to his people](#). And he dwells [in Jerusalem](#) until forever.

UST

²⁵ [David](#) had said previously, “[Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelite people belong, has enabled us to have peace](#), and he has come to live [in Jerusalem](#) forever.

1 Chronicles 23:26

all the equipment used in its service

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "all the equipment they used in its service"

Translation Words - ULT

- for the Levites
- the tabernacle
- for its service

Translation Words - UST

- the descendants of Levi
- the sacred tent
- used in the work there

ULT

²⁶ And also, for the Levites, no longer to carry the tabernacle and all its items for its service."

UST

²⁶ Therefore, the descendants of Levi no longer need to carry the sacred tent and all the items used in the work there."

1 Chronicles 23:27

For by David's last words the Levites were counted

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "For David's last command was for his men to count the Levites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from twenty years old and upward

"who were 20 years old and older." See how you translated this phrase in [1 Chronicles 23:24](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [from the sons of](#)
- [Levi](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David's...before he died](#)
- [the descendants of](#)
- [who were](#)
- [Levi](#)

ULT

²⁷ For by the last words of [David](#), they were numbering [the sons of Levi, from the sons of 20 years and upward](#).

UST

²⁷ Obeying [David's](#) final instructions [before he died](#), instructions for doing the work at the temple, the officials counted [the descendants of Levi who were](#) at least twenty years old.

1 Chronicles 23:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Aaron
- for the service of
- the house of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- the courts
- the sacred things
- God

Translation Words - UST

- the descendants of
- Aaron
- in their work
- Yahweh's
- in...temple
- at the temple
- the temple courtyards
- the sacred things
- at the temple

ULT

²⁸ For their office was by the hand of the sons of Aaron for the service of the house of Yahweh over the courts, and over the chambers, and over the cleansing of all the sacred things, and the work of the service of the house of God.

UST

²⁸ The work of those descendants of Levi was to assist the descendants of Aaron in their work in Yahweh's temple. They were in charge of the temple courtyards and the side rooms, the ceremonies for purifying all the sacred things, and to do other work at the temple.

1 Chronicles 23:29

bread of the presence

See the Translation Word page about “bread” for the specific definition of “bread of the presence.” See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 9:32](#).

flour

grain that is ground into a powder

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the offering](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [for the flour offerings](#)

ULT

²⁹ And concerning the bread of the arrangement, and concerning the fine flour [for the offering](#), and concerning the wafers of the unleavened bread, and concerning the pan, and concerning that which is mixed, and concerning all measure and size.

UST

²⁹ They were also in charge of the loaves of bread the priests placed each week on the table in the temple, the flour [for the flour offerings](#), the wafers that were made without yeast, and the baking pans. The descendants of Levi also had to measure the ingredients, mix them, and bake the bread and wafers.

1 Chronicles 23:30

They also stood

Alternate translation: "The Levites also stood at the temple"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh...him](#)

ULT

³⁰ And to stand morning by morning to thank and to praise [Yahweh](#), and thus in the evening.

UST

³⁰ Another responsibility for the Levites was to stand every morning at the temple and thank [Yahweh](#) and praise [him](#). They needed to do the same thing every evening as well.

1 Chronicles 23:31

whenever burnt offerings were offered to Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “whenever the priests offered burnt offerings to Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

new moon festivals

These holidays marked the beginning of each new month.

A fixed number, assigned by decree, always had to be present before Yahweh

Alternate translation: “A specific number of the Levites were always assigned to be present at the temple to make offerings to Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the burnt offerings](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [for the Sabbaths](#)
- [according to the judgment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [at the presentation of fully burnt offerings](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh's](#)
- [on Sabbath days](#)
- [There were specific regulations](#)

ULT

³¹ And concerning to offer all [the burnt offerings to Yahweh for the Sabbaths](#), for the new moons, and for the appointed times in the numbering [according to the judgment](#) over them regularly before the face of [Yahweh](#).

UST

³¹ And they needed to do the same thing [at the presentation of fully burnt offerings to Yahweh on Sabbath days](#) and during the new moon celebrations and other religious festivals. [There were specific regulations](#) about how many of them should be there and what they should do each time they served at [Yahweh's temple](#).

1 Chronicles 23:32

They were in charge of

Alternate translation: "The Levites were responsible for"

Translation Words - ULT

- meeting
- the holy place
- the sons of
- Aaron
- their brothers
- for the service of
- the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- the descendants of
- Aaron
- their fellow Israelites
- certain responsibilities
- at the place where the Israelite people worshiped
- Yahweh
- at the sacred tent
- holy

ULT

³² And they were to keep the charge of the tent of **meeting** and the charge of **the holy place**, and the charge of **the sons of Aaron their brothers** for the service of the house of Yahweh.

UST

³² So **the descendants of Aaron, their fellow Israelites**, assigned the descendants of Levi **certain responsibilities at the place where the Israelite people worshiped Yahweh**. The descendants of Levi did that work **at the sacred tent** and in the **holy** place inside the tent.

1 Chronicles 24

1 Chronicles 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Arranging the priests

David arranged for the order in which priests would be on duty. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

1 Chronicles 24:1

General Information:

This chapter describes how the Levites in the previous chapter were divided into work groups with different assignments.

Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 6:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [And to the sons of](#)
- [The sons of](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Eleazar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [These are...the descendants of](#)
- [four sons were](#)
- [Aaron the first high priest](#)
- [Aaron's](#)
- [Eleazar](#)

ULT

¹ [And to the sons of Aaron](#), their division. [The sons of Aaron](#): Nadab, and Abihu, [Eleazar](#), and Ithamar.

UST

¹ [These are](#) the divisions of [the descendants of Aaron the first high priest](#): [Aaron's four sons were](#) Nadab, Abihu, [Eleazar](#), and Ithamar.

1 Chronicles 24:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And...died
- their father
- and sons
- Eleazar
- And...became priests

Translation Words - UST

- But...died
- their father died
- and...children
- So...became priests
- their younger brothers Eleazar and Ithamar

ULT

² And Nadab **died**, as well as Abihu, before the face of **their father, and sons** were not to them. And **Eleazar** and Ithamar **became priests**.

UST

² **But** Nadab and Abihu **died** before **their father died**, and they had no **children**. **So their younger brothers Eleazar and Ithamar became priests**.

1 Chronicles 24:3

Ahimelech

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

divided them into groups

Alternate translation: "divided the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar into groups"

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [along with Zadok](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the sons of \(2\)](#)
- [Eleazar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Zadok](#)
- [who was a descendant of](#)
- [who was a descendant of \(2\)](#)
- [Eleazar](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

³ And [David](#) divided them, [along with Zadok](#) from [the sons of Eleazar](#), and Ahimelech from [the sons of Ithamar](#), according to their office in their service.

UST

³ [Zadok](#), [who was a descendant of Eleazar](#), and Ahimelech, [who was a descendant of Ithamar](#), helped [David](#) to separate the family groups into two groups. Each group had certain duties.

1 Chronicles 24:4

they divided

Alternate translation: "David, Zadok, and Ahimelech divided"

sixteen groups

"16 groups" (See: [Numbers](#))

heads of clans

Here "heads" is a metaphor for the more important people—the leaders of the clans. Alternate translation: "leaders of the clans" (See: [Metaphor](#))

These divisions were eight in number, corresponding to their clans

Alternate translation: "There were 8 divisions based on the clans of Ithamar's descendants"

ULT

⁴ And more [sons of Eleazar](#) were found for heads of men than [the sons of Ithamar](#), and they divided them [for the sons of Eleazar, heads of a house of the fathers, 16, and for the sons of Ithamar for the house of their fathers, eight.](#)

UST

⁴ There were more leaders [among the descendants of Eleazar](#) than there were [among the descendants of Ithamar](#). So they appointed 16 [leaders](#) from [Eleazar's descendants](#) and eight [leaders](#) from Ithamar's [descendants](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [for the sons of](#)
- [and for the sons of](#)
- [Eleazar](#)
- [Eleazar](#)
- [heads of](#)
- [a house of the](#)
- [for the house of](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [their fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [among the descendants of](#)
- [among the descendants of](#)
- [from...descendants](#)
- [and...from...descendants](#)
- [Eleazar](#)
- [Eleazar's](#)
- [leaders](#)
- [leaders](#)
- [leaders](#)
- [leaders](#)
- [leaders](#)

1 Chronicles 24:5

They divided them impartially by lot

Alternate translation: "They divided them by lot so that the divisions would be fair"

Translation Words - ULT

- sacred
- chiefs
- and chiefs of
- God
- from the sons of
- Eleazar

Translation Words - UST

- temple officials
- and priests
- temple officials
- and priests
- including descendants of both
- Eleazar

ULT

⁵ And they divided them by lots, these with these, for there were **sacred chiefs and chiefs of God from the sons of Eleazar** and in the sons of Ithamar.

UST

⁵ There were **temple officials and priests** there, **including descendants of both Eleazar** and Ithamar, to make sure that the work was equitable between the groups. So they decided what work each group would do by casting lots.

1 Chronicles 24:6

Shemaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nethanel

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 15:24](#).

Ahimelech

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 18:16](#).

One clan was drawn by lot from Eleazar's descendants, and then the next would be drawn from Ithamar's descendants

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "They chose one by lot from Eleazar's descendants, then they would choose by lot one from Ithamar's descendants" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of
- the scribe
- the fathers
- a father
- house of
- for Eleazar
- the Levites
- the king
- and the chiefs
- and Zadok
- the priest
- for the priests
- Abiathar
- and the heads of

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- son of
- who was an official secretary
- the families of
- The lots alternated between the two groups, starting with a family who descended from Eleazar then a family who descended from Ithamar. Once the eight leaders from families descended from Ithamar received their duties, the remaining duties went to leaders of families descended from Eleazar

ULT

⁶ And Shemaiah the son of Nethanel the scribe from the Levites wrote them before the face of the king, and the chiefs, and Zadok the priest, and Ahimelech the son of Abiathar, and the heads of the fathers for the priests and for the Levites. One house of a father was picked for Eleazar, and one was picked for Ithamar.

UST

⁶ Shemaiah son of Nethanel, who was an official secretary and a descendant of Levi, wrote down the names of the leaders of each group while David and his officials were watching. Zadok, the high priest, and Ahimelech son of Abiathar, and the leaders of the families of the priests and of the families of the other descendants of Levi also watched. The lots alternated between the two groups, starting with a family who descended from Eleazar then a family who descended from Ithamar. Once the eight leaders from families descended from Ithamar received their duties, the remaining duties went to leaders of families descended from Eleazar.

- The lots alternated between the two groups, starting with a family who descended from Eleazar then a family who descended from Ithamar. Once the eight leaders from families descended from Ithamar received their duties, the remaining duties went to leaders of families descended from Eleazar
- The lots alternated between the two groups, starting with a family who descended from Eleazar then a family who descended from Ithamar. Once the eight leaders from families descended from Ithamar received their duties, the remaining duties went to leaders of families descended from Eleazar
- Levi
- David
- and his officials
- Zadok, the high priest
- Zadok, the high priest
- the priests
- Abiathar
- and the leaders of

1 Chronicles 24:7

General Information:

This begins a list of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests. This list ends in [1 Chronicles 24:18](#).

The first lot ... the second

“Lot number 1...lot number 2.” This shows the order in which the families were chosen by lots. If this is unnatural in your language you may use “The initial” for “The first” and “the next” for all of the following ones. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Jehoiarib ... Jedaiah

See how you translated the names of these men in [1 Chronicles 9:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the second

This refers to the second lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the second lot” or “lot number 2” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lot](#)
- [And...went](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [received](#)
- [the...lot cast](#)

ULT

⁷ And the first [lot went](#) to Jehoiarib, to Jedaiah the second,

UST

⁷ Jehoiarib [received](#) the first [lot cast](#). Jedaiah received the next lot.

1 Chronicles 24:8

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the third ... the fourth

This refers to the third and fourth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the third lot ... the fourth lot” or “lot number 3...lot number 4” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Harim ... Seorim

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁸ to Harim the third, to Seorim the fourth,

UST

⁸ Next was Harim, then Seorim.

1 Chronicles 24:9

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the fifth ... the sixth

This refers to the fifth and sixth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifth lot ... the sixth lot” or “lot number 5...lot number 6” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Malkijah ... Mijamin

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁹ to Malkijah the fifth, to Mijamin the sixth,

UST

⁹ Next was Malkijah, then Mijamin.

1 Chronicles 24:10

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the seventh ... the eighth

This refers to the seventh and eighth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the seventh lot ... the eighth lot” or “lot number 7...lot number 8” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Hakkoz ... Abijah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Abijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abijah](#)

ULT

¹⁰ to Hakkoz the seventh, to Abijah the eighth,

UST

¹⁰ Next was Hakkoz, then Abijah.

1 Chronicles 24:11

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the ninth ... the tenth

This refers to the ninth and tenth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the ninth lot ... the tenth lot” or “lot number 9...lot number 10” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Jeshua ... Shecaniah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹¹ to Jeshua the ninth, to Shecaniah the tenth,

UST

¹¹ Next was Jeshua, then Shecaniah.

1 Chronicles 24:12

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the eleventh ... the twelfth

This refers to the eleventh and twelfth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the eleventh lot ... the twelfth lot” or “lot number 11...lot number 12” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Eliashib ... Jakim

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹² to Eliashib the 11th, to Jakim the 12th,

UST

¹² Next was Eliashib. then Jakim.

1 Chronicles 24:13

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the thirteenth ... the fourteenth

This refers to the thirteenth and fourteenth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the thirteenth lot ... the fourteenth lot” or “lot number 13...lot number 14” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Huppah ... Jeshebeab

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹³ to Huppah the 13th, to Jeshebeab the 14th,

UST

¹³ Next was Huppah, then Jeshebeab.

1 Chronicles 24:14

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the fifteenth ... the sixteenth

This refers to the fifteenth and sixteenth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifteenth lot ... the sixteenth lot” or “lot number 15...lot number 16” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Bilgah ... Immer

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁴ to Bilgah the 15th, to Immer the 16th,

UST

¹⁴ Next was Bilgah, then Immer.

1 Chronicles 24:15

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the seventeenth ... the eighteenth

This refers to the seventeenth and eighteenth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the seventeenth lot ... the eighteenth lot” or “lot number 17...lot number 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Hezir ... Happizzez

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁵ to Hezir the 17th, to Happizzez the 18th,

UST

¹⁵ The remaining leaders descended from Eleazar. The 17th lot went to Hezir. Next was Happizzez.

1 Chronicles 24:16

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the nineteenth ... the twentieth

This refers to the nineteenth and twentieth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the nineteenth lot ... the twentieth lot” or “lot number 19...lot number 20” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Pethahiah ... Jehezkel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Jehezkel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehezkel](#)

ULT

¹⁶ to Pethahiah the 19th, [to Jehezkel](#) the 20th,

UST

¹⁶ Next was Pethahiah, then [Jehezkel](#).

1 Chronicles 24:17

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the twenty-first ... the twenty-second

This refers to the twenty-first and twenty-second lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-first lot ... the twenty-second lot” or “lot number 21...lot number 22” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Jakin ... Gamul

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁷ to Jakin the 21st, to Gamul the 22nd,

UST

¹⁷ Next was Jakin, then Gamul.

1 Chronicles 24:18

Connecting Statement:

This ends the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the twenty-third ... the twenty-fourth

This refers to the twenty-third and twenty-fourth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-third lot ... the twenty-fourth lot” or “lot number 23...lot number 24” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Delaiah ... Maaziah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁸ to Delaiah the 23rd, to Maaziah the 24th.

UST

¹⁸ Next was Delaiah, then Maaziah was the last.

1 Chronicles 24:19

following the procedure given to them by Aaron their ancestor

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "following the rules that Aaron their ancestor gave them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- for their service
- into the house of
- commanded him
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- according to the judgments
- by the hand of
- Aaron
- their father
- the God of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- that would serve
- Yahweh's
- Yahweh
- the God
- the Israelite people worship
- had given to him
- in...temple
- obeying the regulations that...gave
- obeying the regulations that...gave
- Aaron
- their ancestor

ULT

¹⁹ These, their office for their service to come into the house of Yahweh, according to the judgments by the hand of Aaron their father, just as Yahweh the God of Israel commanded him.

UST

¹⁹ Those were the men selected to be the leaders of the groups that would serve in Yahweh's temple, obeying the regulations that Aaron their ancestor gave, regulations which Yahweh, the God the Israelite people worship, had given to him.

1 Chronicles 24:20

General Information:

This begins the list of names of the other sons of Levi. This list will end in [1 Chronicles 24:30](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Amram

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 6:3](#).

Shubael

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 23:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [And to the sons of](#)
- [of the sons of](#)
- [of the sons of](#)
- [Levi](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [This is a list of some of the...descendants of](#)
- [From the sons of](#)
- [From the sons of](#)
- [Levi](#)

ULT

20 [And to the sons of Levi](#), the ones who are left, [of the sons of Amram](#), Shubael; [of the sons of Shubael](#), Jehdeiah.

UST

20 [This is a list of some of the other descendants of Levi](#): [From the sons of Amram](#) there was Shubael. [From the sons of Shubael](#) there was Jehdeiah.

1 Chronicles 24:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of the sons
- of...the head

Translation Words - UST

- and from the sons of
- his oldest son

ULT

²¹ To Rehabiah, of the sons of Rehabiah, the head Ishijah.

UST

²¹ From Rehabiah and from the sons of Rehabiah there was Isshiah, his oldest son.

1 Chronicles 24:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- From the descendants of

ULT

²² To the Izharites, Shelomoth, **of the sons of** Shelomoth, Jahath.

UST

²² From the descendants of Kohath's son Izhar there was Shelomoth. **From the descendants of** Shelomoth there was Jahath.

1 Chronicles 24:23

Hebron ... Jeriah ... Amariah ... Jahaziel ... Jekameam

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 23:19](#).

the second ... the third ... the fourth

“the second son ... the third son ... the fourth son” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [From the descendants of Kohath's son Hebron](#)

ULT

²³ [And the sons of](#) Jeriah, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, and Jekameam the fourth.

UST

²³ [From the descendants of Kohath's son Hebron](#) there was his oldest son Jeriah and Amariah the second-born. Jahaziel was the third son, and Jekameam was the fourth son.

1 Chronicles 24:24

Uzziel ... Micah

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 23:20](#).

Shamir

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [of the sons of](#)
- [Micah](#)
- [Micah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [From the descendants of Kohath's son](#)
- [From the descendants of](#)
- [there was Micah](#)
- [Micah](#)

ULT

²⁴ [The sons of Uzziel, Micah, of the sons of Micah, Shamir.](#)

UST

²⁴ [From the descendants of Kohath's son Uzziel there was Micah. From the descendants of Micah there was Shamir.](#)

1 Chronicles 24:25

Ishijah

Translate the name of this man as in [1 Chronicles 23:20](#).

Zechariah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The brother of](#)
- [Micah](#)
- [of the sons of](#)
- [Zechariah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Micah's](#)
- [And...younger brother was](#)
- [From the descendants of](#)
- [there was Zechariah](#)

ULT

²⁵ [The brother of Micah, Ishijah, of the sons of Ishijah, Zechariah.](#)

UST

²⁵ [And Micah's younger brother was Isshiah. From the descendants of Isshiah there was Zechariah.](#)

1 Chronicles 24:26

Merari ... Mahli ... Mushi

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 23:21](#).

Jaaziah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

from the son of Jaaziah: Beno

It seems Jaaziah is another son of Merari. And, Beno is the son of Jaaziah. Beno is mentioned in both verses 26 and 27 because he is a leader in his family. However, some Bibles translate "Beno" as "his son" rather than as a proper name. Those Bibles read like this: "and from his sons, Jaaziah, his son."

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [The sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The sons of...were](#)
- [first son was](#)

ULT

²⁶ [The sons of](#) Merari: Mahli and Mushi.

[The sons of](#) Jaaziah: Beno.

UST

²⁶ [The sons of](#) Merari [were](#) Mahli, Mushi, and Jaaziah. Jaaziah's [first son](#) [was](#) Beno.

1 Chronicles 24:27

Jaaziah ... Shoham ... Zaccur ... Ibri

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

from Jaaziah: Beno, Shoham

It seems Jaaziah is another son of Merari. And, Beno is the son of Jaaziah. Beno is mentioned in both verses 26 and 27 because he is a leader in his family. However, some Bibles translate "Beno" as "his son" rather than as a proper name. Those Bibles read like this: "from Jaaziah, his son: Shoham."

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [In...family line](#)

ULT

²⁷ [The sons of](#) Merari, of Jaaziah: Beno, and Shoham, and Zaccur, and Ibri.

UST

²⁷ In Merari's [family line](#), from the descendants of Jaaziah, there were Beno, Shoham, Zaccur, and Ibri.

1 Chronicles 24:28

Mahli ... Eleazar

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 23:21](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Eleazar](#)
- [sons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Eleazar](#)
- [sons](#)

ULT

²⁸ To Mahli, [Eleazar](#), and not were to him [sons](#).

UST

²⁸ Mahli's son [Eleazar](#) did not have any [sons](#).

1 Chronicles 24:29

From Kish: The son of Kish

This is written in the text as a title, but could be stated in a more complete form. Alternate translation: "These are the sons who were descended from Kish"

Kish

Translate the name of this man as in [1 Chronicles 23:21](#).

Jerahmeel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁹ To Kish, [the sons of](#) Kish, Jerahmeel.

UST

²⁹ From the descendants of Kish there was his [son](#) Jerahmeel.

1 Chronicles 24:30

Mushi

Translate the name of this man as in [1 Chronicles 23:21](#).

Mahli ... Eder ... Jerimoth

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The sons of...were](#)
- [descendants of](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [who were listed according to the leaders of their families](#)
- [who were listed according to the leaders of their families](#)

ULT

³⁰ [And the sons of](#) Mushi: Mahli, and Eder, and Jerimoth. These, [the sons of the Levites, according to the house of their fathers.](#)

UST

³⁰ [The sons of](#) Mushi [were](#) Mahli, Eder, and Jerimoth. Those were [descendants of Levi who were listed according to the leaders of their families.](#)

1 Chronicles 24:31

Ahimelech

Translate the name of this man as in [1 Chronicles 18:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- And...cast
- lots
- for the priests
- the head
- their brothers
- his...brother
- the sons of
- Aaron
- King
- David
- along with Zadok
- and the heads of
- the fathers
- the fathers of

Translation Words - UST

- decided the jobs they would do
- by casting lots
- the priests
- each oldest
- their fellow Israelites
- brother...those of
- the descendants of
- Aaron
- King
- David
- Zadok
- and the leaders of
- the families of
- The families of

ULT

³¹ And these also cast lots just like their brothers, the sons of Aaron, before the face of King David, along with Zadok and Ahimelech and the heads of the fathers, for the priests and for the Levites; the fathers of the head just like his younger brother.

UST

³¹ These men also decided the jobs they would do by casting lots just like their fellow Israelites the descendants of Aaron, did. They cast lots while King David, Zadok, Ahimelech, and the leaders of the families of the priests and the other descendants of Levi watched. The families of each oldest brother received the same treatment as those of the youngest.

1 Chronicles 25

1 Chronicles 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Music

The 24 groups who were chosen to play music in the temple cast lots to see in what order they would serve.

1 Chronicles 25:1

this service

Alternate translation: "the work done at the tabernacle"

cymbals

This refers to two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Heman ... Jeduthun

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 16:41](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [and the chiefs of](#)
- [And...divided](#)
- [for the service](#)
- [for their service](#)
- [for the sons of](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [the ones prophesying](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [and some of the temple officials](#)
- [chose](#)
- [some of the descendants of](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [to be in charge of](#)
- [the men whom they chose for that work](#)
- [teaching through song](#)

ULT

¹ And [David and the chiefs of the army divided for the service for the sons of Asaph](#), and Heman, and Jeduthun, [the ones prophesying](#) with harps, with lyres, and with cymbals. And the numbering of the men of work [for their service](#) was:

UST

¹ [David and some of the temple officials chose some of the descendants of Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun to be in charge of teaching through song](#) with harps, lyres, and cymbals. This is a list of [the men whom they chose for that work](#):

1 Chronicles 25:2

General Information:

This begins a list of leaders of the tabernacle service.

Zaccur ... Joseph ... Nethaniah ... Asharelah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the sons of Asaph, under the direction of Asaph, who prophesied under the king's supervision

Alternate translation: "these were the sons of Asaph, whom he supervised. Asaph prophesied under the king's supervision"

under the direction of

Alternate translation: "under the supervision of"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [the hand of](#)
- [the hands of](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asaph's](#)
- [Asaph's](#)
- [Asaph...Asaph](#)
- [From...family, they chose](#)
- [sons](#)
- [supervised them](#)
- [appointed](#)
- [The king](#)

ULT

² [Of the sons of Asaph](#): Zaccur, and Joseph, and Nethaniah, and Asharelah, ^[1] [the sons of Asaph](#), under [the hand of Asaph](#), who was prophesying under [the hands of the king](#).

UST

² From [Asaph's family, they chose Asaph's sons](#) Zaccur, Joseph, Nethaniah, and Aserelah. [Asaph supervised them](#). [The king appointed Asaph to teach through song](#).

1 Chronicles 25:3

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of leaders of the tabernacle service that was started in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#).

Gedaliah ... Zeri ... Jeshaiiah ... Shimei ... Hashabiah ... Mattithiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [and Jeshaiiah](#)
- [the hands of](#)
- [their father](#)
- [and to praise](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons of Jeduthun including](#)
- [Jeshaiiah](#)
- [Jeduthun](#)
- [supervised them](#)
- [and praised](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

³ Of Jeduthun, [the sons of](#) Jeduthun: Gedaliah, and Zeri, ^[2] [and Jeshaiiah](#), Hashabiah, and Mattithiah, six, under [the hands of their father](#) Jeduthun, with the harp one prophesying, for giving thanks [and to praise Yahweh](#).

UST

³ From Jeduthun's family, they chose six [sons of Jeduthun including](#) Gedaliah, Zeri, [Jeshaiiah](#), Hashabiah, and Mattithiah. [Jeduthun supervised them](#) and also taught through song, playing his harp while he thanked [and praised Yahweh](#).

1 Chronicles 25:4

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of leaders of the tabernacle service that was started in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#).

Heman

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 16:41](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Bukkiah ... Mattaniah ... Uzziel ... Shubael ...
Jerimoth ... Hananiah ... Hanani ... Eliathah ...
Giddalti ... Romamti-Ezer ... Joshbekashah ...
Mallothi ... Hothir ... Mahazioth**

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Hananiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the sons of](#)
- [Hananiah](#)

ULT

⁴ Of Heman, [the sons of](#) Heman: Bukkiah, Mattaniah, Uzziel, ^[3] Shubael, and Jerimoth, [Hananiah](#), Hanani, Eliathah, Giddalti, and Romamti-Ezer, Joshbekashah, Mallothi, Hothir, Mahazioth.

UST

⁴ From Heman's family they chose [the sons of](#) Heman: Bukkiah, Mattaniah, Uzziel, Shubael, Jerimoth, [Hananiah](#), Hanani, Eliathah, Giddalti, Romamti-Eze, Joshbekashah, Mallothi, Hothir, and Mahazioth.

1 Chronicles 25:5

fourteen sons and three daughters

“14 sons and 3 daughters” (See: [Numbers](#))

to lift up his horn

An animal horn is a symbol of strength or authority. To lift up someone's horn is a metaphor for honoring him. Alternate translation: “to honor Heman” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons](#)
- [sons](#)
- [the king](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons of](#)
- [sons](#)
- [King David's](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

⁵ All these, [the sons](#) of Heman, the seer of [the king](#) by the words of [God](#) to lift up a horn. And [God](#) gave to Heman 14 [sons](#) and three daughters.

UST

⁵ They were all [sons of](#) Heman, who was [King David's](#) prophet. [God](#) promised to cause Heman to be strong. [God](#) gave him 14 [sons](#) and three daughters.

1 Chronicles 25:6

were under the direction of their fathers

Alternate translation: “were supervised by their fathers”

cymbals

This refers to two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Jeduthun ... Heman

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 16:41](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the hands of
- the hands of
- their father
- the house of
- the house of (2)
- Yahweh
- for the service of
- God
- the king
- Asaph

Translation Words - UST

- The fathers of
- supervised the men
- supervised their fathers
- Asaph
- in the temple of
- temple (2)
- Yahweh
- for their...duty
- temple
- The king

ULT

⁶ All these, under the hands of their father in the song of the house of Yahweh, with cymbals, harps, and lyres for the service of the house of God under the hands of the king: Asaph, and Jeduthun, and Heman.

UST

⁶ The fathers of all those men supervised the men while they played music in the temple of Yahweh. They played cymbals, harps, and lyres for their temple duty. The king supervised their fathers—Asaph, Jeduthun, and Heman.

1 Chronicles 25:7

numbered 288

“were two hundred and eighty-eight men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their brothers](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)
- [the ones who understand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [their relatives](#)
- [were skilled in playing musical instruments](#)
- [the music for playing songs to Yahweh in the temple](#)

ULT

⁷ And their numbering with [their brothers](#) who were taught the song of [Yahweh](#), all [the ones who understand](#), 288.

UST

⁷ Those men and [their relatives were skilled in playing musical instruments](#) and learned [the music for playing songs to Yahweh in the temple](#). In all, there were 288 of them.

1 Chronicles 25:8

all alike, the same for the young as well as the old, the teacher as well as the student

This refers to all of the men by describing the extremes. Alternate translation: "all of them, including the young men and the old men, the teachers and the students" (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they cast](#)
- [lots](#)
- [one who understands](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and those with experience](#)
- [cast](#)
- [lots](#)

ULT

⁸ [And they cast lots](#) for a charge, small and great alike, [one who understands](#) with a student.

UST

⁸ All of them, including younger men and older men [and those with experience](#) and those without experience, [cast lots](#) to determine what work they would do.

1 Chronicles 25:9

General Information:

This begins the list of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve. This list ends in [1 Chronicles 25:31](#).

The first lot ... the second

“Lot number 1...lot number 2.” This shows the order in which the families were chosen by lots. If this is unnatural in your language you may use “The initial” for “The first” and “the next” for all of the following ones. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

The first lot fell to Joseph’s family

For all of the other people in the list, the text specifies that there were “twelve persons in number.” Since this was likely true for Joseph’s family also, you may want to state it clearly. Alternate translation: “The first lot fell to Joseph’s family, twelve persons in number” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the second

This refers to the second lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the second lot” or “lot number 2” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Gedaliah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...lot](#)
- [And...went](#)
- [to Asaph](#)
- [and his brothers](#)
- [and his sons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lot](#)
- [went](#)
- [to the family of Asaph](#)
- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

⁹ And the first [lot went to Asaph](#), to Joseph; Gedaliah the second, he [and his brothers and his sons](#), 12.

UST

⁹ The first [lot went to the family of Asaph](#), to his son Joseph and Joseph’s sons and relatives, 12 in all. Next, to Gedaliah [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:10

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the third

This refers to the third lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the third lot” or “lot number 3” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Zaccur

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

¹⁰ The third Zaccur, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

¹⁰ Next, to Zaccur [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:11

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the fourth

This refers to the fourth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fourth lot” or “lot number 4” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Izri

This name of this man is spelled Zeri in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

¹¹ The fourth to Izri, ^[4] [his sons and his brothers](#), 12;

UST

¹¹ Next, to Izri [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:12

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the fifth

This refers to the fifth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifth lot” or “lot number 5” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Nethaniah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

¹² The fifth Nethaniah, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

¹² Next, to Nethaniah [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:13

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the sixth

This refers to the sixth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the sixth lot” or “lot number 6” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Bukkiah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

¹³ The sixth Bukkiah, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

¹³ Next, to Bukkiah [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:14

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the seventh

This refers to the seventh lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the seventh lot” or “lot number 7” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Jesarelah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

14 The seventh Jesarelah, ^[5] [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

14 Next, to Jesarelah [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:15

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the eighth

This refers to the eighth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the eighth lot” or “lot number 8” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Jeshaiah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jeshaiah](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to Jeshaiah](#)
- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

¹⁵ The eighth [Jeshaiah, his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

¹⁵ Next, [to Jeshaiah and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:16

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the ninth

This refers to the ninth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the ninth lot” or “lot number 9” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Mattaniah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

¹⁶ The ninth Mattaniah, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

¹⁶ Next, to Mattaniah [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:17

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the tenth

This refers to the tenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the tenth lot” or “lot number 10” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Shimei

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

¹⁷ The tenth Shimei, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

¹⁷ Next, to Shimei [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:18

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the eleventh

This refers to the eleventh lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the eleventh lot” or “lot number 11” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Azarel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

¹⁸ The 11th Azarel, ^[6] his sons and his brothers, 12.

UST

¹⁸ Next, to Azarel and his sons and relatives, 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:19

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the twelfth

This refers to the twelfth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twelfth lot” or “lot number 12” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Hashabiah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

¹⁹ The 12th to Hashabiah, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

¹⁹ Next, to Hashabiah [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:20

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the thirteenth

This refers to the thirteenth lot. The word "lot" may be supplied here. Alternate translation: "the thirteenth lot" or "lot number 13" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Shubael

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

"12 people" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

²⁰ For the 13th Shubael, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

²⁰ Next, to Shubael [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:21

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the fourteenth

This refers to the fourteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fourteenth lot” or “lot number 14” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Mattithiah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

²¹ For the 14th Mattithiah, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

²¹ Next, to Mattithiah [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:22

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the fifteenth

This refers to the fifteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifteenth lot” or “lot number 15” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Jerimoth

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

²² For the 15th to Jerimoth, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

²² Next, to Jerimoth [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:23

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the sixteenth

This refers to the sixteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the sixteenth lot” or “lot number 16” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Hananiah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Hananiah](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to Hananiah](#)
- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

²³ For the 16th [to Hananiah, his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

²³ Next, [to Hananiah and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:24

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the seventeenth

This refers to the seventeenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the seventeenth lot” or “lot number 17” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Joshbekashah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

²⁴ For the 17th to Joshbekashah, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

²⁴ Next, to Joshbekashah [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:25

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the eighteenth

This refers to the eighteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the eighteenth lot” or “lot number 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Hanani

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

²⁵ For the 18th to Hanani, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

²⁵ Next, to Hanani [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:26

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the nineteenth

This refers to the nineteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the nineteenth lot” or “lot number 19” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Mallothi

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

²⁶ For the 19th to Mallothi, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

²⁶ Next, to Mallothi [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:27

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the twentieth

This refers to the twentieth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twentieth lot” or “lot number 20” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Eliathah

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

²⁷ For the 20th to Eliathah, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

²⁷ Next, to Eliathah [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:28

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the twenty-first

This refers to the twenty-first lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-first lot” or “lot number 21” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Hothir

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

²⁸ For the 21st to Hothir, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

²⁸ Next, to Hothir [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:29

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the twenty-second

This refers to the twenty-second lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-second lot” or “lot number 2” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Giddalti

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

²⁹ For the 22nd to Giddalti, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

²⁹ Next, to Giddalti [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:30

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the twenty-third

This refers to the twenty-third lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-third lot” or “lot number 23” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Mahazioth

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

³⁰ For the 23rd to Mahazioth, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

UST

³⁰ Next, to Mahazioth [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 25:31

Connecting Statement:

This ends the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the twenty-fourth

This refers to the twenty-fourth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-fourth lot” or “lot number 24” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Romamti-Ezer

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [and his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

³¹ For the 24th to Romamti-Ezer, [his sons and his brothers](#), 12.

25:2 ^[1]

25:3 ^[2]

25:4 ^[3]

25:11 ^[4]

25:14 ^[5]

25:18 ^[6]

UST

³¹ Next, to Romamti-Eze [and his sons and relatives](#), 12 in all.

1 Chronicles 26

1 Chronicles 26 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Casting lots

The gatekeepers cast lots to see which gate they would guard. Those who took care of the storage also cast lots.

1 Chronicles 26:1

General Information:

This begins the list of the gatekeepers.

divisions

groups

Korahites

See how you translated the name of this people group in [1 Chronicles 19:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Meshelemiah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 9:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kore

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 9:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Asaph

This is an alternative spelling to “Ebiasaph” in [1 Chronicles 9:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Asaph](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [descendants](#)
- [Asaph's](#)

ULT

¹ For the divisions of the gatekeepers: Of the Korahites, Meshelemiah [the son of Kore](#), from [the sons of Asaph](#) ^[1] .

UST

¹ This is a list of the groups of men who guarded the temple gates: From Korah's descendants, there was Meshelemiah [son of Kore](#), who was one of [Asaph's descendants](#).

1 Chronicles 26:2

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Meshelemiah ... Zechariah

See how you translated the names of these men in [1 Chronicles 9:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jediael ... Zebadiah ... Jathniel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the second ... the third ... the fourth

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say “the next” for each son. The word “son” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the second son ... the third son ... the fourth son” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [Zechariah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [seven sons](#)
- [Zechariah](#)

ULT

² And to Meshelemiah ^[2] sons: [Zechariah](#) the firstborn, Jediael the second, Zebadiah the third, Jathniel the fourth,

UST

² Meshelemiah had [seven sons](#). His oldest son was [Zechariah](#). His other sons were Jediael, Zebadiah, Jathniel,

1 Chronicles 26:3

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Elam ... Jehohanan ... Eliehoenai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the fifth ... the sixth ... the seventh

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say “the next” for each son. The word “son” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifth son ... the sixth son ... the seventh son” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elam](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elam](#)

ULT

³ [Elam](#) the fifth, Jehohanan the sixth, Eliehoenai the seventh.

UST

³ [Elam](#), Jehohanan, and Eliehoenai.

1 Chronicles 26:4

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Obed Edom

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 16:38](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shemaiah ... Jehozabad ... Joah ... Sakar ... Nethanel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the second ... the third ... the fourth ... the fifth

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say "the next" for each son. The word "son" may be supplied here. Alternate translation: "the second son ... the third son ... the fourth son ... the fifth son" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He had eight sons](#)

ULT

⁴ And to Obed Edom [sons](#): Shemaiah the firstborn, Jehozabad the second, Joah the third, and Sakar the fourth, and Nethanel the fifth,

UST

⁴ Another guard was Obed Edom. [He had eight sons](#). His oldest son was Shemaiah. His other sons were Jehozabad, Joah, Sakar, Nethanel,

1 Chronicles 26:5

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Ammiel ... Issachar ... Peullethai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the sixth ... the seventh ... the eighth

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say “the next” for each son. The word “son” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the sixth son ... the seventh son ... the eighth son” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Issachar](#)
- [God](#)
- [blessed him](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Issachar](#)
- [God](#)
- [had blessed him](#)

ULT

⁵ Ammiel the sixth, [Issachar](#) the seventh, Peullethai the eighth, for [God](#) [blessed him](#).

UST

⁵ Ammiel, [Issachar](#), and Peullethai. Obed Edom had many sons because [God](#) [had blessed him](#).

1 Chronicles 26:6

who ruled over their families

“who were leaders in their father’s family.” This means that they were leaders among their clan.

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- sons
- in the house of
- their fathers
- mighty ones of
- strength

Translation Words - UST

- Obed Edom’s son
- sons
- their father’s
- in...family
- capable warriors
- capable warriors

ULT

⁶ And to Shemaiah his son were born sons, rulers in the house of their fathers; for mighty ones of strength they were.

UST

⁶ Obed Edom’s son Shemaiah also had sons. They were leaders in their father’s family because they were capable warriors.

1 Chronicles 26:7

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Shemaiah

Translate this name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 26:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Othni ... Rephael ... Obed ... Elzabad ... Elihu ... Semakiah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

His relatives

Alternate translation: "Shemaiah's relatives" or "Shemaiah's family members"

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [his brothers](#)
- [strength](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The sons of...were](#)
- [were also capable men](#)
- [Shemaiah's relatives](#)
- [were also capable men](#)

ULT

⁷ [The sons of](#) Shemaiah: Othni, and Rephael, and Obed, Elzabad [his brothers, sons of strength](#), Elihu and Semakiah.

UST

⁷ [The sons of](#) Shemaiah [were](#) Othni, Rephael, Obed, and Elzabad. [Shemaiah's relatives](#) Elihu and Semakiah [were also capable men](#).

1 Chronicles 26:8

Obed Edom

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 26:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

sixty-two of them

“62 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from the sons of](#)
- [and their sons](#)
- [and their brothers](#)
- [strength](#)
- [with power](#)
- [for service](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [descendants of](#)
- [and their sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)
- [capable](#)
- [and strong workers](#)
- [and strong workers](#)

ULT

⁸ All these [from the sons of](#) Obed Edom. They [and their sons and their brothers](#), men of [strength with power for service](#), 62 of Obed Edom.

UST

⁸ All of those [descendants of](#) Obed Edom [and their sons and relatives](#) were [capable people and strong workers](#). Altogether there were 62 of them.

1 Chronicles 26:9

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Meshelemiah

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

eighteen in all

“18 total” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [and brothers](#)
- [strength](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [were also capable people](#)
- [and relatives](#)
- [were also capable people](#)

ULT

⁹ And to Meshelemiah [sons and brothers, sons of strength](#), 18.

UST

⁹ Another guard was Meshelemiah. He [and his sons and relatives were also capable people](#). There were 18 of them altogether.

1 Chronicles 26:10

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Hosah ... Merari ... Shimri

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- sons
- the head
- firstborn
- his father
- and...set him

Translation Words - UST

- a descendant of
- four sons
- was the leader of that family
- because...appointed him
- Hosah
- Hosah's oldest son

ULT

¹⁰ And to Hosah, from [the sons of Merari](#), [sons](#): Shimri [the head](#), although he was not [firstborn](#), and [his father set him](#) as head,

UST

¹⁰ Another guard was Hosah, a [descendant of Merari](#). Hosah had [four sons](#). Hosah's son Shimri [was the leader of that family because Hosah appointed him](#) to be the leader, even though Shimri was not [Hosah's oldest son](#).

1 Chronicles 26:11

Connecting Statement:

This ends the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Hilkiah ... Tabaliah ... Zechariah ... Hosah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the second ... the third ... the fourth

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say “the next” for each son. The word “son” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the second son ... the third son ... the fourth son” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

All of Hosah’s sons and kinsmen were thirteen in number

“There were 13 of Hosah’s sons and kinsmen.” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Hilkiah](#)
- [Zechariah](#)
- [the sons](#)
- [and brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Hilkiah](#)
- [and Zechariah](#)
- [there were...sons](#)
- [and relatives](#)

ULT

¹¹ [Hilkiah](#) the second, [Tabaliah](#) the third, [Zechariah](#) the fourth. All [the sons and brothers](#) to [Hosah](#), 13.

UST

¹¹ [Hosah](#)’s other sons were [Hilkiah](#), [Tabaliah](#), and [Zechariah](#). Altogether [there were 13 sons and relatives](#) of [Hosah](#).

1 Chronicles 26:12

divisions

groups

Translation Words - ULT

- the gatekeepers
- their brothers
- in the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- who guarded the gates of the temple
- at the temple
- at the temple
- their relatives

ULT

¹² To these divisions of the gatekeepers, to the head males a charge just like their brothers to minister in the house of Yahweh.

UST

¹² Those men were leaders of the groups of men who guarded the gates of the temple. They worked at the temple like their relatives did.

1 Chronicles 26:13

threw lots

Alternate translation: "cast lots"

both young and old

This refers to all of the men by describing the extremes. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Chronicles 25:8](#). Alternate translation: "all of them, including the young men and the old men" or "men of all ages" (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they cast](#)
- [lots](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [and gate](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [By casting...cast](#)
- [lots...lots](#)
- [the leader of each family](#)
- [the leader of each family](#)
- [chose one gate for their group to guard](#)

ULT

13 [And they cast lots](#), like small like great, [according to the house of their fathers](#) for gate [and gate](#).

UST

13 [By casting lots](#), the leader of each family [chose one gate for their group to guard](#). All of them, including young men and old men, [cast lots](#).

1 Chronicles 26:14

When the lot was cast

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "When they cast the lot" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Zechariah

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 26:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

a prudent advisor

This is a person who shows good judgment in making decisions.

Translation Words - ULT

- the lot
- lots
- his lot
- And...fell
- and Zechariah
- his son
- an advisor
- and...went

Translation Words - UST

- The lot
- lots
- Those lots
- indicated
- The group of...Zechariah
- Shelemiah's son
- who was a...counselor
- indicated

ULT

14 And [the lot fell](#) to the east, to Shelemiah ^[3] and Zechariah his son, an advisor with insight. And they cast [lots](#) and [his lot went](#) to the north.

UST

14 [The lot](#) for Shelemiah's group [indicated](#) they would guard the east gate. [The group of Shelemiah's son Zechariah, who was a wise counselor,](#) cast [lots](#). [Those lots indicated](#) Zechariah's group would guard the north gate.

1 Chronicles 26:15

To Obed Edom was assigned the south gate, and his sons were assigned the storehouses

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Obed Edom was responsible for guarding the south gate, and his sons guarded the storehouses" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Obed Edom

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 26:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and to his sons](#)
- [the house of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and the lot for Obed Edom's sons indicated](#)
- [they would guard the entrances to the temple storerooms](#)

ULT

¹⁵ To Obed Edom to the south, [and to his sons, the house of](#) stores.

UST

¹⁵ The lot for Obed Edom's group indicated they would guard the south gate, [and the lot for Obed Edom's sons indicated they would guard the entrances to the temple storerooms.](#)

1 Chronicles 26:16

Shuppim and Hosah were assigned

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Shuppim and Hosah were responsible for guarding” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Shuppim

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hosah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 26:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shalleketh

This is the name of the gate. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Watches were established for each family.

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Each family was responsible for a watch” or “Each family has a set period of time that it was responsible for guarding” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the gate of](#)
- [a guard](#)
- [a guard](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the...Gate](#)
- [The work for the guards corresponded to what was necessary for each duty](#)
- [The work for the guards corresponded to what was necessary for each duty](#)

ULT

16 To Shuppim and to Hosah, to the west with [the gate of](#) Shalleketh on the road that goes up; [a guard](#) alongside [a guard](#).

UST

16 The lots for Shuppim’s group and Hosah’s group indicated they would guard the west gate and the Shalleketh [Gate](#) on the upper road to the temple. [The work for the guards corresponded to what was necessary for each duty.](#)

1 Chronicles 26:17

six Levites

“6 Levites” (See: [Numbers](#))

the east ... the north ... the south

These phrases refer to the gates. Alternate translation: “the east gate ... the north gate ... the south gate” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

four a day

This refers to the number of men on guard duty. Alternate translation: “four men each day” or “four Levites each day” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

two pairs

“2 pairs of men” or “2 sets of 2 men each” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Levites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [there were...descendants of Levi](#)

ULT

¹⁷ To the east six [Levites](#), to the north per day four, to the south per day four, and to the stores two by two.

UST

¹⁷ Each day [there were](#) six [descendants of Levi](#) who guarded the east gate, four who guarded the north gate, four who guarded the south gate, and two at a time who guarded the entrances to the storerooms.

1 Chronicles 26:18

At the pillar to the west there were four stationed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "four men guarded the pillar to the west" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

four stationed at the road and two at the pillar

The numbers "four" and "two" refer to guards. Alternate translation: "Four men guarded the road, and two men guarded the court" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

18 At the colonnade to the west, four at the highway, two at the colonnade. ^[4]

UST

18 At the west gate there were two men who guarded the courtyard and four who guarded the road outside the courtyard.

1 Chronicles 26:19

They were filled with

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "They were" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Merari

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 26:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the gatekeepers](#)
- [for the sons of](#)
- [and for the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who were descendants of](#)
- [and](#)
- [who guarded the gates of the temple](#)

ULT

¹⁹ These, the divisions of [the gatekeepers for the sons of the Korahites](#) [and for the sons of Merari](#).

UST

¹⁹ Those were the groups of men [who were descendants of Korah](#) [and Merari](#) [who guarded the gates of the temple](#).

1 Chronicles 26:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And the Levites
- Ahijah
- the treasuries of
- the house of
- God
- the sacred things

Translation Words - UST

- A man from the descendants of Levi
- Ahijah
- the places where the...treasures were
- temple's
- temple's
- the gifts that the people brought to the temple

ULT

²⁰ And the Levites, Ahijah over the treasuries of the house of God and of the treasuries of the sacred things.

UST

²⁰ A man from the descendants of Levi, Ahijah, oversaw the places where the temple's treasures were as well as the places where the Levites kept the gifts that the people brought to the temple.

1 Chronicles 26:21

Ladan ... Gershon

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

descended from Gershon through him and who were leaders of the families of Ladan the Gershonite

Since it is obvious that Ladan's descendants were also descendants of Ladan's ancestor Gershon, the information about them being Gershon's descendants can be left implicit. Alternate translation: "who were leaders of the families of Ladan the Gershonite" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Gershonite

A descendant of Gershon. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jehieli

This is the name of a man. This is the same person as in [1 Chronicles 23:8](#), but there his name is spelled "Jehiel." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [the sons](#)
- [the heads of](#)
- [the fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The descendants of Ladan were](#)
- [descendants of](#)
- [They were leaders among their family groups](#)
- [They were leaders among their family groups](#)

ULT

²¹ [The sons of](#) Ladan, [the sons](#) of the Gershonites belonging to Ladan, [the heads of the fathers](#), belonging to Ladan the Gershonite, Jehieli.

UST

²¹ [The descendants of Ladan were](#) themselves [descendants of](#) Gershon. [They were leaders among their family groups](#). A descendant of this Ladan from the descendants of Gershon was Jehiel.

1 Chronicles 26:22

the sons of Jehieli: Zetham and Joel his brother

Zetham and Joel were Jehieli's sons.

Jehieli

This is the name of a man. This is the same person as in [1 Chronicles 23:8](#), but there his name is spelled "Jehiel." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zetham ... Joel

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

They were in charge

The word "They" refers to Jehieli, Zetham, and Joel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [and Joel](#)
- [his brother](#)
- [the treasuries of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [From the sons of](#)
- [his younger brother](#)
- [and...Joel](#)
- [the places where the...treasures were](#)
- [temple's](#)
- [temple's](#)

ULT

²² [The sons of Jehieli: Zetham and Joel his brother](#), over [the treasuries of the house of Yahweh](#).

UST

²² [From the sons of Jehiel, Zetham and his younger brother Joel](#) were in charge of the places where the temple's treasures were.

1 Chronicles 26:23

Amram ... Izhar ... Hebron ... Uzziel

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²³ Of the Amramites, of the Izharites, of the Hebronites, of the Uzzielites:

UST

²³ Others who did that work were descendants of Amram, Izhar, Hebron and Uzziel.

1 Chronicles 26:24

Shubael

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:16](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Gershom

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:15](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [Moses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a descendant of](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

²⁴ And Shubael [the son of](#) Gershom, [the son of Moses](#), a leader over the treasuries,

UST

²⁴ Shubael, [a descendant of Moses' son](#) Gershom, was another leader in charge of where the treasures were.

1 Chronicles 26:25

Eliezer

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:15](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

His relatives from the clan of Eliezer

These were his relatives who did this work with him. Alternate translation: "His relatives who did the work with him from the clan of Eliezer" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Rehabiah

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:17](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeshaiah ... Joram ... Zichri ... Shelomith

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his brothers](#)
- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)
- [his son](#)
- [and Jeshaiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Others who did that work were the descendants of Gershom's younger brother...Those men were](#)
- [Eliezer's son](#)
- [Rehabiah's son](#)
- [Jeshaiah's son](#)
- [Joram's son](#)
- [Zichri's son](#)
- [Jeshaiah](#)

ULT

25 [and his brothers](#); to Eliezer, Rehabiah [his son](#), and Jeshaiah [his son](#), and Joram [his son](#), and Zichri [his son](#), and Shelomith [his son](#).

UST

25 [Others who did that work were the descendants of Gershom's younger brother Eliezer. Those men were Eliezer's son Rehabiah, Rehabiah's son Jeshaiah, Jeshaiah's son Joram, Joram's son Zichri, and Zichri's son Shelomith.](#)

1 Chronicles 26:26

were over

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “were in charge of” (See: [Idiom](#))

commanders over thousands and hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders over 1,000 soldiers and the commanders over 100 soldiers” or (2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “the commanders over large military divisions and the commanders over smaller military divisions” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his brothers](#)
- [the treasuries of](#)
- [the sacred things](#)
- [David](#)
- [the king](#)
- [consecrated](#)
- [and the heads of](#)
- [the fathers](#)
- [of the chiefs of](#)
- [and the chiefs of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his relatives](#)
- [the valuable things](#)
- [that certain people had dedicated to Yahweh](#)
- [dedicated things](#)
- [King](#)
- [David](#)
- [the leaders of](#)
- [the family groups](#)
- [the army commanders of](#)
- [as well as other...commanders](#)

ULT

²⁶ This Shelomith [and his brothers](#) were over all [the treasuries of the sacred things](#) which [David the king](#) consecrated, and the heads of the fathers, of the chiefs of thousands and hundreds, [and the chiefs of the army](#).

UST

²⁶ Shelomith [and his relatives](#) were in charge of all [the valuable things that certain people had dedicated to Yahweh](#). These people who [dedicated things](#) included [King David](#), the leaders of the family groups, the army commanders of 1,000 soldiers and commanders of 100 soldiers, [as well as other army commanders](#).

1 Chronicles 26:27

plunder

things an army takes from its enemies after a victory

Translation Words - ULT

- they consecrated
- the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- They dedicated
- Yahweh's
- temple

ULT

²⁷ From battles and from plunder they consecrated to strengthen the house of Yahweh.

UST

²⁷ They dedicated for the repair of Yahweh's temple some of the valuable things that those army officers had taken from Israel's enemies after Israel's army had defeated enemies in battles.

1 Chronicles 26:28

everything that was set apart to Yahweh by Samuel the prophet ... Joab son of Zeruiah

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "everything that Samuel the prophet ... Joab son of Zeruiah set apart to Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Kish ... Ner ... Zeruiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Everything that was set apart

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Everything that the leaders set apart" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Samuel
- consecrated
- the sacred things
- and his brothers
- and Saul
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- and Abner
- and Joab
- the hand of

Translation Words - UST

- and his relatives
- were...in charge of
- had dedicated to Yahweh
- everything that
- Samuel
- King Saul
- King Saul
- and David's two army commanders Abner and Joab (2)
- and David's two army commanders Abner and Joab (3)
- and David's two army commanders Abner and Joab
- and David's two army commanders Abner and Joab

ULT

²⁸ And all Samuel the seer consecrated, and Saul the son of Kish, and Abner the son of Ner, and Joab the son of Zeruiah. All the sacred things were under the hand of Shelomith and his brothers.

UST

²⁸ Shelomith and his relatives were also in charge of everything that the prophet Samuel, King Saul, and David's two army commanders Abner and Joab had dedicated to Yahweh.

1 Chronicles 26:29

Izhar

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

civil affairs of Israel

“daily business of the people of Israel.” This refers to the regular business of the people of Israel, not connected to the military or to the temple.

Kenaniah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his sons](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [outside the temple area...in various places in Israel](#)

ULT

²⁹ Of the Izharites, Kenaniah [and his sons](#) to the work of the outside for [Israel](#) as officers and judges.

UST

²⁹ From the descendants of Izhar, Kenaniah [and his sons](#) worked [outside the temple area](#). They were officials and judges [in various places in Israel](#).

1 Chronicles 26:30

Hebron

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hashabiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

1,700 capable men

“one thousand seven hundred capable men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Yahweh’s work and the king’s work

Alternate translation: “work done for Yahweh and the king.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his brothers](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [strength](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his relatives](#)
- [were responsible for](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the Jordan river](#)
- [who were able to do their work well](#)
- [who were able to do their work well](#)

ULT

³⁰ Of the Hebronites, Hashabiah [and his brothers, sons of strength](#), 1,700, over appointment of [Israel](#) from beyond [the Jordan](#) to the west for all the work of [Yahweh](#) and for the service of [the king](#).

UST

³⁰ From the descendants of Hebron, Hashabiah [and his relatives were responsible for](#) all the work done for [Yahweh](#) and for [the king](#) in the area west of [the Jordan river](#). There were 1,700 of them [who were able to do their work well](#).

1 Chronicles 26:31

Hebron

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 23:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeriah

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 23:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

counted from the lists

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "their names were on the lists" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

In the fortieth year of the reign of David

"When David had been king for 40 years" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Numbers](#))

men of ability

Alternate translation: "capable men"

Jazer

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the head
- of fathers
- of the reign of
- David
- they were sought out
- mighty ones of
- strength

Translation Words - UST

- Scribes recorded in the records of...that
- was the leader of
- David
- had been ruling for
- they searched in those records
- names of capable men descended from Hebron
- names of capable men descended from Hebron

ULT

³¹ Of the Hebronites, Jeriah [the head](#) of the Hebronites according to his generations [of fathers](#). In the 40th year [of the reign of David they were sought out](#) and there were found among them [mighty ones of strength](#) in Jazer of Gilead,

UST

³¹ [Scribes recorded in the records of](#) Hebron's descendants [that Jeriah was the leader of](#) that family group. When [David had been ruling for](#) almost forty years, [they searched in those records](#) and found [names of capable men descended from Hebron](#) who were at the city of Jazer in the region of Gilead.

1 Chronicles 26:32

2,700 relatives

“two thousand seven hundred family members” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his brothers](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [strength](#)
- [heads of](#)
- [the fathers](#)
- [David](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [And...appointed them](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jeriah had...relatives](#)
- [who were able to do their work well](#)
- [who were able to do their work well](#)
- [and who were leaders of their families](#)
- [and who were leaders of their families](#)
- [King](#)
- [the king](#)
- [David](#)
- [put them](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

³² [and his brothers, sons of strength, 2,700 heads of the fathers.](#) And [David the king appointed them](#) over the Reubenites and the Gadites and the half tribe of Manasseh, for every matter of [God](#), and matter of [the king](#).

26:1 ^[1] in 1 Chronicles 9:19.

26:2 ^[2] in 1 Chronicles 26:14.

26:14 ^[3] in 1 Chronicles 26:2.

26:18 ^[4]

UST

³² [Jeriah had 2,700 relatives who were able to do their work well and who were leaders of their families.](#) King [David](#) put [them](#) in charge of governing the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh, to ensure that all the people did what [God](#) commanded and what [the king](#) told them to do.

1 Chronicles 27

1 Chronicles 27 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

1 Chronicles 27:1

This is the list

Alternate translation: "These are the names"

commanders of thousands and hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: "the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers" or (2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: "the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions" See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:1](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

in various ways

Alternate translation: "in different ways" or "in many ways"

Each military division served month by month throughout the year

This means that each division took turns serving periods of a month at a time.

Each military division

Alternate translation: "Each group"

throughout the year

Alternate translation: "all year long"

twenty-four thousand men

"24,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the heads of](#)
- [the fathers](#)
- [and the chiefs of](#)
- [those who minister to](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelite men](#)

ULT

¹ [And the sons of Israel](#), for the numbering of [the heads of the fathers](#) and [the chiefs](#) of thousands and hundreds, and their officers of [those who minister to the king](#) for any matter of the divisions who come and go month by month for all months of the year, one division, 24,000.

UST

¹ This is a list of [the Israelite men who served the king](#) in the army. [Some were leaders of families](#), [some were commanders of 1,000 men](#), some were commanders of 100 men, and some were other officers. There were 24,000 men in each group. Each group served one month of each year.

- the Israelite men
- who served
- the king
- Some were leaders of
- families
- some were commanders of

1 Chronicles 27:2

Over the division

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "In charge of the division" (See: [Idiom](#))

first month

"month 1." This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Jashobeam ... Zabdiel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

"24,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)

ULT

² Over the first division for the first month, Jashobeam [the son of](#) Zabdiel, and over his division, 24,000.

UST

² Jashobeam, [son of](#) Zabdiel, was in charge of the group that served during the first month of each year.

1 Chronicles 27:3

Perez

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the head
- the chiefs of

Translation Words - UST

- He was a descendant of
- and he was the commander
- the...officers

ULT

³ From [the sons of](#) Perez [the head](#) of all [the chiefs of](#) the armies for the first month.

UST

³ He was a descendant of Perez, and he was the commander of all the army officers during the first month of each year.

1 Chronicles 27:4

Over the division

Alternate translation: "In charge of the division"

the second month

"month 2." This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Dodai ... Mikloth

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ahoah

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 8:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

In his division

Alternate translation: "In his group of soldiers"

twenty-four thousand men

"24,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the...month](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [during the second month of each year](#)

ULT

⁴ And over the division [for the second month](#), Dodai the Ahohite and his division, and Mikloth the leader, and over his division, 24,000.

UST

⁴ Dodai, from the clan of Ahohi, was the commander of the group that served [during the second month of each year](#). Mikloth was an important leader in that group also.

1 Chronicles 27:5

the third month

“month 3.” This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Jehoiada

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 11:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The...chief of](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [head](#)
- [the...priest](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benaiah...was](#)
- [son of](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [high](#)
- [the...priest](#)
- [the commander of](#)

ULT

⁵ The third [chief of](#) the army for the third month, [Benaiah the son of Jehoiada](#), the [head priest](#), and over his division, 24,000.

UST

⁵ [Benaiah, son of Jehoiada](#) the [high priest](#), [was the commander of](#) the group that served during the third month of each year.

1 Chronicles 27:6

Ammizabad

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the thirty

“the 30.” This refers to “David’s 30 mightiest soldiers.” (See: [Numbers](#))

over the thirty

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “in charge of the 30 men” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Benaiah](#)
- [the mighty one of](#)
- [his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benaiah was](#)
- [a mighty warrior](#)
- [His son](#)

ULT

⁶ This [Benaiah the mighty one of](#) the 30, and over the 30 and his division, Ammizabad [his son](#).

UST

⁶ [Benaiah was a mighty warrior](#) among David’s 30 greatest soldiers, and he was their leader. [His son](#) Ammizabad was his assistant.

1 Chronicles 27:7

The commander for the fourth month was Asahel brother of Joab

Alternate translation: "Asahel, brother of Joab, was the commander for the fourth month"

the fourth month

"month 4." This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Asahel ... Zebadiah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

his division

Alternate translation: "his military group"

twenty-four thousand men

"24,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother of](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joab's](#)
- [younger brother](#)
- [Asahel's son](#)

ULT

⁷ The fourth for the fourth month, Asahel [brother of Joab](#) and Zebadiah [his son](#) after him, and over his division, 24,000.

UST

⁷ Asahel, [Joab's younger brother](#), was the commander of the group that served during the fourth month of each year. [Asahel's son](#) Zebadiah became the commander after Asahel was killed.

1 Chronicles 27:8

Shamhuth ... Izrah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the fifth month

“month 5.” This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was the commander](#)

ULT

⁸ The fifth for the fifth month, [the chief](#) Shamhuth the Izrahite, and over his division, 24,000.

UST

⁸ Shamhuth, a descendant of Izrah, [was the commander](#) for the fifth month.

1 Chronicles 27:9

the sixth month

“month 6.” This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Ira ... Ikkesh

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 11:28](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Tekoa

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)

ULT

⁹ The sixth for the sixth month, Ira [the son of](#) Ikkesh the Tekoite, and over his division, 24,000.

UST

⁹ The commander for the sixth month was Ira [son of](#) Ikkesh from the city of Tekoa.

1 Chronicles 27:10

The commander for the seventh month was Helez the Pelonite, from the people of Ephraim

Alternate translation: "Helez, the Pelonite, from the people of Ephraim, was the commander for the seventh month"

the seventh month

"month 7." This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Helez the Pelonite

See how you translated the name of this man and the name of his clan in [1 Chronicles 11:27](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

"24,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the tribe of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)

ULT

¹⁰ The seventh for the seventh month, Helez the Pelonite, from [the sons of Ephraim](#), and over his division, 24,000.

UST

¹⁰ The commander for the seventh month was Helez, a member of the clan of Pelon from [the tribe of Ephraim](#).

1 Chronicles 27:11

the eighth month

“month 8.” This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Sibbekai the Hushathite

See how you translated the name of this man and the name of his clan in [1 Chronicles 11:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zerah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 2:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

11 The eighth for the eighth month, Sibbekai the Hushathite, of the Zerahites, and over his division, 24,000.

UST

11 The commander for the eighth month was Sibbekai, a descendant of Zerah from the city of Hushah.

1 Chronicles 27:12

the ninth month

“month 9.” This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part November and the first part December on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Abiezer the Anathothite

See how you translated the name of this man and the name of his clan [1 Chronicles 11:28](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

¹² The ninth for the ninth month, Abiezer the Anathothite, of the Benjaminites, and over his division, 24,000.

UST

¹² The commander for the ninth month was Abiezer from the city of Anathoth in the region belonging to the tribe of Benjamin.

1 Chronicles 27:13

the tenth month

“month 10.” This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Maharai

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 11:30](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Netophah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zerah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 2:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

¹³ The tenth for the tenth month, Maharai the Netophahite, of the Zerahites, and over his division, 24,000.

UST

¹³ The commander for the tenth month was Maharai, a descendant of Zerah from the city of Netophath.

1 Chronicles 27:14

the eleventh month

“month 11.” This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Pirathon

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...month](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the...month](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [a descendant of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)

ULT

14 The 11th for the 11th [month](#), [Benaiah](#) the Pirathonite, from [the sons of Ephraim](#), and over his division, 24,000.

UST

14 The commander for the 11th [month](#) was [Benaiah](#), a [descendant of Ephraim](#) from the city of Pirathon.

1 Chronicles 27:15

the twelfth month

“month 12.” This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Heldai ... Othniel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Netophah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...month](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the...month](#)

ULT

¹⁵ The 12th for the 12th [month](#), Heldai the Netophahite, of Othniel, and over his division, 24,000.

UST

¹⁵ The commander for the 12th [month](#) was Heldai, a descendant of Othniel from the city of Netophath.

1 Chronicles 27:16

Eliezer ... Zichri ... Shephatiah ... Maacah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- the son of
- the son of
- Maacah

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- son of
- son of
- Maacah

ULT

16 And over the tribes of **Israel**: for the Reubenites, a leader, Eliezer **the son of Zichri**; for the Simeonites, Shephatiah **the son of Maacah**;

UST

16 There were certain tribal leaders over each of the tribes of **Israel**: Eliezer, **son of Zicri**, was the leader of the tribe of Reuben. Shephatiah, **son of Maacah**, was the leader of the tribe of Simeon.

1 Chronicles 27:17

Hashabiah ... Kemuel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zadok

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 6:8](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the Levites](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [for Aaron](#)
- [Zadok](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [was the leader of the tribe of Levi](#)
- [Within the tribe of Levi...was the leader of Aaron's descendants](#)
- [Zadok](#)

ULT

17 [for the Levites](#), Hashabiah [the son of](#) Kemuel; [for Aaron](#), Zadok;

UST

17 Hashabiah, [son of Kemuel](#), [was the leader of the tribe of Levi](#). [Within the tribe of Levi](#), Zadok [was the leader of Aaron's descendants](#).

1 Chronicles 27:18

Omri

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Elihu

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 12:20](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Michael

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 7:3](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- for Judah
- from the brothers of
- David
- for Issachar
- Omri
- the son of
- Michael

Translation Words - UST

- David's
- older brother
- was the leader of the tribe of Judah
- Omri
- son of
- Michael
- was the leader of the tribe of Issachar

ULT

18 for Judah, Elihu, from the brothers of David; for Issachar, Omri the son of Michael;

UST

18 Elihu, David's older brother, was the leader of the tribe of Judah. Omri, son of Michael, was the leader of the tribe of Issachar.

1 Chronicles 27:19

Ishmaiah ... Obadiah ... Jerimoth ... Azriel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- Obadiah
- for Naphtali

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- son of (2)
- Obadiah
- was the leader of the tribe of Naphtali

ULT

¹⁹ for Zebulun, Ishmaiah the son of Obadiah; for Naphtali, Jerimoth the son of Azriel;

UST

¹⁹ Ishmaiah, son of Obadiah, was the leader of the tribe of Zebulun. Jerimoth, son of Azriel, was the leader of the tribe of Naphtali.

1 Chronicles 27:20

Hoshea ... Azaziah ... Joel ... Pedaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- for the sons of
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- Ephraim
- Hoshea
- Joel

Translation Words - UST

- Hoshea
- was the leader of the tribe of
- son of
- son of (2)
- Ephraim
- Joel

ULT

²⁰ for the sons of Ephraim, Hoshea the son of Azaziah; for the half tribe of Manasseh, Joel the son of Pedaiah;

UST

²⁰ Hoshea, son of Azaziah, was the leader of the tribe of Ephraim. Joel, son of Pedaiah, was the leader of the western half of the tribe of Manasseh.

1 Chronicles 27:21

Iddo ... Zechariah ... Jaasiel ... Abner

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- Zechariah
- for Benjamin
- Abner

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- son of (2)
- Zechariah
- Abner
- was the leader of the tribe of Benjamin

ULT

²¹ for the half of Manasseh in Gilead, Iddo [the son of Zechariah](#); for Benjamin, Jaasiel [the son of Abner](#);

UST

²¹ Iddo, [son of Zechariah](#), was the leader of the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh, in the region of Gilead. Jaasiel, [son of Abner](#), [was the leader of the tribe of Benjamin](#).

1 Chronicles 27:22

Azarel ... Jeroham

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the chiefs of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- the tribal leaders of
- Israel

ULT

²² for Dan, Azarel [the son of](#) Jeroham.
These, [the chiefs of](#) the tribes of [Israel](#).

UST

²² Azarel, [son of](#) Jeroham, was the leader of the tribe of Dan. These men were [the tribal leaders of](#) the 12 tribes of [Israel](#).

1 Chronicles 27:23

those twenty years old or younger

“people 20 years old or younger” (See: [Numbers](#))

to increase Israel like the stars of heaven

This speaks of the number of people in Israel increasing as if they would become as numerous as the stars. Alternate translation: “to increase the number of people in Israel to be as many as the stars in the heavens” (See: [Simile](#))

increase Israel

Here “Israel” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “increase the population of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the heavens](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [the sky](#)

ULT

²³ And [David](#) did not lift the numbering for sons of 20 years and downwards, because [Yahweh](#) said he would multiply [Israel](#) like the stars of [the heavens](#).

UST

²³ [David](#) did not tell Joab to count the men who were less than twenty years old, because [Yahweh](#) had promised many years previously that there would be as many people [in Israel](#) as there are stars in [the sky](#).

1 Chronicles 27:24

Zeruiah

See how you translated this woman's name in [1 Chronicles 2:16](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Wrath fell on Israel

This speaks of God punishing the people as if his "wrath" were something that fell upon them. Alternate translation: "God punished the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

This number was not written down

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "No one wrote this number down" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [he did...finish](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [King](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joab and his helpers](#)
- [Joab and his helpers](#)
- [they did...finish counting them because Joab knew that Yahweh was angry about the census](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [King](#)
- [David's](#)

ULT

²⁴ [Joab the son of Zeruiah](#) began to count, but [he did](#) not [finish](#). And there was among this wrath on [Israel](#). And the number did not go up into the number of the matters of the days of [King David](#).

UST

²⁴ [Joab and his helpers](#) started to count the men of Israel, but [they did](#) not [finish counting them because Joab knew that Yahweh was angry about the census](#). Yahweh punished the people of [Israel](#) because of this counting, and as a result the officials did not write the total number of Israelite men able to serve in the army on the scroll about [King David's](#) rule.

1 Chronicles 27:25

Azmaveth ... Adiel ... Jonathan ... Uzziah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in charge of

Alternate translation: "responsible for guarding"

was over

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "was in charge of" (See: [Idiom](#))

fortified towers

Alternate translation: "strong towers"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the treasuries of](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [the king's](#)
- [storehouses](#)

ULT

²⁵ And over [the treasuries of the king](#), Azmaveth [the son of](#) Adiel. And over the treasuries in the field, in the cities, and in the villages, and in the towers, Jonathan [the son of](#) Uzziah.

UST

²⁵ Azmaveth, [son of](#) Adiel, was in charge of [the king's storehouses](#). son of Uzziah, was in charge of the agriculture storehouses in other towns and villages in Israel, as well as the watchtowers.

1 Chronicles 27:26

Ezri ... Kelub

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

plowed the land

This means to dig into or break up the dirt before planting.

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the service of](#)
- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [who farmed the land that belonged to the king](#)

ULT

²⁶ And over the ones who do the work of the field, [for the service of](#) the ground, Ezri [the son of](#) Kelub.

UST

²⁶ Ezri [son of](#) Kelub was in charge of the workers [who farmed the land that belonged to the king](#).

1 Chronicles 27:27

Zabdi

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ramathite

This is the name of a person from the city of Ramah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shiphmite

This is the name of a person from the city of Shepham. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

wine cellars

These are the parts of a building that are below the ground and used to store wine.

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the treasuries of](#)
- [the wine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [storehouse](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

ULT

²⁷ And over the vineyards, Shimei the Ramathite. And over what is in the vineyards [for the treasuries of the wine](#), Zabdi the Shiphmite.

UST

²⁷ Shimei from the city of Ramath was in charge of the king's vineyards. from the city of Shepham was in charge of storing the wine from the grapes produced in the vineyards.

1 Chronicles 27:28

Over the

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “In charge of the” (See: [Idiom](#))

sycamore

This is a type of tree. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Baal-Hanan

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Geder

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the treasuries of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [storing the](#)

ULT

28 And over the olive trees and the sycamore trees which were in the lowlands, Baal-Hanan the Gederite. And over [the treasuries of](#) the oil, Joash.

UST

28 Baal-Hanan from the city of Geder was in charge of the groves of olive and sycamore trees in the western foothills. Joash was in charge of [storing the](#) olive oil.

1 Chronicles 27:29

Sharon

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shitrai ... Shaphat ... Adlai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

that were pastured

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that ate grass in the fields" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁹ And over the herd pasturing in Sharon, Shitrai the Sharonite. And over the herd in the valleys, Shaphat [the son of Adlai](#).

UST

²⁹ Shitrai from the Plain of Sharon was in charge of the herds of cattle that grazed there. [son of Adlai](#) was in charge of the cattle in the valleys.

1 Chronicles 27:30

Over the

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “In charge of the” (See: [Idiom](#))

Obil ... Jehdeiah ... Jaziz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ishmaelite

Translate the name of this clan as you did in [1 Chronicles 2:17](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hagrite

Translate the name of this people group as you did in [1 Chronicles 5:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Meronth

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁰ And over the camels, Obil the Ishmaelite. And over the female donkeys, Jehdeiah the Meronothite.

UST

³⁰ Obil, a descendant of Ishmael, was in charge of the camels. from the city of Meronth was in charge of the donkeys.

1 Chronicles 27:31

Jaziz

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hagrite

Translate the name of this people group as you did in [1 Chronicles 5:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

All these officials

Alternate translation: "All of these men"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the flock](#)
- [the chiefs of](#)
- [belonged to King](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the king's flocks of sheep](#)
- [officials were in charge of](#)
- [belonged to King](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

³¹ And over [the flock](#), Jaziz the Hagrite. All these, [the chiefs of](#) the property which [belonged to King David](#).

UST

³¹ Jaziz, a descendant of Hagar, was in charge of [the king's flocks of sheep](#). All of those [officials were in charge of](#) the things that [belonged to King David](#).

1 Chronicles 27:32

Jonathan ... Jehiel ... Hakmoni

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- an advisor
- understanding
- the son of
- the sons of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- David's
- a wise counselor for him
- a wise counselor for him
- son
- son
- king, kingship

ULT

³² And Jonathan, the uncle of David, an advisor, a man of understanding and a scribe, was he. And Jehiel the son of Hakmoni was with the sons of the king.

UST

³² David's uncle Jonathan was a wise counselor for him and an official secretary. son of Hacmoni, taught the king's sons.

1 Chronicles 27:33

Ahithophel ... Hushai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Arkite

This is the name of a tribe or clan. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [an advisor](#)
- [to the king](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the king's](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [was...official counselor](#)

ULT

³³ And Ahithophel, [an advisor to the king](#), and Hushai the Arkite, friend to [the king](#).

UST

³³ Ahithophel was [the king's official counselor](#). from the Ark people group was the king's friend.

1 Chronicles 27:34

Ahithophel ... Jehoiada

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoiada
- the son of
- Benaiah
- and Abiathar
- And the chief of
- of the king
- Joab

Translation Words - UST

- Benaiah's
- son
- Jehoiada
- and later Abiathar became his advisor
- Joab
- king, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

³⁴ And after Ahithophel, [Jehoiada the son of Benaiah and Abiathar](#). And the chief of the army of the king, [Joab](#).

UST

³⁴ [Benaiah's son Jehoiada](#) became the king's advisor after Ahithophel died, and later [Abiathar became his advisor](#). was the chief commander of the army.

1 Chronicles 28

1 Chronicles 28 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. David lectured the people and Solomon on what they should do. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

David's instructions

David gives instructions to the people because he knows that he will not be there when the temple is built. It was common in the ancient Near East for leaders to give instructions to people before they die in preparation or anticipation of their death.

1 Chronicles 28:1

assembled

called together

scheduled work

Work that needs to be repeated, for example every day or every month.

the commanders of thousands and of hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers” or (2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions” See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:1](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

the managers over

The word “over” is used here as an idiom. Alternate translation: “the managers in charge of” (See: [Idiom](#))

property and possessions

These two words share similar meanings and refer to all of the items and lands that the king owned. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the chiefs of](#)
- [the chiefs of \(2\)](#)
- [and the chiefs of](#)
- [and the chiefs of \(2\)](#)
- [and the chiefs of \(3\)](#)
- [and the chiefs of \(4\)](#)
- [and to his sons](#)
- [the mighty ones of](#)
- [strength](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [who served](#)
- [the king](#)
- [belonging to the king](#)

ULT

¹ And [David](#) called to assembly all [the chiefs of Israel: the chiefs of the tribes, and the chiefs of the divisions who served the king, and the chiefs of the thousands, and the chiefs of the hundreds, and the chiefs of all the property and cattle belonging to the king and to his sons](#), with the high officials, and the mighty ones, and to all [the mighty ones of strength](#), to [Jerusalem](#).

UST

¹ [David](#) summoned all [the leaders of Israel to come to Jerusalem. He summoned the leaders of the tribes, the leaders of the groups that worked for the king, the commanders of 1,000 soldiers, the commanders of 100 soldiers, those who were in charge of all the king's property and his livestock, those who taught his sons, all the palace officials, and his mighty soldiers and bravest warriors.](#)

Translation Words - UST

- David...He
- the leaders of
- the leaders of (2)
- the leaders of
- the commanders of (2)
- the commanders of (3)
- those who were in charge of (4)
- those who taught his sons
- bravest
- warriors
- Israel
- Jerusalem
- that worked for
- the king
- the king's...his

1 Chronicles 28:2

rose to his feet

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “stood up” (See: [Idiom](#))

my brothers and my people

These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that David and the people of Israel are family. (See: [Doublet](#))

the ark of the covenant of Yahweh; a footstool for our God

The second phrase defines the first phrase. The “ark of the covenant” is spoke of as Yahweh’s footstool to picture God on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the king](#)
- [our God](#)
- [my brothers](#)
- [and my people](#)
- [my heart](#)
- [a house of](#)
- [rest](#)
- [for the Box of](#)
- [the covenant of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King](#)
- [David](#)
- [where the sacred chest would act as the place of God’s presence](#)
- [My fellow Israelites](#)
- [My fellow Israelites](#)
- [wanted](#)
- [a temple](#)
- [to be a place where we would put](#)
- [the sacred chest](#)
- [symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#)
- [symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#)

ULT

² And [David the king](#) rose to his feet, and he said, “Hear me, [my brothers and my people](#), I had in [my heart](#) to build a [house of rest for the Box of the covenant of Yahweh](#) and for the footstool of the feet of [our God](#). And I have prepared to build.

UST

² [King David](#) stood up and said, “[My fellow Israelites](#), listen to me. I [wanted](#) to build [a temple to be a place where we would put the sacred chest symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#), where the sacred chest would act as the place of God’s presence. And I made plans to build the temple.

1 Chronicles 28:3

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

a temple for my name

Here God refers to himself by his "name." Alternate translation: "a temple for me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

a man of war and have shed blood

"a man accustomed to war and have shed blood." Both descriptions emphasize the same thing, namely that David had killed people. (See: [Parallelism](#))

have shed blood

This refers to killing people. Alternate translation: "have killed people" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a house

Translation Words - UST

- a temple

ULT

³ But God said to me, 'You will not build a house for my name, because a man of war you are and blood you have shed.'

UST

³ But God said to me, 'You are not the one to arrange the building of a temple to honor me, because you have fought battles and have killed people.'

1 Chronicles 28:4

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

chose me ... to be king over Israel forever

One possible meaning is that here David is a metonym for David and his descendants who will rule Israel forever. Alternate translation: “chose me and my descendants ... to be kings over Israel forever” Another is that David will continue to be the king of Israel after he is resurrected from the dead. (See: [Metonymy](#))

all Israel

Alternate translation: “the whole land of Israel” or “all the Israelites”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the God of
- to make king
- Israel
- Israel
- Israel
- the house of
- the house of
- my father
- my father
- my father
- king
- among Judah
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- the God
- to be the king
- to whom we Israelites belong
- Israel
- Israel
- my relatives
- and from my relatives
- from among all my brothers
- my relatives
- and from my relatives
- the kings
- Judah
- Judah

ULT

⁴ Yet Yahweh, the God of Israel, chose me from all of the house of my father to be king over Israel forever, for among Judah he chose for a leader, and in the house of Judah, the house of my father, and among the sons of my father, with me he was pleased to make king over all Israel.

UST

⁴ But Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong, had chosen me and my descendants from all my relatives to be the kings of Israel forever. First he chose Judah to be a leader, and then from among the people of Judah and from my relatives, from among all my brothers, he chose me to be the king over all of Israel.

1 Chronicles 28:5

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

to sit on the throne of

Here “to sit on the throne” means to rule as king. Alternate translation: “to rule over” or “to be the king of” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the kingdom of Yahweh, over Israel

Alternate translation: “Israel, which is Yahweh’s kingdom”

Translation Words - ULT

- my sons
- sons
- my son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- the throne of
- the kingdom of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- his
- them
- sons
- my son
- Solomon
- to be the next king
- to rule
- kingdom of Israel

ULT

⁵ And from all my sons, for many sons Yahweh has given to me, and he chose Solomon my son to sit on the throne of the kingdom of Yahweh over Israel.

UST

⁵ Yahweh has given me many sons, but from them all he chose my son Solomon to be the next king to rule his kingdom of Israel.

1 Chronicles 28:6

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

He said to me

Alternate translation: "God said to me"

my house

The word "house" refers to the temple of Yahweh.

I have chosen him to be my son, and I will be his father

This does not mean that Solomon becomes an actual son of God, but it describes the personal relationship that he and God will have. Alternate translation: "I have chosen to treat him like a son, and I will be like a father to him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [your son](#)
- [for a son](#)
- [my house](#)
- [and my courts](#)
- [for a father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [your son](#)
- [to be like...son](#)
- [my temple](#)
- [and the courtyards around it](#)
- [like...father](#)

ULT

⁶ And he said to me, 'Solomon your son, he himself will build my house and my courts, for I have chosen him for myself for a son, and I myself will be to him for a father.'

UST

⁶ He said to me, 'Solomon your son is the one who will arrange to build my temple and the courtyards around it, because I have chosen him to be like my son and I will be like his father.'

1 Chronicles 28:7

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

my commandments and decrees

These two words basically mean the same thing and refer to everything that Yahweh had commanded. (See: [Doublet](#))

as you are this day

The word “you” here refers to David. Also, the understood word “committed” may be supplied. Alternate translation: “just as you are committed this day” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his kingdom](#)
- [he is strong](#)
- [my commands](#)
- [and my judgments](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his kingdom](#)
- [he continues](#)
- [my laws](#)
- [and decrees](#)

ULT

⁷ And I will establish [his kingdom](#) until forever, if [he is strong](#) to do [my commands and my judgments](#), like this day.'

UST

⁷ I will enable [his kingdom](#) to endure forever if [he continues](#) to obey [my laws and decrees](#), like he is doing now.'

1 Chronicles 28:8

Connecting Statement:

David finishes speaking to the Israelites.

Now then, in the sight of all Israel ... all of you must

Here David is giving a command to all of the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "Now then, in the sight of all Israel, this assembly for Yahweh, and in the presence of our God, I command all of you to" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Now then

This indicates that David starts a new phase in his speech.

all Israel, this assembly for Yahweh

These two phrases have the same meaning and the second describes the first. Even though all of the people of Israel are not present, those present represent all of Israel. Alternate translation: "all you people of Israel, in this assembly for Yahweh" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

in the sight of

The phrase "in the sight of" means that they are all present and listening. Alternate translation: "in the hearing of" (See: [Idiom](#))

keep and try to carry out

The phrase "to carry out" means basically the same thing as "keep." Together the words emphasize importance of doing what God commands. Alternate translation: "carefully obey" (See: [Doublet](#))

your children after you forever

This means that the land will belong to their children and the descendants in the future. The phrase "after you" is an idiom. Alternate translation: "your children and your descendants who will take your place after you die" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [the assembly of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [our God](#)
- [your God](#)
- [keep](#)
- [the commands of](#)
- [good](#)
- [your sons](#)

ULT

⁸ And now, in the eyes of all [Israel](#), [the assembly of Yahweh](#), and in the ears of [our God](#), [keep](#) and seek all [the commands of Yahweh your God](#) in order that you all will possess the [good land](#) and you all will cause [your sons](#) after you to inherit until forever.

UST

⁸ So now, while [all you people of Israel](#), [all of you who belong to Yahweh](#), are watching, and while [God](#) is listening, I [command all you people to carefully obey all the commands of Yahweh our God](#), in order that you may continue to possess this [good land](#) and enable [your descendants](#) to inherit it forever.

Translation Words - UST

- all you people of Israel
- all of you who belong to
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- God
- our God
- I command all you people to carefully obey
- the commands of
- good
- your descendants

1 Chronicles 28:9

the God of your father

David calls himself “your father” because this is a very formal occasion. Alternate translation: “my God” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

with your whole heart

Here the “heart” the represents the whole person. To do something with “your whole heart” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “with complete devotion” or “completely” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))

a willing spirit

Here the “spirit” represents the whole person and emphasizes the person’s will. Alternate translation: “willingly” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

searches all hearts and understands every motivation of everyone’s thoughts

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh knows the thoughts and motives of every person. (See: [Parallelism](#))

all hearts

Here people’s “hearts” represent their feelings and desires. Alternate translation: “searches everyone’s emotions and desires” (See: [Metonymy](#))

If you seek him, he will be found by you

This can be written in active form. Also, this speaks of following Yahweh and having him listen to you as searching for him and finding him. Alternate translation: “If you seek him, you will find him” or “If you try to get Yahweh to pay attention to you, he will do so” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- my son
- understands
- you abandon him
- know
- the God of
- your father
- with a...heart
- hearts
- Yahweh
- seeks
- you seek him

ULT

⁹ And you, Solomon my son, know the God of your father, and serve him with a whole heart and with a willing life, for all hearts Yahweh seeks and all purpose of thoughts understands. If you seek him, he will be found by you, but if you abandon him, he will reject you forever.

UST

⁹ And you, my son Solomon, must know God like I know him, and you must serve him faithfully and because you want to. You must do that because he knows what everyone is thinking and he understands the reasons that people do what they do. If you seek to know him, he will heed your prayers. But if you abandon him, he will abandon you forever.

Translation Words - UST

- my son
- Solomon
- you abandon him
- must know
- God
- like I know him
- faithfully
- what everyone is thinking
- he
- knows
- you seek to know him
- he understands

1 Chronicles 28:10

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

Realize that

Alternate translation: "Be aware that" or "Be sure you remember that"

Be strong and do it

The word "strong" here refers to willpower and strength of character.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- a house
- for the sanctuary
- Be strong

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- a temple for him
- a temple for him
- Be strong

ULT

¹⁰ See, now, that Yahweh has chosen you to build a house for the sanctuary. Be strong and act."

UST

¹⁰ Recognize that Yahweh has chosen you to arrange the building of a temple for him. Be strong and do what he wants you to do."

1 Chronicles 28:11

temple portico

“temple porch” or “temple entrance.” This refers to the columns that supported the roof at the entrance of the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- to Solomon
- his son
- its houses
- and the house of
- the atonement lid

Translation Words - UST

- David
- his son
- to...Solomon
- the buildings of the temple
- and the very holy place which will contain the sacred chest and its lid
- and the very holy place which will contain the sacred chest and its lid

ULT

11 And David gave to Solomon his son the plan of the porch, and its houses, and its treasuries, and its upper rooms, and its inner rooms, and the house of the atonement lid,

UST

11 Then David gave to his son Solomon the scroll which contained the plans for the buildings of the temple, its porch, its storerooms, all the other upper rooms, the holy place, and the very holy place which will contain the sacred chest and its lid.

1 Chronicles 28:12

treasuries

storerooms for valuable things

Translation Words - ULT

- by the Spirit
- for the courts of
- the house of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- for the treasuries of
- God
- the sacred things

Translation Words - UST

- he had
- the courtyards for
- Yahweh's
- temple
- temple's
- including the rooms for the...money
- temple's
- that people dedicated to God

ULT

¹² and the plan of all that was by the Spirit with him for the courts of the house of Yahweh, and for all the chambers all around, for the treasuries of the house of God and for the treasuries of the sacred things,

UST

¹² The scroll also contained the plans that he had for building the courtyards for Yahweh's temple and all the surrounding rooms, including the rooms for the temple's money and the rooms for valuable things that people dedicated to God.

1 Chronicles 28:13

regulations

These were specific rules about how the priests and Levites should work in the temple.

divisions of the priests and Levites

“groups of the priests and Levites.” This refers to the groups in which the priests and other temple workers were organized to fulfill their duties.

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- and the Levites
- the house of
- the house of (2)
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- priests
- and other descendants of Levi
- Yahweh's
- at the temple
- in...temple
- at the temple (2)

ULT

¹³ and for the divisions of the priests and the Levites, and for all the work of the service of the house of Yahweh, and for all the items of the service of the house of Yahweh,

UST

¹³ David gave Solomon instructions for the work groups of priests and other descendants of Levi, about all the work that they must do to serve in Yahweh's temple, and about taking care of all the things they would use in the work at the temple.

1 Chronicles 28:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- for gold
- for gold
- silver

Translation Words - UST

- He had written down...gold
- how much gold
- how much silver...silver

ULT

¹⁴ for gold by weight, for gold for all the items of service and service, for all the items of silver by weight, for all the items of service and service,

UST

¹⁴ He had written down how much gold and how much silver to use to make all the items in the regular functions of the temple. The measurements of the amount of gold and silver were by weight.

1 Chronicles 28:15

according to the use of each lampstand in the service

“determined by what each lampstand would be used for in the service in the temple.” There would be silver lampstands of different weights for different purposes.

Translation Words - ULT

- gold
- gold
- silver

Translation Words - UST

- gold
- gold
- silver...silver

ULT

¹⁵ and the weight for the gold lampstands and their gold lamps by weight of lampstand and lampstand and its lamps, and for the lampstands of silver by weight for the lampstand and its lamps, according to the service of lampstand and lampstand,

UST

¹⁵ There was a list of how much gold to use for making the gold lampstands and the lamps, how much silver to use to make the silver lampstands and lamps,

1 Chronicles 28:16

for every table

The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "the weight of the gold for every other table" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the gold](#)
- [and silver](#)
- [silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#)
- [how much silver](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

¹⁶ and [the gold](#) weight for the tables of the arrangement, for the table and table, [and silver](#) for the tables of [silver](#),

UST

¹⁶ how much [gold](#) to use for making the table on which the priests would put the bread to display before God, [how much silver](#) to make the [silver](#) tables,

1 Chronicles 28:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- pure
- gold
- gold
- silver

Translation Words - UST

- how much...gold
- gold...gold
- pure
- silver...silver

ULT

¹⁷ and the forks and the bowls and the jugs of pure gold and for the basins of gold by weight for basin and basin, and for the basins of silver by weight, for basin and basin,

UST

¹⁷ how much pure gold for the meat forks and the bowls and the cups, how much gold for each gold dish, how much silver for each silver dish,

1 Chronicles 28:18

refined gold

Alternate translation: “purified gold” or “extra valuable gold”

of the gold for the design

The refers to the weight of the gold. Alternate translation: “the weight of the gold for the design” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and for the altar of](#)
- [gold](#)
- [gold](#)
- [the cherubim](#)
- [the Box of](#)
- [the covenant of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#)
- [golden](#)
- [to use to make the altar](#)
- [the...statues of winged creatures](#)
- [the sacred chest](#)
- [symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#)
- [symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#)

ULT

18 [and for the altar of](#) incense, refined [gold](#) by weight, and for the plan of the chariot of [the cherubim, gold](#), that spread out and cover over [the Box of the covenant of Yahweh](#).

UST

18 how much refined [gold to use to make the altar](#) for burning incense, and how to make the [golden statues of winged creatures](#) that would be above the [sacred chest symbolizing the agreement between Yahweh and the people of Israel](#), like a chariot for him.

1 Chronicles 28:19

I have put all this in writing

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "I wrote all of this down" (See: [Idiom](#))

gave me to understand regarding the design

This refers to the detail for the design of the temple. Alternate translation: "helped me to understand the details for his temple" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from the hand of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [with Yahweh's](#)
- [with Yahweh's](#)

ULT

19 The entirety in writing [from the hand of Yahweh](#) upon me, he instructed all of the works of the plan."

UST

19 Then David said, "I have written all these plans [with Yahweh's](#) direction. He has enabled me to understand all the details of his plan for the temple's construction."

1 Chronicles 28:20

strong and brave

These two words basically mean the same thing and emphasize that Solomon must be courageous. (See: [Doublet](#))

Do not be afraid or anxious

The words “afraid” and “anxious” basically mean the same thing and emphasize that Solomon must never give up. Also, this can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: “Be courageous” or “Be confident” (See: [Doublet](#))

is with you

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “will help you” (See: [Idiom](#))

He will not leave you nor abandon you

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will always be with Solomon. Also, this can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “He will always be with you” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [to Solomon](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [is finished](#)
- [his son](#)
- [Be strong](#)
- [Do...fear](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [God, my](#)
- [he will...abandon you](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [his son](#)
- [temple](#)
- [to...Solomon](#)
- [Be strong](#)
- [Do...be afraid](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his](#)
- [our God](#)
- [whom I worship](#)
- [abandon you](#)
- [you finish](#)

ULT

²⁰ And [David](#) said to [Solomon his son](#), “[Be strong](#) and be courageous and act. Do not [fear](#) and do not be dismayed for [Yahweh God, my God](#), is with you. He will not leave you and [he will not abandon you](#) until all the work of the service of [the house of Yahweh is finished](#).”

UST

²⁰ [David](#) also said to [his son Solomon](#), “[Be strong](#) and courageous, and do this work. Do not [be afraid](#) or discouraged, because [Yahweh our God, whom I worship](#), will be with you. He will not fail to help you or [abandon you](#) until [you finish](#) all the work of making [his temple](#).”

1 Chronicles 28:21

Connecting Statement:

David finishes speaking to Solomon.

See, here are the divisions

“Here are the divisions.” David uses the word “see” here to refer back to the listings of the divisions of the Levites and their duties for the temple.

the divisions of the priests and Levites

See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 28:13](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [and the Levites](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [God](#)
- [and the chiefs](#)
- [the people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priests](#)
- [and other descendants of Levi](#)
- [God's](#)
- [at...temple](#)
- [my officials](#)
- [the...people](#)

ULT

²¹ And behold, the divisions of [the priests and the Levites](#) for all the service of [the house of God](#), and with you in all the work will be every willing one with wisdom, for all the service, [and the chiefs](#) and all [the people](#) for all your ways.”

UST

²¹ Look, the groups of [priests and other descendants of Levi](#) are ready to begin their work at [God's temple](#), and every man who has a special skill will help you in all the work. And [my officials](#) and the other [people](#) will obey you, whatever you command them to do.”

1 Chronicles 29

1 Chronicles 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple is finished in this chapter. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Offering

David and the people made a free will offering and dedicated it all to God.

1 Chronicles 29:1

whom alone God has chosen

Alternate translation: "the one whom God has chosen"

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- David
- the assembly
- Solomon
- my son
- God
- God
- is young
- for man
- is the palace
- for Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- King
- David
- the people who had gathered there
- My son
- Solomon
- God
- our God
- is young
- this glorious building
- will...be to honor people
- to honor Yahweh

ULT

¹ And King David said to all the assembly, "Solomon my son, alone God has chosen him, is young and tender, and the work is great; for not for man is the palace but for Yahweh God.

UST

¹ Then King David said to all the people who had gathered there, "My son Solomon, the one whom God has chosen to be the next king, is young and does not have much experience. This endeavor of building the temple is large and significant, because this glorious building will not be to honor people, but to honor Yahweh our God.

1 Chronicles 29:2

Connecting Statement:

David continues talking to the people about his provisions for the building of the temple.

gold for the things to be made of gold ... to be made of wood

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “gold so the craftsmen may make the gold things, silver so they may make the silver things, bronze so they may make the bronze things, iron so they may make the iron things, and wood so they may make the wooden things” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

onyx stones ... stones to be set ... stones for inlaid work of various colors

Each of these phrases refer to different types of stones intended for different purposes.

onyx stones

These are stones with black and white lines that are used to make jewelry.

stones to be set

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “stones for the craftsmen to set” or “stones for mounting”

inlaid work

This refers to the beautiful and decorative designs or patterns formed by the stones.

Translation Words - ULT

- [my power](#)
- [for the house of](#)
- [my God](#)
- [the...gold](#)
- [gold for the](#)
- [and the...silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the things that I possess](#)
- [the resources to build the temple of](#)
- [my God](#)

ULT

² And according to all [my power](#) I have provided [for the house of my God](#), the [gold for the gold, and the silver for the silver](#), and the bronze for the bronze, the iron for the iron, and the wood for the wood, stones of onyx and settings, stones of antimony and colorful things, and all the rare stones and alabaster stones, in abundance.

UST

² From all [the things that I possess](#), I have provided [the resources to build the temple of my God—gold for the things made of gold, silver for the things made of silver, bronze for the things made of bronze, iron for the things made of iron, wood for the things made of wood, and large amounts of onyx for inlays and turquoise and other valuable stones of various colors, and marble.](#)

- gold
- for the things made of gold
- silver

1 Chronicles 29:3

Connecting Statement:

David continues talking to the people about his provisions for the building of the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- in the house of
- my God
- my God
- gold
- and silver
- to the house of
- for the...house
- sacred

Translation Words - UST

- for the temple of
- for the...temple
- holy
- gold
- and silver
- for my God
- my God
- the construction of this temple

ULT

³ And again, in my delighting **in the house of my God**, possessions belonging to me, **gold and silver**, I give **to the house of my God**, above all I have prepared **for the sacred house**:

UST

³ In addition to all these things that I have given **for the holy temple**, I am giving my own treasures of **gold and silver for the temple of my God**, because I very earnestly desire **the construction of this temple for my God**.

1 Chronicles 29:4

Connecting Statement:

David continues talking to the people about his provisions for the building of the temple.

three thousand talents

“3,000 talents.” This can be stated in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “about 100,000 kilograms” or “about 100 metric tons” (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Numbers](#))

gold from Ophir

This was the best quality and most valuable gold.

seven thousand talents

“7,000 talents.” This can be stated in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “about 230,000 kilograms” or “230 metric tons” (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of gold
- silver
- the houses

Translation Words - UST

- gold
- silver
- the buildings

ULT

⁴ 3,000 talents of gold from the gold of Ophir, and 7,000 talents of refined silver, to overlay the walls of the houses,

UST

⁴ I am giving about 100 metric tons of gold from Ophir and 230 metric tons of refined silver to cover the walls of the buildings,

1 Chronicles 29:5

Connecting Statement:

David finishes talking to the people about his provisions for the building of the temple.

gold for the things to be made of gold ... work to be done by craftsmen

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "gold for the craftsmen to make the gold things, silver so they may make the silver things, and things of all kinds for their other work" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

give himself to him

Alternate translation: "give himself to God"

Translation Words - ULT

- gold
- gold for
- and silver
- by the hand of
- his hand
- offers freely
- to Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- for making the other items of gold
- for making the other items of gold
- and silver
- will do
- that he has dedicated himself
- is willing to show by contributing other gifts for the building of the temple
- to Yahweh

ULT

⁵ gold for gold, and silver for silver, and for all the work by the hand of the craftsmen. And who offers freely to fill his hand today to Yahweh?"

UST

⁵ for making the other items of gold and silver, and for the other work the craftsmen will do. So now, I ask you, who is willing to show by contributing other gifts for the building of the temple that he has dedicated himself to Yahweh?"

1 Chronicles 29:6

General Information:

(See: [Numbers](#))

Then freewill offerings were made by the leaders ... and by the officials over the king's work.

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Then the leaders ... and the officials over the king's work made freewill offerings" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the commanders of thousands and hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: "the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers" or (2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: "the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions" See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:1](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

the officials over the king's work

Here the word "over" is used as an idiom. Alternate translation: "the officials in charge of the king's work" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the chiefs of](#)
- [as well as...the chiefs of](#)
- [the chiefs of...and](#)
- [the fathers](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the leaders of](#)
- [the leaders of](#)
- [the commanders of...the commanders of](#)
- [the families](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [that the king wanted done](#)

ULT

⁶ And [the chiefs of the fathers](#) offered freely [as well as the chiefs of](#) the tribes of [Israel and the chiefs of](#) thousands and hundreds, and the chiefs of the work of [the king](#).

UST

⁶ Then [the leaders of the families](#), [the leaders of](#) the tribes of [Israel](#), [the commanders of](#) 1,000 soldiers and [the commanders of](#) 100 soldiers, and the officials who supervised the work [that the king wanted done](#), gave gifts willingly.

1 Chronicles 29:7

five thousand talents ... and 100,000 talents of iron

“5,000 talents and 10,000 darics of gold, 10,000 talents of silver, 18,000 talents of bronze, and 100,000 talents of iron.” These may be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “165 metric tons and 84 kilograms of gold, 330 metric tons of silver, 600 metric tons of bronze, and 3,300 metric tons of iron” (See: [Biblical Money](#))

100,000 talents

“one hundred thousand talents” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the service of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [God](#)
- [gold](#)
- [and silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [For the work](#)
- [at the temple](#)
- [at the temple](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

⁷ And they gave [for the service of the house of God gold](#), 5,000 talents and 10,000 darics, [and silver](#), 10,000 talents, and bronze, 18,000 talents, and iron, 100,000 talents.

UST

⁷ [For the work at the temple](#) they gave 165 metric tons and eighty-four kilograms of [gold](#), 330 metric tons of [silver](#), 600 metric tons of bronze, and 3,300 metric tons of iron.

1 Chronicles 29:8

treasury

This is a place where money and valuable objects are kept.

Jehiel

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 23:8](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Gershon

This was the firstborn son of Levi. See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 23:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the treasury of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the hand of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to Yahweh's temple. Officials stored the stones in the storeroom of the temple](#)
- [to Yahweh's temple. Officials stored the stones in the storeroom of the temple](#)
- [to Yahweh's temple. Officials stored the stones in the storeroom of the temple](#)
- [was in charge of the stones](#)

ULT

⁸ And he who was found with it, stones, they gave [to the treasury of the house of Yahweh](#), under [the hand of](#) Jehiel the Gershonite.

UST

⁸ Any people who owned valuable stones donated them [to Yahweh's temple. Officials stored the stones in the storeroom of the temple](#). Jehiel, a descendant of Gershon, [was in charge of the stones](#).

1 Chronicles 29:9

wholeheartedly

willingly and without any doubt or hesitation

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- And...rejoiced
- rejoiced
- with...joy
- they offered freely
- they offered freely
- with a...heart
- to Yahweh
- King
- David

Translation Words - UST

- The people
- were happy
- was...happy
- was...happy
- their leaders wanted to give those things
- to give those things
- they were happy and enthusiastic
- to Yahweh
- King
- David

ULT

⁹ And the people rejoiced because they offered freely, for with a whole heart they offered freely to Yahweh. And also King David rejoiced with great joy.

UST

⁹ The people were happy to see that their leaders wanted to give those things; they were happy and enthusiastic to give those things to Yahweh. And King David also was very happy.

1 Chronicles 29:10

May you be praised

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "May people praise you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Israel our ancestor

Here "Israel" refers to the man Jacob. Alternate translation: "Jacob our ancestor" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- And...blessed
- Blessed
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the assembly
- God of
- Israel
- our father

Translation Words - UST

- the people there
- David
- He
- Then...praised
- We praise
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the God
- our ancestor
- whom...Jacob worshiped

ULT

10 And David blessed Yahweh in the eyes of all the assembly. And David said, "Blessed are you, Yahweh, God of Israel, our father, from forever and until forever.

UST

10 Then, in front of all the people there, David praised Yahweh. He said, "We praise you, Yahweh, the God whom our ancestor Jacob worshiped. We will praise you forever!

1 Chronicles 29:11

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- in the heavens
- and in the earth

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- You are
- in heaven
- and on the earth

ULT

11 To you, **Yahweh**, the greatness, and the might, and the beauty, and the splendor, and the majesty; indeed, everything **in the heavens and in the earth**. To you, **Yahweh**, the kingdom and lifting yourself above all as head.

UST

11 You, **Yahweh**, are great and powerful; you are glorious, majestic and wonderful. All of this is true because everything **in heaven and on the earth** is yours. **You are** the king of all the world and the exalted ruler of everything.

1 Chronicles 29:12

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

In your hand is power and might

This speaks of Yahweh having control over whether people are powerful or not as if “power and might” were something in hand that he had control over. Alternate translation: “You determine who has power and might” (See: [Metaphor](#))

power and might

The words “power” and “might” mean the same thing and emphasize the greatness of Yahweh’s power. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [are ruling](#)
- [and in your hand](#)
- [and in your hand](#)
- [power](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [reign](#)
- [Because you are](#)
- [you are able](#)
- [very powerful](#)

ULT

¹² And the riches and the glory from before your face, and you [are ruling](#) over all, [and in your hand power](#) and might, [and in your hand](#) to make great and to strengthen all.

UST

¹² Wealth and honor come from you; you [reign](#) over all things. [Because you are very powerful, you are able](#) to cause anyone to be great and be strong.

1 Chronicles 29:13

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

your glorious name

Here Yahweh is represented by his name. Alternate translation: “you who are glorious” or “you because you are glorious” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [our God](#)
- [and praising](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [our God](#)
- [and we praise](#)

ULT

¹³ And now, [our God](#), we are giving thanks to you [and praising](#) the name of your beauty.

UST

¹³ So now, [our God](#), we thank you, [and we praise](#) you for being majestic.

1 Chronicles 29:14

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

But who am I, and who are my people, that we should be able to offer so willingly these things?

David uses this rhetorical question to express that he and his people deserve no praise for giving anything to God. Alternate translation: "My people and I should definitely offer these things to you willingly!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- are my people
- power

Translation Words - UST

- my people
- are...really able

ULT

14 But who am I, and who are my people, that we should retain power to offer freely like this? For from you is everything, and from your hand we have given to you.

UST

14 But I and my people are not really able to give anything to you, because everything that we have comes from you; the things that we have given to you are only the things that we have received from you.

1 Chronicles 29:15

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

we are strangers and travelers before you

This speaks of people's lives being short as if they were travelers only here on earth for a short time. Alternate translation: "For our lives are short and we are like strangers and travelers who pass before you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Our days on the earth are like a shadow

This speaks of people's lives being short as if they were a shadow that is only visible for a short time. A person's lifetime is represented by his "days." Alternate translation: "Our time here on earth is like a shadow that disappears quickly" (See: [Simile](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [our fathers](#)
- [hope](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [our ancestors](#)
- [we know that there is nothing that can enable us to escape dying](#)

ULT

15 For we are foreigners before your face and sojourners, like all [our fathers](#), like the shadow are our days on the earth, and there is no [hope](#).

UST

15 You know that we are like foreigners and strangers to you, as [our ancestors](#) were. Our years here on earth are like a shadow that disappears quickly; [we know that there is nothing that can enable us to escape dying](#).

1 Chronicles 29:16

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- our God
- a house
- your holiness
- from your hand

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- our God
- your temple
- as holy
- but all of it really belongs to you, and you have given it to us

ULT

16 Yahweh our God, all this abundance that we have prepared in order to build for you a house for the name of your holiness, from your hand it is and for you is all.

UST

16 Yahweh our God, we have gathered all these things to use in building your temple to glorify your reputation as holy, but all of it really belongs to you, and you have given it to us. We give it all back to you.

1 Chronicles 29:17

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

you examine the heart

Here the "heart" represents a person's thoughts and feelings. Alternate translation: "you examine people's thoughts" (See: [Metonymy](#))

in the uprightness of my heart

Here the "heart" represents a person's thoughts and feelings. Alternate translation: "because I want to be honest and honorable in everything I do for you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I look with joy as

Alternate translation: "I am joyful as I see"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And I know](#)
- [my God](#)
- [the heart](#)
- [my heart](#)
- [I have offered freely](#)
- [your people](#)
- [with joy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [My God](#)
- [I know](#)
- [us people](#)
- [because I wanted to](#)
- [have given to you](#)
- [I am pleased](#)
- [your people](#)

ULT

¹⁷ [And I know, my God](#), that you examine [the heart](#) and in uprightness are pleased. I, in the uprightness of [my heart](#), [I have offered freely](#) all these, and now [your people](#) are found here, I see [with joy](#), to offer freely to you.

UST

¹⁷ [My God, I know](#) that you test [us people](#), and you are pleased when we do what is right. All these things I [have given to you because I wanted to](#). And now [I am pleased](#) to see that [your people](#) have gathered in this place and generously given things to you.

1 Chronicles 29:18

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

keep this forever in the thoughts of the minds of your people

Alternate translation: “keep this in the thoughts and minds of your people forever”

Direct their hearts toward you

Here the people’s “hearts” represent their thoughts and desires.
Alternate translation: “Direct them to be loyal to you” or “Keep them loyal to you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the God of
- Abraham
- our fathers
- keep
- the heart of
- their hearts
- your people

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- the God whom...worshiped
- our ancestors
- Abraham
- help
- your people
- continue to desire
- them be loyal

ULT

¹⁸ Yahweh, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel—our fathers—keep this forever concerning the purpose of the thoughts of the heart of your people, and direct their hearts to you.

UST

¹⁸ Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worshiped, help your people continue to desire to do things like this forever, and help them be loyal to you.

1 Chronicles 29:19

Connecting Statement:

David finishes his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

Give to Solomon my son a wholehearted desire

The word “desire” may be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “Make my son Solomon fully desire” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And to Solomon](#)
- [my son](#)
- [a...heart](#)
- [your commandments](#)
- [the palace](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [my son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [faithfully and sincerely](#)
- [all of your laws](#)
- [this temple](#)

ULT

¹⁹ [And to Solomon my son](#), give a whole [heart](#) to keep [your commandments](#), your testimonies, and your statutes, and to do all and to build [the palace](#) for which I have prepared.”

UST

¹⁹ Please enable [my son Solomon](#) to [faithfully and sincerely](#) obey [all of your laws](#) and do everything that is needed to build [this temple](#) for which I have provided all these things.”

1 Chronicles 29:20

Now bless Yahweh

Alternate translation: "Now praise Yahweh"

prostrated themselves before the king

This refers to laying down on the ground before someone to show great respect. Alternate translation: "prostrated themselves on the ground to show respect to Yahweh and the king" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- the assembly
- the assembly
- And they bowed down
- and paid homage
- Bless
- And...blessed
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- to Yahweh
- your God
- the God of
- their fathers

Translation Words - UST

- David
- the people who were gathered there
- they all
- They prostrated themselves on the ground
- They prostrated themselves on the ground
- Praise
- So...praised
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- in front of Yahweh
- our God
- the God whom their ancestors also worshiped
- the God whom their ancestors also worshiped

ULT

²⁰ And David said to all the assembly, "Bless Yahweh your God." And all the assembly blessed Yahweh, the God of their fathers. And they bowed down and paid homage to Yahweh and to the king.

UST

²⁰ Then David said to all the people who were gathered there, "Praise Yahweh our God!" So they all praised Yahweh the God whom their ancestors also worshiped. They prostrated themselves on the ground in front of Yahweh and in front of the king.

1 Chronicles 29:21

they made sacrifices to Yahweh and offered burnt offerings to him

The people offered animals to be sacrificed to Yahweh by the priests. Most of the people did not actually kill and sacrifice the animals themselves. (See: [Metonymy](#))

a thousand bulls, a thousand rams, and a thousand lambs

“1,000 bulls, 1,000 rams, and 1,000 lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh
- to Yahweh
- sacrifices
- burnt offerings
- bulls
- rams
- lambs
- and their drink offerings
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- sacrifices
- to Yahweh
- They presented many animals that they completely burned on the altar
- They presented many animals that they completely burned on the altar
- bulls
- rams
- young sheep
- offerings of wine
- for all the people of Israel to eat

ULT

²¹ And they sacrificed to Yahweh sacrifices, and they offered burnt offerings to Yahweh on the day following that day, 1,000 bulls, 1,000 rams, 1,000 lambs, and their drink offerings and sacrifices in abundance for all Israel.

UST

²¹ The next day the people offered sacrifices to Yahweh. They presented many animals that they completely burned on the altar: 1,000 bulls, 1,000 rams, 1,000 young sheep, offerings of wine, and many other sacrifices for all the people of Israel to eat.

1 Chronicles 29:22

before Yahweh

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “in honor of Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#))

a second time

This means that they anointed him and declared him as king. The first time is described in [1 Chronicles 23:1](#).

anointed him with Yahweh’s authority to be ruler

To do something with “Yahweh’s authority” means to do it on his behalf and with his approval. Alternate translation: “anointed him to rule over Israel on Yahweh’s behalf” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they ate](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)
- [with...joy](#)
- [And they made king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [David](#)
- [and Zadok](#)
- [for priest](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the people were joyful](#)
- [and ate](#)
- [to be the high priest](#)
- [in Yahweh’s honor](#)
- [on behalf of Yahweh](#)
- [Then...they declared that...was now the king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [David’s](#)
- [son](#)
- [and they anointed Zadok](#)

ULT

²² [And they ate](#) and drank before the face of [Yahweh](#) that day with great [joy](#). [And they made king](#) a second time [Solomon, the son of David](#), and they anointed [for Yahweh](#) for a leader and [Zadok for priest](#).

UST

²² On that day [the people were joyful and ate](#) and drank [in Yahweh’s honor](#). Then for the second time [they declared that Solomon, David’s son, was now the king](#). They anointed him with olive oil to be the king [on behalf of Yahweh, and they anointed Zadok to be the high priest](#).

1 Chronicles 29:23

Then Solomon sat on Yahweh's throne as king instead of David his father

Here the throne of Israel is referred to as "Yahweh's throne," to emphasize that the people of Israel are Yahweh's people. Sitting on the throne represents ruling as king. Alternate translation: "So Solomon sat on the throne, instead of his father David, as king over Yahweh's people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- the throne of
- Yahweh
- as king
- David
- his father
- and he succeeded
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- the throne which represented Yahweh's reign over Israel
- the throne which represented Yahweh's reign over Israel
- Solomon became king
- his father
- David
- During the following years Solomon prospered
- the Israelite people

ULT

²³ And Solomon sat on the throne of Yahweh as king instead of David his father, and he succeeded. And all Israel listened to him.

UST

²³ So Solomon sat on the throne which represented Yahweh's reign over Israel. Solomon became king in the place of his father David. During the following years Solomon prospered, and all the Israelite people obeyed him.

1 Chronicles 29:24

gave allegiance to King Solomon

Alternate translation: "told King Solomon that they would be faithful to him"

Translation Words - ULT

- the chiefs
- the sons of
- King
- King
- David
- a hand
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- the officers
- King...s
- as their king
- David
- sons
- accepted...and promised to obey
- Solomon...him

ULT

²⁴ And all the chiefs, and the mighty ones, and also all the sons of King David gave a hand under King Solomon.

UST

²⁴ All the officers and mighty warriors, as well as King David's other sons accepted Solomon as their king and promised to obey him.

1 Chronicles 29:25

Yahweh greatly honored Solomon before all Israel ... bestowed on him greater power

These two phrases emphasize that Solomon received special favor from Yahweh, which made him Israel's greatest and most powerful king. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Solomon
- Israel
- Israel
- a kingdom
- king

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- the Israelite people
- Israel
- Solomon
- a...kingdom
- king

ULT

²⁵ And Yahweh made Solomon exceedingly great in the eyes of all Israel. And he bestowed on him majesty of a kingdom which has not been on any king before his face over Israel.

UST

²⁵ Yahweh caused all the Israelite people to highly respect Solomon. Yahweh gave him a splendid kingdom. No king of Israel who served Yahweh received such a kingdom like Solomon did.

1 Chronicles 29:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- Jesse
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Jesse's
- son
- Israel

ULT

²⁶ And David [the son of Jesse](#) reigned over all [Israel](#).

UST

²⁶ [Jesse's son](#) David was the king who ruled all of [Israel](#).

1 Chronicles 29:27

forty years ... thirty-three years

"40 years...33 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [and in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [and...in Jerusalem](#)

ULT

²⁷ And the days which he reigned over [Israel](#), 40 years. In Hebron he reigned seven years, [and in Jerusalem](#) he reigned 33.

UST

²⁷ He ruled over [Israel](#) for 40 years: seven years in the city of Hebron and 33 years [in Jerusalem](#).

1 Chronicles 29:28

at a good old age

Alternate translation: "as an old man"

Translation Words - ULT

- And he died
- good
- Solomon
- his son
- And...reigned

Translation Words - UST

- and he became an old man
- Then he died
- his son
- Solomon
- and...became the king

ULT

28 And he died at a good old age, full of days, riches, and glory. And Solomon his son reigned in his place.

UST

28 He was very rich and very much honored, and he became an old man. Then he died, and his son Solomon became the king in David's place.

1 Chronicles 29:29

written in the history of Samuel the prophet,...and in the history of Gad the prophet

These are written accounts that no longer exist.

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- David
- Samuel
- Nathan
- the prophet

Translation Words - UST

- King
- David
- Samuel
- Nathan
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

ULT

²⁹ And the matters of King David, the first things and the last things, behold, they are written in the words of Samuel the Seer, and in the words of Nathan the prophet, and in the words of Gad the prophet,

UST

²⁹ Take note, a record of all the things that King David did while he ruled, from the beginning to the end, the prophets Samuel, Nathan, and Gad wrote on scrolls.

1 Chronicles 29:30

Recorded there are the deeds

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "There men wrote down the deeds" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the deeds of his rule

Alternate translation: "the things that happened while David was king"

the events that affected him, Israel, and all the kingdoms of the other lands

"all the things that happened to him and to the people of Israel and in the kingdoms of other countries while he was ruling Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his reign](#)
- [the kingdoms of](#)
- [passed over](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his...rule](#)
- [the kingdoms of other countries while he was ruling Israel](#)
- [the things that happened](#)
- [the people of Israel](#)

ULT

³⁰ with all [his reign](#) and his might and the times which [passed over](#) on him, and on [Israel](#), and on all [the kingdoms of the lands](#).

UST

³⁰ They told about [his powerful rule](#), and all [the things that happened](#) to him and to [the people of Israel](#) and in [the kingdoms of other countries while he was ruling Israel](#).



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 32

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 7:28](#); [15:15](#); [16:23](#); [16:28](#); [16:29](#); [16:34](#); [17:13](#); [17:18](#); [18:14](#); [19:2](#); [29:19](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 2:3; 5:1; 5:7; 5:17; 6:32; 6:48; 6:54; 6:74; 6:76; 6:77; 6:78; 6:80; 7:21; 9:1; 9:22; 9:24; 9:26; 9:28; 9:29; 11:3; 11:6; 11:20; 11:21; 11:24; 11:25; 12:1; 13:2; 13:11; 14:2; 14:8; 14:12; 15:2; 15:15; 15:19; 15:27; 16:25; 17:9; 17:14; 17:23; 17:24; 17:27; 19:17; 19:19; 20:2; 20:4; 20:8; 21:6; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:18; 22:19; 23:3; 23:11; 23:13; 23:14; 23:24; 23:27; 23:31; 24:6; 24:19; 26:14; 26:15; 26:16; 26:18; 26:19; 26:28; 26:31; 27:24; 27:29; 28:9; 29:2; 29:5; 29:6; 29:10; 29:30)

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**
or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:14](#); [6:54](#); [10:1](#); [11:10](#); [11:18](#); [11:23](#); [Notes](#); [12:8](#); [12:17](#); [12:33](#); [13:2](#); [13:6](#); [14:8](#); [15:18](#); [16:19](#); [16:29](#); [16:32](#); [16:37](#); [16:42](#); [17:1](#); [17:5](#); [17:21](#); [21:4](#); [21:12](#); [21:20](#); [21:23](#); [22:9](#); [25:9](#); [26:21](#); [26:25](#); [28:8](#); [28:19](#); [29:10](#); [29:22](#); [29:30](#))

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story
 - > * Setting includes:
 - > * where the story takes place
 - > * when the story takes place
 - > * who is present when the story begins
 - > * what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son** (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain, rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said"

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

And Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"When Abram was 86 years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done,** added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things,** so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases\]\]](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:1; 5:2; 11:2; 11:4; 18:8; 20:1; 21:29; 21:30; 22:4](#))

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong,” which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal]]
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter,” “45 centimeters,” or “50 centimeters.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.

When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**.”

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**.”

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

[¹] two and a half cubits
[²] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:23](#))

Biblical Money

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

- (1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
- (2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
- (3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
- (4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

█ The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

█ "The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**."

Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

█ "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

█ "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

█ [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii**,¹ and the other, **50**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)

█ ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)
[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 19:6](#); [20:2](#); [21:25](#); [22:14](#); [29:4](#); [29:7](#))

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."
(Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest ...**"

And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you."
(Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming**,
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations]]

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, **“Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

And he commanded him **to tell no one**, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him, **“Tell no one.** But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Quotes within Quotes](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:4](#); [17:6](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

“He has one people **very spread out**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

- English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

“... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**.”

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, “Master!**
We are perishing!”

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:17](#); [11:18](#); [12:18](#); [17:5](#); [28:1](#); [28:2](#); [28:7](#); [28:8](#); [28:20](#); [29:12](#))

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis¹ occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will sinners stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[¹] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 2:13; 2:14; 2:15; 5:18; 9:6; 9:9; 9:13; 10:6; 16:12; 16:16; 23:11; 23:19; 23:20; 24:7; 24:8; 24:9; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:13; 24:14; 24:15; 24:16; 24:17; 24:18; 25:9; 25:10; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 25:17; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:25; 25:26; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 26:2; 26:3; 26:4; 26:5; 26:11; 26:17; 26:18; 28:7; 28:16; 28:18)

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**”

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

“They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa.”

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:24](#); [5:1](#); [7:23](#); [10:8](#); [11:14](#); [17:11](#); [28:3](#))

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Alas" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
- (2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
- (3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
- (4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

“You **are** such a worthless person!”

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word “wow” shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were extremely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak.” (Mark 7:37 ULT)

“They were extremely astonished, saying, “**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.””

Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)

“**Oh no,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

“**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

“**Help,** Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, “**Alas,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:15](#))

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

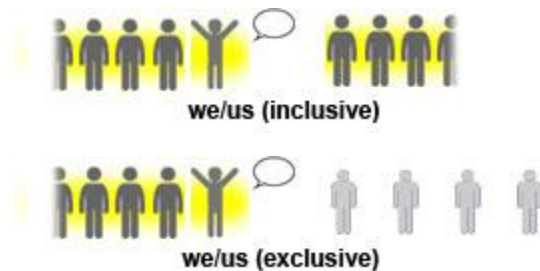
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

We have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:20](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:17](#); [17:19](#); [17:23](#); [17:25](#); [17:27](#); [21:8](#); [28:9](#))

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 22:18](#); [22:19](#))

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

Hebrew Months

Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Aviv, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Aviv — (This month was called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Aviv 10; the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv — This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars.

Sivan — This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz — This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars.

Ab — This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars.

Elul — This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars.

Ethanim — This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul — This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars.

Kislev — This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars.

Tebeth — This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars.

Shebat — This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rainfall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars.

Adar — This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples From the Bible

Today you are going out, in **the month of Aviv**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from evening of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until evening of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

(2) Use the names for months that people know.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the Hebrew name of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of Aviv**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15b ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in **the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29a ULT)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

(2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurs in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in **the day I choose in early autumn**¹ you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

^[1] The Hebrew says, "the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:15; 27:2; 27:4; 27:5; 27:7; 27:8; 27:9; 27:10; 27:11; 27:12; 27:13; 27:14; 27:15](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 1:14; 1:15; 1:16; 1:17; 1:20; 1:24; 1:28; 1:32; 1:33; 1:34; 1:38; 1:39; 1:40; 1:41; 1:43; 1:44; 1:45; 1:46; 1:47; 1:48; 1:49; 1:50; 1:51; 1:52; 1:53; 1:54; 2:1; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:10; 2:11; 2:12; 2:13; 2:14; 2:15; 2:16; 2:17; 2:18; 2:19; 2:20; 2:21; 2:22; 2:23; 2:24; 2:25; 2:26; 2:27; 2:28; 2:29; 2:30; 2:31; 2:32; 2:33; 2:34; 2:35; 2:36; 2:37; 2:38; 2:39; 2:40; 2:41; 2:42; 2:43; 2:44; 2:45; 2:46; 2:47; 2:48; 2:49; 2:50; 2:51; 2:52; 2:54; 2:55; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:5; 3:6; 3:7; 3:8; 3:9; 3:10; 3:17; 3:18; 3:19; 3:20; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 3:24; 4:1; 4:2; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 4:7; 4:8; 4:9; 4:11; 4:12; 4:13; 4:14; 4:15; 4:16; 4:17; 4:18; 4:19; 4:20; 4:21; 4:22; 4:23; 4:24; 4:25; 4:26; 4:28; 4:29; 4:30; 4:31; 4:32; 4:33; 4:34; 4:35; 4:36; 4:37; 4:39; 4:41; 4:42; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:10; 5:11; 5:14; 5:15; 5:18; 5:23; 5:24; 5:26; 6:1; 6:2; 6:3; 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 6:9; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:14; 6:17; 6:19; 6:20; 6:21; 6:22; 6:23; 6:24; 6:25; 6:26; 6:27; 6:28; 6:29; 6:30; 6:33; 6:34; 6:35; 6:36; 6:37; 6:38; 6:39; 6:40; 6:41; 6:42; 6:43; 6:44; 6:45; 6:46; 6:50; 6:51; 6:52; 6:53; 6:57; 6:58; 6:59; 6:60; 6:67; 6:68; 6:69; 6:70; 6:71; 6:72; 6:73; 6:74; 6:75; 6:76; 6:77; 6:78; 6:79; 6:80; 6:81; 7:1; 7:2; 7:3; 7:6; 7:7; 7:8; 7:10; 7:11; 7:12; 7:13; 7:14; 7:15; 7:16; 7:17; 7:18; 7:19; 7:20; 7:21; 7:23; 7:24; 7:25; 7:26; 7:27; 7:28; 7:29; 7:30; 7:31; 7:32; 7:33; 7:34; 7:35; 7:36; 7:37; 7:38; 7:39; 7:40; 8:1; 8:2; 8:3; 8:4; 8:5; 8:6; 8:7; 8:8; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 8:12; 8:13; 8:14; 8:15; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 8:20; 8:21; 8:22; 8:23; 8:24; 8:25; 8:26; 8:27; 8:29; 8:30; 8:31; 8:32; 8:33; 8:34; 8:35; 8:36; 8:37; 8:38; 8:39; 8:40; 9:4; 9:5; 9:6; 9:7; 9:8; 9:10; 9:11; 9:12; 9:14; 9:15; 9:16; 9:17; 9:19; 9:20; 9:21; 9:31; 9:32; 9:35; 9:36; 9:37; 9:38; 9:39; 9:40; 9:41; 9:42; 9:43; 9:44; 10:2; 10:10; 10:11; 11:6; 11:11; 11:12; 11:13; 11:15; 11:22; 11:27; 11:28; 11:29; 11:30; 11:31; 11:32; 11:33; 11:34; 11:35; 11:36; 11:37; 11:38; 11:39; 11:40; 11:41; 11:42; 11:43; 11:44; 11:45; 11:46; 11:47; 12:3; 12:4; 12:5; 12:6; 12:7; 12:8; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:12; 12:13; 12:18; 12:20; 12:27; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:9; 13:11; 13:13; 14:1; 14:4; 14:5; 14:6; 14:7; 14:9; 14:11; 14:14; 14:16; 15:4; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:11; 15:17; 15:18; 15:19; 15:20; 15:21; 15:22; 15:23; 15:24; 15:25; 15:27; 15:29; 16:5; 16:6; 16:38; 16:41; 18:3; 18:8; 18:9; 18:10; 18:12; 18:15; 18:16; 18:17; 19:1; 19:2; 19:6; 19:7; 19:11; 19:16; 20:4; 20:5; 20:6; 21:15; 23:6; 23:7; 23:8; 23:9; 23:10; 23:11; 23:12; 23:13; 23:15; 23:16; 23:17; 23:18; 23:19; 23:20; 23:21; 23:22; 23:23; 24:3; 24:6; 24:7; 24:8; 24:9; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:13; 24:14; 24:15; 24:16; 24:17; 24:18; 24:20; 24:24; 24:25; 24:26; 24:27; 24:29; 24:30; 25:1; 25:2; 25:3; 25:4; 25:6; 25:9; 25:10; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 25:17; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 26:1; 26:2; 26:3; 26:4; 26:5; 26:7; 26:8; 26:9; 26:10; 26:11; 26:14; 26:15; 26:16; 26:19; 26:21; 26:22; 26:23; 26:24; 26:25; 26:28; 26:29; 26:30; 26:31; 27:2; 27:3; 27:4; 27:5; 27:6; 27:7; 27:8; 27:9; 27:10; 27:11; 27:12; 27:13; 27:14; 27:15; 27:16; 27:17; 27:18; 27:19; 27:20; 27:21; 27:22; 27:24; 27:25; 27:26; 27:27; 27:28; 27:29; 27:30; 27:31; 27:32; 27:33; 27:34; 29:8)

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
 - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
 - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame. (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
or:

Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 10:1](#); [10:7](#); [10:11](#); [11:1](#); [12:8](#); [13:5](#); [13:8](#); [15:3](#); [15:28](#); [16:22](#); [16:36](#); [19:17](#); [21:3](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:15](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

▮ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

▮ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

▮ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

▮ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

▮ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

▮ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

▮ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

▮ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

▮ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

▮ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

▮ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

▮ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 8:29](#); [10:14](#); [11:1](#); [11:5](#); [11:23](#); [12:18](#); [12:22](#); [13:2](#); [13:6](#); [14:2](#); [14:10](#); [15:13](#); [15:16](#); [16:11](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [17:2](#); [17:3](#); [17:8](#); [17:10](#); [17:17](#); [19:5](#); [21:8](#); [21:15](#); [22:16](#); [22:18](#); [26:26](#); [27:2](#); [27:6](#); [27:25](#); [27:28](#); [27:30](#); [28:1](#); [28:2](#); [28:8](#); [28:9](#); [28:19](#); [28:20](#); [29:6](#); [29:22](#))

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events\]\]](#)

Examples From the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

And it happened that in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

Now in those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
- (3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
- (4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him ... (Mark 2:14a ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector’s tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as “another time,” or “someone.”

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

After that, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.

Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-participants]]

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:1](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am **the alpha and the omega**,” says the Lord God,
“the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:33](#); [16:36](#); [21:2](#); [25:8](#); [26:13](#))

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.

(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him.**

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad.** (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick.**

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay.** You are our **potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood.** You are our **carver;** and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string.** You are the **weaver;** and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#); [1 Chronicles 2:3](#); [10:9](#); [11:2](#); [11:19](#); [12:18](#); [12:23](#); [13:4](#); [13:10](#); [14:15](#); [17:6](#); [17:8](#); [17:9](#); [17:11](#); [17:17](#); [19:6](#); [19:13](#); [21:17](#); [22:10](#); [22:19](#); [24:4](#); [25:5](#); [28:2](#); [28:6](#); [28:9](#); [29:12](#); [29:15](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment?**”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:3](#); [4:10](#); [4:38](#); [5:1](#); [5:18](#); [6:10](#); [6:39](#); [9:19](#); [10:4](#); [10:5](#); [10:11](#); [11:4](#); [11:8](#); [13:14](#); [14:11](#); [15:1](#); [15:13](#); [15:29](#); [16:2](#); [16:3](#); [16:8](#); [16:10](#); [16:12](#); [16:14](#); [16:15](#); [16:23](#); [16:29](#); [16:30](#); [16:31](#); [16:35](#); [17:2](#); [17:7](#); [17:8](#); [17:10](#); [17:12](#); [17:14](#); [17:15](#); [17:21](#); [17:24](#); [17:25](#); [18:3](#); [19:4](#); [19:16](#); [20:1](#); [20:3](#); [21:5](#); [21:12](#); [21:13](#); [21:14](#); [21:15](#); [21:17](#); [21:19](#); [21:23](#); [21:30](#); [22:5](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:11](#); [22:18](#); [22:19](#); [23:13](#); [27:23](#); [27:24](#); [28:3](#); [28:4](#); [28:5](#); [28:9](#); [29:13](#); [29:17](#); [29:18](#); [29:21](#); [29:23](#))

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

The rich must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

Blessed are **people who are meek**.

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 10:4](#))

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

▮ Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

▮ That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

▮ When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

▮ Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died.
(Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 2:4; 3:4; 4:27; 4:42; 5:18; 5:21; 6:62; 7:2; 7:4; 7:5; 7:7; 7:9; 7:11; 7:40; 8:40; 9:6; 9:9; 9:13; 9:22; 9:25; 10:6; 10:12; 11:15; 11:18; 11:20; 11:42; 12:4; 12:14; 12:18; 12:20; 12:23; 12:24; 12:25; 12:26; 12:27; 12:28; 12:29; 12:30; 12:31; 12:32; 12:33; 12:34; 12:35; 12:36; 12:37; 12:39; 13:1; 13:14; 15:4; 15:5; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:25; 16:15; 16:38; 18:4; 18:5; 18:12; 19:6; 19:7; 19:18; 21:5; 21:14; 21:25; 22:14; 23:3; 23:4; 23:24; 23:27; 24:4; 25:5; 25:7; 25:9; 25:10; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 25:17; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:25; 25:26; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 26:8; 26:9; 26:11; 26:17; 26:26; 26:30; 26:31; 26:32; 27:1; 27:2; 27:4; 27:5; 27:6; 27:7; 27:8; 27:9; 27:10; 27:11; 27:12; 27:13; 27:14; 27:15; 27:23; 28:1; 29:4; 29:6; 29:7; 29:21; 29:27)

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 2:13; 2:14; 2:15; 8:39; 12:9; 12:10; 12:15; 15:18; 16:5; 23:11; 23:19; 23:20; 24:7; 24:8; 24:9; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:13; 24:14; 24:15; 24:16; 24:17; 24:18; 24:23; 25:9; 25:10; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 25:17; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:25; 25:26; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 26:2; 26:3; 26:4; 26:5; 26:11; 26:31; 27:2; 27:4; 27:5; 27:7; 27:8; 27:9; 27:10; 27:11; 27:12; 27:13; 27:14; 27:15)

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:2](#); [12:18](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [16:20](#); [16:23](#); [17:11](#); [17:14](#); [17:18](#); [17:20](#); [17:27](#); [22:13](#); [28:2](#); [28:3](#); [28:8](#); [28:9](#); [28:20](#); [29:25](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

Sin is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:17](#); [16:27](#); [16:31](#); [16:32](#); [16:33](#))

Poetry

Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

This page answers the question: *What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

In poetry we commonly find:

- many figures of speech such as Apostrophe
- arrangements of clauses into particular patterns such as:
 - parallel lines (See [Parallelism](#))
 - acrostics (beginning lines with successive letters of the alphabet)
 - chiasms (in which the first line relates to the last line, the second to the next-to-last line, etc.):
 - > You should not give what is holy to the dogs,
 - >
 - >> and should not throw your pearls in front of the pigs.
 - >>
 - >> Otherwise they will trample them under their feet,
 - >
 - > and having turned, they might tear you to pieces. (Matt 7:6 ULT)

- repetition of some or all of a line:

Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his hosts. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars. (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- lines of similar length:

Listen to my call to you,
Yahweh; think about my groanings.
Listen to the sound of my call, my King and my God,
for it is to you that I pray. (Psalm 5:1-2 ULT)

- the same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines:

“Twinkle, twinkle little **star**. How I wonder what you **are**.” (from an English rhyme)

- the same sound repeated many times:

“Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater” (from an English rhyme)

We also find:

- old words and expressions
- dramatic imagery
- different use of grammar — including:
 - incomplete sentences

- lack of connective words

Some places to look for poetry in your language

Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
 Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
 Prayers, blessings, and curses
 Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language, you may need to write it without the poetry.
- Different languages use different poetic devices. A poetic device that conveys elegance or emotion in a biblical language may be confusing or misunderstood in another language.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples From the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely made up of poetry.

... for you saw my affliction; you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7b ULT)

This example of [Parallelism](#) has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations; vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High. (Psalm 7:8 ULT)

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See [Parallelism](#).)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins; let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13a ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See [Personification](#).)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good,
 for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
 Oh, give thanks to the God of gods,
 for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
 Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords,
 for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.

(Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

- (1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
- (2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
- (3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked, or stand in the pathway with sinners, or sit in the assembly of mockers. But his delight is in the law of Yahweh, and on his law he meditates day and night. (Psalm 1:1-2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1-2.

- (1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

“Happy is the person not encouraged **to sin**, Disrespect for God he will not **begin**, To those who laugh at God he is **no kin**. God is his constant **delight**, He does what God says **is right**, He thinks of it all day **and night**.”

- (2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people nor stop along the road to speak with sinners nor join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather, he takes great joy in Yahweh’s law, and he meditates on it day and night.

- (3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or join with those who do not respect God. Instead, they love to obey Yahweh’s law, and they think about it all the time.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Symbolic Language](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:23](#))

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are “layers” of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word “I,” the listener needs to know whether “I” refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.

Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes.

They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.

Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples From the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, “I, however, was indeed born a citizen.” (Acts 22:28b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, “Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will lead many astray.” (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, “... I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **“He is my brother.”**’” (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: **'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'**"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, "There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar**." (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king. He said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept in custody for the emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.'**"

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, 'During the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'" (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:4](#); [17:6](#))

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves.” Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples From the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself**, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

If I should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

“If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)

“Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

“**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

“**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 22:7](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed ...

Are you insulting the high priest of God? (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:19](#); [13:12](#); [17:6](#); [17:16](#); [17:18](#); [17:21](#); [19:3](#); [21:3](#); [21:17](#); [29:14](#))

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:11](#); [27:23](#); [29:15](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:3](#); [16:29](#); [21:16](#); [21:21](#); [21:27](#); [29:20](#))

Symbolic Language

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

█ Eat this scroll; then go speak to the house of Israel. (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of Ezekiel reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

Purposes of Symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples From the Bible

█ After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the bolded symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

█ This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

█ I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man ... He had **seven**

stars in his right hand and **a sword with two sharp edges** was coming out of his mouth. As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars that you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: **The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12-13a, 16a, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, ¹ terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; ² it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. ³

The footnotes would look like:

[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.

[2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.

[3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:16](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:10](#); [5:10](#); [6:15](#); [10:12](#); [11:5](#); [12:8](#); [12:40](#); [16:10](#); [19:17](#); [20:2](#); [20:3](#); [20:8](#); [22:19](#); [28:8](#); [28:9](#); [29:15](#))

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰ See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹ ^[1]

^[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] ^[2]

^[2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” ¹⁶ ^[1]

^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” ¹⁶ ^[1]

^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. ¹⁶ If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” ^[1]

^[1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:7](#))

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)
[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:21](#); [11:8](#); [13:8](#); [15:16](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [15:21](#); [15:28](#); [16:5](#); [16:42](#); [21:23](#); [25:1](#); [25:6](#); [27:28](#))

Verse Bridges

Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

This page answers the question: *Why are some verse numbers combined in the UST, such as "3-5" or "17-18"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg\]\]](https://en.ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg)

29 These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, 30 Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

Examples From the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

⁴⁻⁵ Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

⁴ However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), ⁵ if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

¹⁶⁻¹⁷ But Yahweh said to him, "I will not permit you to eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are good to do and what actions are evil to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on the day you eat it you will surely die. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the park." (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

¹⁶ Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. ¹⁷ But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die." (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

(1) If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in [translationStudio](https://www.unfoldingword.com/translationstudio/).

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

2 You must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. 3 You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 ULT)

2-3 You must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:13](#); [4:17](#); [6:78](#); [6:79](#); [8:17](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#); [8:22](#); [8:26](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 35

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the [priest](#) priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 7:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 1:5
- Numbers 16:45

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:5** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:9** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:7** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0175, G00020

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:3](#); [6:49](#); [6:50](#); [6:54](#); [6:57](#); [12:27](#); [15:4](#); [23:13](#); [23:28](#); [23:32](#); [24:1](#); [24:19](#); [24:31](#); [27:17](#))

Abiathar

Definition:

Abiathar was a high priest for the nation of Israel during the time of King David.

- When King Saul killed the priests, Abiathar escaped and went to David in the wilderness.
- Abiathar and another high priest named Zadok served David faithfully throughout his reign.
- After David's death, Abiathar helped Adonijah try to become king instead of Solomon.
- Because of this, King Solomon removed Abiathar from the priesthood.

(See also: [Zadok](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [David](#), [Solomon](#), [Adonijah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- 1 Kings 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:22-23
- 2 Samuel 17:15
- Mark 2:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0054, G00080

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:11](#); [18:16](#); [24:6](#); [27:34](#))

Abijah

Facts:

Abijah was a king of Judah who reigned from 915 to 913 B.C. He was a son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament:

- Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:3
- 1 Samuel 8:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:2
- 2 Chronicles 13:19
- Luke 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0029, G00070

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:24](#); [3:10](#); [6:28](#); [7:8](#); [24:10](#))

Abimelech

Facts:

Abimelech was a Philistine king over the region of Gerar during the time when Abraham and Isaac were living in the land of Canaan.

- Abraham deceived King Abimelech by telling him that Sarah was his sister rather than his wife.
- Abraham and Abimelech made an agreement regarding ownership of wells at Beersheba.
- Many years later, Isaac also deceived Abimelech and the other men of Gerar by saying that Rebekah was his sister, not his wife.
- King Abimelech rebuked Abraham, and later Isaac, for lying to him.
- Another man by the name of Abimelech was a son of Gideon and a brother of Jotham. Some translations may use a slightly different spelling of his name to make it clear that he is a different person from King Abimelech.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Beersheba](#), [Gerar](#), [Gideon](#), [Jotham](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 11:21
- Genesis 20:3
- Genesis 20:5
- Genesis 21:22
- Genesis 26:11
- Judges 9:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0040

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 18:16](#))

Abner

Definition:

Abner was a cousin of King Saul in the Old Testament.

- Abner was the chief commander of Saul's army, and introduced young David to Saul after David killed Goliath the giant.
- After King Saul's death, Abner appointed Saul's son Ishbosheth as king in Israel, while David was appointed king in Judah.
- Later, Abner was treacherously killed by David's chief commander, Joab.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:26-28
- 1 Kings 2:5-6
- 1 Kings 2:32
- 1 Samuel 17:55-56
- 2 Samuel 3:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0074

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 26:28](#); [27:21](#))

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:27](#); [1:28](#); [1:32](#); [1:34](#); [16:16](#); [29:18](#))

Absalom

Facts:

Absalom was the third son of King David. He was known for his handsome appearance and fiery temperament.

- When Absalom's sister Tamar was raped by their half-brother, Amnon, Absalom made a plan to have Amnon killed.
- After the murder of Amnon, Absalom fled to the region of Geshur (where his mother Maacah was from) and stayed there three years. Then King David sent for him to come back to Jerusalem, but did not allow Absalom to come into his presence for two years.
- Absalom turned some of the people against King David and led a revolt against him.
- David's army fought against Absalom and killed him. David was very grieved when this happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Geshur](#), [Amnon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 1 Kings 1:6
- 2 Samuel 15:2
- 2 Samuel 17:1-4
- 2 Samuel 18:18
- Psalm 3:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0053

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:2](#))

Adam

Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), descendant, Eve, image of God, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:9** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **1:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **2:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **2:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:8** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:21](#); [17:17](#); [21:13](#); [29:1](#))

Adonijah

Definition:

Adonijah was the fourth son of King David.

- Adonijah tried to take over as king of Israel after the deaths of his brothers Absalom and Amnon.
- God, however, had promised that David's son Solomon would be king, so Adonijah's plot was overthrown and Solomon was made king.
- When Adonijah tried a second time to make himself king, Solomon put him to death.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0138

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 3:2](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:11](#); [17:8](#); [17:10](#); [21:12](#); [21:13](#); [22:9](#))

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 13:1](#); [26:14](#); [27:32](#); [27:33](#))

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of "afflicting oneself" or "afflicting one's soul" means to abstain from eating food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "afflict" someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:6
- Amos 5:12
- Colossians 1:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:22](#); [21:17](#))

Ahaz

Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshiping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 28:1
- 2 Kings 16:20
- Hosea 1:1
- Isaiah 1:1
- Isaiah 7:4
- Matthew 1:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0271

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:13](#); [8:35](#); [8:36](#); [9:42](#))

Ahaziah

Facts:

Ahaziah was the name of two kings: one ruled over the kingdom of Israel, and the other ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Judah's King Ahaziah was the son of King Jehoram. He reigned for one year (841 B.C.) and then was killed by Jehu. Ahaziah's young son Joash eventually took his place as king.
- Israel's King Ahaziah was the son of King Ahab. He reigned for two years (850-49 B.C.). He died from injuries suffered in a fall at his palace, and his brother Joram became king.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jehu](#), [Ahab](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Joash](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 22:39-40
- 2 Chronicles 22:2
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Kings 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0274

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:11](#))

Ahijah

Facts:

Ahijah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament. The following are some of these men:

- Ahijah was the name of a priest in the time of Saul.
- A man named Ahijah was a secretary during the reign of King Solomon.
- Ahijah was the name of a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.
- The father of King Baasha of Israel was also named Ahijah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Baasha, Shiloh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 21:21-22
- 1 Samuel 14:19
- 2 Chronicles 10:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0281

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:25](#); [8:7](#); [11:36](#); [26:20](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:49](#); [16:40](#); [21:18](#); [21:22](#); [21:26](#); [21:29](#); [22:1](#); [28:18](#))

Amaziah

Facts:

Amaziah became king over the kingdom of Judah when his father, King Joash, was murdered.

- King Amaziah reigned over Judah for twenty-nine years, from 796 BC to 767 BC.
- He was a good king, but he did not destroy the high places where idols were worshiped.
- Amaziah eventually put to death all the men who were responsible for the murder of his father.
- He defeated the rebellious Edomites and brought them back under the control of the Kingdom of Judah.
- He challenged King Jehoash of Israel to a battle, but lost. Part of the walls of Jerusalem were broken down and the silver and gold vessels of the temple were stolen.
- Years later King Amaziah turned away from Yahweh and certain men in Jerusalem plotted together and killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Joash, [Edom](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10-12
- 1 Chronicles 4:34
- 2 Chronicles 25:9-10
- 2 Kings 14:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0558

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:12](#); [4:34](#); [6:45](#))

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0543, G02810

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:36](#))

Ammon, Ammonite

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group that lived on the east side of the Jordan River across from the Israelites.

- The book of Genesis reports that the Ammonite nation was descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.
- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: curse, [Jordan River](#), Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:2
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 2:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:39](#))

Amnon

Facts:

Amnon was the oldest son of King David. His mother was King David's wife Ahinoam.

- Amnon raped his half-sister Tamar, who was also Absalom's sister.
- Because of this, Absalom plotted against Amnon and had him killed.

(See also: [David](#), [Absalom](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Samuel 13:2
- 2 Samuel 13:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0550

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:1](#); [4:20](#))

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:8** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:9** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0567

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:14](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 2:17; 2:21; 2:23; 2:24; 2:42; 2:44; 2:45; 2:49; 2:50; 2:51; 2:52; 2:55; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:11; 4:12; 4:14; 4:17; 4:18; 4:19; 4:21; 4:38; 5:1; 5:13; 5:15; 5:24; 5:25; 6:19; 7:2; 7:4; 7:7; 7:9; 7:11; 7:14; 7:22; 7:31; 7:40; 8:6; 8:10; 8:13; 8:28; 8:29; 9:9; 9:13; 9:19; 9:33; 9:34; 9:35; 12:17; 12:28; 12:30; 15:12; 17:11; 17:13; 19:2; 19:3; 21:17; 22:10; 23:9; 23:11; 23:24; 24:2; 24:4; 24:6; 24:19; 24:30; 24:31; 25:3; 25:6; 26:6; 26:10; 26:13; 26:21; 26:26; 26:31; 26:32; 27:1; 28:4; 28:6; 28:9; 29:6; 29:10; 29:15; 29:18; 29:20; 29:23)

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:31](#); [10:10](#); [11:25](#); [17:9](#); [18:6](#); [18:13](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [26:10](#); [26:32](#))

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, [covenant](#), atonement, holy place, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 9:5
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 7:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H1285, H3068

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:31](#); [13:3](#); [13:5](#); [13:6](#); [13:7](#); [13:9](#); [13:10](#); [13:12](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [15:1](#); [15:2](#); [15:3](#); [15:12](#); [15:14](#); [15:15](#); [15:23](#); [15:24](#); [15:25](#); [15:26](#); [15:27](#); [15:28](#); [15:29](#); [16:1](#); [16:4](#); [16:6](#); [16:37](#); [17:1](#); [22:19](#); [28:2](#); [28:18](#))

Asa

Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913 B.C. to 873 B.c.

- King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshiping Yahweh again.
- Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
- Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease that eventually killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:14-16
- 1 Kings 15:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 14:3
- Jeremiah 41:9
- Matthew 1:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0609

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:10](#); [9:16](#))

Asaph

Facts:

Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

- Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
- Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
- Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
- Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: descendant, [harp](#), lute, [prophet](#), psalm, [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:39-43
- 2 Chronicles 35:15
- Nehemiah 2:8
- Psalm 50:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0623

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:39](#); [9:15](#); [15:17](#); [15:19](#); [16:5](#); [16:7](#); [16:37](#); [25:1](#); [25:2](#); [25:6](#); [25:9](#); [26:1](#))

Asher

Facts:

Asher was Jacob's eighth son. He was Zilpah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Asher" or "Asher."
- His name sounds similar to a Hebrew word meaning "blessed, happy."
- The tribe of Asher settled in the northwest corner of Canaan, on the Mediterranean Sea. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Asher" refers to the land given to the tribe of Asher.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Zilpah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:13
- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 4:16
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0836

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:2](#); [6:62](#); [6:74](#); [7:30](#); [7:40](#); [12:36](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:13](#); [13:2](#); [13:4](#); [19:7](#); [28:8](#); [29:1](#); [29:10](#); [29:20](#))

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 7:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 7:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:2** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:3** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:4** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0804, H1121

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:6](#); [5:26](#))

Athaliah

Facts:

Athaliah was the evil wife of Jehoram king of Judah. She was the granddaughter of the evil King Omri of Israel.

- Athaliah's son Ahaziah became king after Jehoram died.
- When her son Ahaziah died, Athaliah made a plan to kill all the rest of the king's family.
- But Athaliah's young grandson Joash was hidden by his aunt and saved from being killed. After Athaliah had ruled the land for six years, she was killed and Joash became king.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [Jehoram](#), [Joash](#), [Omri](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 22:2
- 2 Chronicles 24:6-7
- 2 Kings 11:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6271

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 8:26](#))

atonement lid

Definition:

The “atonement lid” was a slab of gold that was used to cover the top of the ark of the covenant. In many English translations, it is also referred to as an “atonement cover.”

- The atonement lid was about 115 centimeters in length and 70 centimeters in width.
- Above the atonement lid were two gold cherubim with their wings touching.
- Yahweh said that he would meet with the Israelites above the atonement lid, under the outstretched wings of the cherubim. Only the high priest was permitted to meet with Yahweh in this way, as the representative of the people.
- Sometimes this atonement lid has been referred to as a “mercy seat” because it communicates God’s mercy in coming down to redeem sinful human beings.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “ark covering where God promises to redeem” or “place where God atones” or “lid of ark where God forgives and restores.”
- Can also mean “place of propitiation.”
- Compare this term with how you translated “atonement,” “propitiation,” and “redemption.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), atonement, [cherubim](#), propitiation, [redeem](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:17
- Exodus 30:6
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Leviticus 16:1-2
- Numbers 7:89

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3727, G24350

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 28:11](#))

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:1](#))

Balaam

Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balak hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balak, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [bless](#), [Canaan](#), [curse](#), [donkey](#), [Euphrates River](#), [Jordan River](#), [Midian](#), [Moab](#), [Peor](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:5
- Revelation 2:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G09030

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:70](#))

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: grain, [thresh](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 7:14
- Numbers 5:15
- Revelation 6:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G29150, G29160

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:13](#))

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel's wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:13
- Amos 4:1
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 9:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1316

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:11](#); [5:12](#); [5:16](#); [5:23](#); [6:62](#); [6:71](#))

Beersheba

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [Abraham](#), [Hagar](#), [Ishmael](#), [Jerusalem](#), [oath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 3:20
- 2 Samuel 17:11
- Genesis 21:14
- Genesis 21:31
- Genesis 46:1
- Nehemiah 11:30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0884

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:28](#); [21:2](#))

Benaiah

Definition:

Benaiah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Benaiah son of Jehoiada was one of David's mighty men. He was a skilled warrior and was put in charge of David's bodyguards.
- When Solomon was being made king, Benaiah helped him overthrow his enemies. He eventually became commander of the Israelite army.
- Other men in the Old Testament named Benaiah include three Levites: a priest, a musician, and a descendant of Asaph.

(See also: [Asaph](#), [Jehoiada](#), [Levite](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:36
- 1 Kings 1:8
- 2 Samuel 23:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1141

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:36](#); [11:22](#); [11:24](#); [11:31](#); [15:18](#); [15:20](#); [15:24](#); [16:5](#); [16:6](#); [18:17](#); [27:5](#); [27:6](#); [27:14](#); [27:34](#))

Benjamin, Benjaminite

Facts:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Rachel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:2](#); [6:60](#); [6:65](#); [7:6](#); [7:10](#); [8:1](#); [8:40](#); [9:3](#); [9:4](#); [9:7](#); [11:31](#); [12:2](#); [12:16](#); [12:29](#); [21:6](#); [27:21](#))

Beth Shemesh

Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

- The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
- Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
- When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [Canaan](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Joshua](#), [Levite](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:9
- 1 Samuel 6:9
- Joshua 19:20-22
- Judges 1:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1053

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:59](#))

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [altar](#), [Jacob](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:1
- Hosea 10:15
- Judges 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 7:28](#))

Bethuel

Facts:

Bethuel was the son of Abraham's brother Nahor.

- Bethuel was the father of Rebekah and Laban.
- There was also a town called Bethuel, which may have been located in southern Judah, not far from the town of Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Beersheba](#), Laban, [Nahor](#), Rebekah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:30
- Genesis 28:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1328

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:30](#))

Bilhah

Facts:

Bilhah was one of Jacob's wives. She gave birth to Dan and Naphtali, two sons of Jacob whose descendants became tribes of Israel.

- Laban gave Bilhah to Rachel as a servant when Rachel married Jacob.
- Because Rachel was not having children, she gave Bilhah to Jacob as a wife in order to produce children for her.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Rachel](#), [Dan](#), [Naphtali](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:29
- Genesis 30:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1090

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:29](#); [7:13](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”

- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:10](#); [13:14](#); [16:2](#); [16:36](#); [17:27](#); [26:5](#); [29:10](#); [29:20](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; flesh; [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 22:8](#))

Boaz

Facts:

Boaz was an Israelite man who lived during the time when there were judges ruled Israel. He married a Moabite woman named Ruth and became both the great grandfather of King David and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

- He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
- Boaz “redeemed” Naomi’s widowed daughter-in-law Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Moab](#), [redeem](#), [Ruth](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:12
- 2 Chronicles 3:17
- Luke 3:30-32
- Matthew 1:5
- Ruth 2:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1162

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:11](#); [2:12](#))

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:10](#); [10:1](#); [10:4](#); [10:5](#); [20:8](#); [21:14](#); [21:16](#); [24:31](#); [25:8](#); [26:13](#); [26:14](#); [29:20](#))

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:32](#); [12:40](#); [16:3](#))

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:19](#); [18:8](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:19; 2:32; 2:42; 4:9; 4:11; 4:27; 5:2; 5:7; 5:13; 6:39; 6:44; 6:48; 7:5; 7:16; 7:22; 7:35; 8:32; 8:39; 9:6; 9:9; 9:13; 9:17; 9:19; 9:25; 9:32; 9:38; 11:20; 11:26; 11:38; 11:45; 12:2; 12:29; 12:32; 12:39; 13:2; 15:5; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:12; 15:16; 15:17; 15:18; 16:7; 16:37; 16:38; 16:39; 19:11; 19:15; 20:5; 20:7; 23:22; 23:32;](#)

24:25; 24:31; 25:7; 25:9; 25:10; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 25:17; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22;
25:23; 25:24; 25:25; 25:26; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 26:7; 26:8; 26:9; 26:11; 26:12; 26:22; 26:25; 26:26; 26:28;
26:30; 26:32; 27:7; 27:18; 28:2)

burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G00040, G09160, G09220, G23470, G25990, G26550, G54130

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:9](#); [11:21](#); [11:25](#))

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), atonement, [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 3:5
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:1](#); [16:40](#); [21:24](#); [21:26](#); [23:31](#); [29:21](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:9](#); [6:65](#); [11:7](#); [13:6](#); [14:11](#); [16:8](#); [23:14](#))

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:21
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 3:4
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G25740

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:21](#))

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ham](#), Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 9:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 47:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:5** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **4:6** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **4:9** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **5:3** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G54780

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:3](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [exile](#), prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:22](#))

cedar, cedarwood

Definition:

The term "cedar" refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, pure, [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 7:1-2
- Isaiah 2:13
- Zechariah 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0730

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:1](#); [17:6](#); [22:4](#))

cherub

Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [angel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6
- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G55020

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 13:6; 28:18](#))

chief, leader

Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: [head](#), chief priests, [priest](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:2
- Psalm 4:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G07490, G07500, G07540, G44100, G44130, G55060

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:7; 5:12; 9:17; 11:21; 12:3; 12:9; 15:5; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:16; 15:27; 16:5; 23:8; 23:11; 23:16; 23:17; 23:18; 23:19; 23:20; 24:21; 24:31; 26:10; 26:26; 26:31; 27:3; 27:8; 29:24](#))

clean, wash

Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 28:17](#))

column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), false god, image)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 18:8](#))

comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 1:4
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G03020, G38700, G38740, G38750, G38880, G38900, G39310

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 19:3](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term "command" means to order someone to do something. The term "commandment" refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term "commandment" sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:49](#); [12:17](#); [14:8](#); [14:16](#); [14:17](#); [15:15](#); [16:15](#); [16:40](#); [17:6](#); [17:10](#); [19:9](#); [19:16](#); [21:4](#); [21:6](#); [21:21](#); [22:6](#); [22:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:17](#); [24:7](#); [24:19](#); [25:9](#); [26:14](#); [28:7](#); [28:8](#); [29:19](#))

confirm, confirmation, legal

Definition:

The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 6:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G09500, G09510, G33150, G49720

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:18](#))

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), pure, sanctify)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 4:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G14570, G50480

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:12](#); [18:11](#); [26:26](#); [26:27](#); [26:28](#))

consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Jeremiah 3:23-25
- Job 7:9
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G03550, G26180, G26540, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 27:24](#))

court, courtyard

Definition:

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
- Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
- The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 3:26
- Psalms 65:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G08330, G42590

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:32](#); [4:33](#); [6:56](#); [9:16](#); [9:22](#); [9:25](#); [23:28](#); [28:6](#); [28:12](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#); [1 Chronicles 11:3](#); [Notes](#); [15:25](#); [15:26](#); [15:28](#); [15:29](#); [16:6](#); [16:15](#); [16:17](#); [16:37](#); [17:1](#); [22:19](#); [28:2](#); [28:18](#))

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as “covenant faithfulness” was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms “covenant” and “faithfulness” are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: “faithful love;” “loyal, committed love;” or “loving dependability.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 3:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:34](#); [16:41](#); [17:13](#); [19:2](#))

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:26; 29:21](#))

curtain

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: holy place, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 4:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 4:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G26650

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:1](#))

cut off, cut down

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:6
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G06090, G08510, G15810

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:3](#); [16:16](#); [17:8](#); [19:4](#))

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:15](#); [3:1](#); [3:9](#); [4:31](#); [6:31](#); [7:2](#); [9:22](#); [11:1](#); [11:3](#); [11:4](#); [11:5](#); [11:6](#); [11:7](#); [11:9](#); [11:13](#); [11:15](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [11:25](#); [12:1](#); [12:8](#); [12:17](#); [12:18](#); [12:19](#); [12:21](#); [12:22](#); [12:23](#); [12:31](#); [12:38](#); [12:39](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:5](#); [13:6](#);

13:12; 13:13; 14:1; 14:2; 14:3; 14:8; 14:10; 14:11; 14:12; 14:14; 14:16; 14:17; 15:1; 15:2; 15:3; 15:4; 15:11; 15:16; 15:25;
15:27; 15:29; 16:1; 16:2; 16:7; 16:43; 17:1; 17:2; 17:4; 17:15; 17:16; 17:18; 17:24; 18:1; 18:3; 18:4; 18:5; 18:6; 18:7; 18:8;
18:9; 18:10; 18:11; 18:13; 18:14; 18:17; 19:2; 19:3; 19:4; 19:6; 19:8; 19:17; 19:18; 19:19; 20:2; 20:3; 20:7; 20:8; 21:1;
21:2; 21:5; 21:8; 21:9; 21:10; 21:11; 21:13; 21:16; 21:17; 21:18; 21:19; 21:21; 21:22; 21:23; 21:24; 21:25; 21:26; 21:28;
21:30; 22:1; 22:2; 22:3; 22:5; 22:7; 22:17; 23:6; 23:25; 23:27; 24:3; 24:31; 25:1; 26:26; 26:31; 26:32; 27:18; 27:23; 27:24;
27:31; 27:32; 28:1; 28:2; 28:11; 28:20; 29:1; 29:9; 29:10; 29:20; 29:22; 29:23; 29:24; 29:29)

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), [decree](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:10](#); [7:16](#); [7:23](#); [13:11](#); [15:11](#); [21:26](#); [22:6](#))

decree, decreed

Definition:

The term “decree” means to give an order that must be obeyed. The order itself can also be called a “decree.”

- A “decree” is similar to a “law,” but is generally used more often to refer to something spoken rather than written.
- The term “decree” could be translated as to “order” or to “command” or to “formally require” or to “publicly make a law.”
- God’s laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.

(See also: [command](#), [declare](#), law)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 8:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 2:13
- Esther 1:22
- Luke 2:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4687, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G13780

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 22:16](#))

deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:14](#); [16:35](#); [18:6](#); [18:13](#); [19:12](#))

devour

Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

(See also: [consume](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:39](#); [29:22](#))

die, dead, deadly, death

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: believe, faith, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:44](#); [1:45](#); [1:46](#); [1:47](#); [1:48](#); [1:49](#); [1:50](#); [1:51](#); [2:3](#); [2:19](#); [2:30](#); [2:32](#); [10:5](#); [10:6](#); [10:13](#); [10:14](#); [13:10](#); [19:1](#); [23:22](#); [24:2](#); [29:28](#))

dominion

Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:10-11
- Colossians 1:13
- Jude 1:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G26340, G29040, G29610, G29630

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 29:12](#))

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain offering](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:29
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14
- Jeremiah 7:16-18
- Numbers 5:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 29:21](#))

earth, land

Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as "land" when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term "earth" is often paired with the term "heaven" as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated "land" when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as "the land of Canaan."
- The term "earthly" is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth."

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: world, [heaven](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 13:2](#); [16:18](#); [19:2](#); [20:1](#); [21:21](#); [22:8](#); [29:11](#))

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [birthright](#), [Esau](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:30
- Genesis 32:3
- Genesis 36:1
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Obadiah 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0123, H0130, H8165, G24010

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 18:11](#))

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:23](#); [13:5](#); [17:21](#))

Elam, Elamites

Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites,” and they lived in a region that was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Noah](#), [Shem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:17-19
- Acts 2:9
- Ezra 8:4-7
- Isaiah 22:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5867, H5962, G16390

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 26:3](#))

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term “elder” or “older” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “older men” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:33](#); [6:56](#); [6:64](#); [6:65](#); [11:3](#); [11:8](#); [19:9](#); [19:15](#); [20:2](#); [21:16](#))

Eleazar

Facts:

Eleazar was the name of several men in the Bible.

Eleazar was the third son of Moses' brother Aaron. After Aaron died, Eleazar became the high priest in Israel.

Eleazar was also the name of one of David's "mighty men."

Another Eleazar was one of Jesus' ancestors.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aaron](#), high priest, [David](#), [mighty](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:3
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 34:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0499, G16480

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:50](#); [9:20](#); [11:12](#); [23:21](#); [23:22](#); [24:1](#); [24:2](#); [24:3](#); [24:4](#); [24:5](#); [24:6](#); [24:28](#))

Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:3-4
- James 5:16-18
- John 1:19-21
- John 1:24-25
- Mark 9:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2 Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **19:2 Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **19:3** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **19:4** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **19:5** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **19:7** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **36:3** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0452, G22430

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 8:27](#))

Enoch

Facts:

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cain, [Seth](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:3
- Genesis 5:18-20
- Genesis 5:24
- Jude 1:14
- Luke 3:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2585, G18020

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:3](#); [1:33](#); [5:3](#))

ephod

Definition:

An ephod was an apron-like garment worn by the Israelite priests. It had two parts, front and back, that were joined together at the shoulders and tied around the waist with a cloth belt.

- One kind of ephod was made of plain linen and was worn by the ordinary priests.
- The ephod worn by the high priest was specially embroidered with gold, blue, purple, and red yarn.
- The breastpiece of the high priest was attached to the front of the ephod. Behind the breastpiece were stored the Urim and Thummim, which were stones used for asking God what his will was in certain matters.
- The judge Gideon foolishly made an ephod out of gold and it became something that the Israelites worshiped as an idol.

(See also: [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:18-19
- Exodus 28:4-5
- Hosea 3:4
- Judges 8:27
- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0641, H0642, H0646

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:27](#))

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the younger son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Ephraim sounds like the Hebrew word meaning “to make fruitful.”
- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joseph](#), Manasseh, kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0669, H0673, G21870

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:66](#); [6:67](#); [7:20](#); [7:22](#); [9:3](#); [12:30](#); [27:10](#); [27:14](#); [27:20](#))

Esau

Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Edom](#), Isaac, [Jacob](#), Rebekah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:5
- Hebrews 12:17
- Romans 9:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:7** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- **7:2** So *Esau* gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- **7:4** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- **7:5** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- **7:10** But *Esau* had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G22690

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:34](#); [1:35](#))

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#))

Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an "Ethiopian."

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called "Cush" or "Nubia."
- The countries of Ethiopia ("Cush") and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cush, [Egypt](#), eunuch, Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:27
- Acts 8:30
- Acts 8:32-33
- Acts 8:36-38
- Isaiah 18:1-2
- Nahum 3:9
- Zephaniah 3:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: G01280

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:8](#); [1:9](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:3](#); [7:23](#); [21:15](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:26](#); [17:7](#); [21:17](#); [27:31](#); [29:21](#))

exile, exiled

Definition:

The term "exile" refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The "Babylonian exile" (or "the exile") is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase "the exiles" refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "exile" could also be translated as to "send away" or to "force out" or to "banish."
- The term "the exile" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the sent away time" or "the time of banishment" or "the time of forced absence" or "banishment."
- Ways to translate "the exiles" could include "the exiled people" or "the people who were banished" or "the people exiled to Babylon."

(See also: [Babylon](#), Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 2:25-26
- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G39270

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:6](#); [8:7](#); [9:1](#); [17:25](#))

Ezekiel

Facts:

Ezekiel was a prophet of God during the exile period when many Jews were taken to Babylon.

- Ezekiel was a priest living in the kingdom of Judah when he and many other Jews were captured by the Babylonian army.
- For over twenty years, he and his wife lived in Babylon near a river, and the Jews came there to hear him speak messages from God.
- Among other things, Ezekiel prophesied about the destruction and restoration of Jerusalem and the temple.
- He also prophesied about the future kingdom of the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [exile](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 1:3
- Ezekiel 24:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3168

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 24:16](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:10](#); [12:8](#); [16:11](#); [19:10](#); [21:16](#))

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: believe, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:7](#); [10:13](#); [17:23](#))

family, household

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 1:21
- Joshua 2:12-13
- Luke 2:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0251, H0272, H0504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G10850, G36140, G36240, G39650

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:53](#); [2:55](#); [4:2](#); [4:8](#); [4:21](#); [4:27](#); [6:19](#); [6:61](#); [6:71](#); [7:5](#); [16:28](#))

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:12](#))

fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:3
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 3:4-5
- Luke 5:34
- Mark 2:19
- Matthew 6:18
- Matthew 9:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:8** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G35210, G35220

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 10:12](#))

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: awe, [Yahweh](#), [Lord](#), marvel, [power](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 10:4](#); [13:12](#); [14:17](#); [16:25](#); [17:21](#); [22:13](#); [28:20](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:32](#); [9:21](#); [23:32](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:12](#); [21:26](#))

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 2:6-7
- Revelation 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G44160, G52070

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:13](#); [1:29](#); [2:3](#); [2:13](#); [2:25](#); [2:27](#); [2:42](#); [2:50](#); [4:4](#); [5:1](#); [5:3](#); [8:1](#); [8:39](#); [26:10](#))

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: [goat](#), [cow](#), [pig](#), [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:21](#); [12:40](#))

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 28:9](#); [28:20](#))

found, founder, foundation

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0134, H0787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G23100, G23110, G26020

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:22](#))

frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: Bethlehem, learned men)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:28-29
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Matthew 2:11-12
- Numbers 5:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3828, G30300

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:29](#))

freewill offering

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), Ezra, [feast](#), [grain offering](#), guilt offering, [law](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:6
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 7:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 29:5](#); [29:9](#); [29:17](#))

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 28:20](#))

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

The term "gate" refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A "bar" for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:17](#); [9:18](#); [9:23](#); [9:24](#); [9:26](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [15:18](#); [22:3](#); [26:12](#); [26:13](#); [26:16](#); [26:19](#))

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:7
- Mark 8:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G10740

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:29](#); [16:15](#))

Geshur, Geshurites

Definition:

During the time of King David, Geshur was a small kingdom located on the east side of the Sea of Galilee between the countries of Israel and Aram.

- King David married Maacah, the daughter of Geshur's king, and she bore him a son, Absalom.
- After murdering his half-brother Amnon, Absalom fled northeast from Jerusalem to Geshur, a distance of about 140 kilometers. He stayed there three years.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Amnon](#), Aram, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:23
- 2 Samuel 3:2-3
- Deuteronomy 3:14
- Joshua 12:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1650

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:23](#); [3:2](#))

Gibeon, Gibeonite

Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: Gilgal, [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:29
- 1 Kings 3:4-5
- 2 Samuel 2:12-13
- Joshua 9:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.
- **15:8** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1391, H1393

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 8:29](#); [9:35](#); [12:4](#))

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:22
- 1 Samuel 11:1
- Amos 1:3
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:22](#))

Girgashites

Facts:

The Girgashites were a people group living near the Sea of Galilee in the land of Canaan.

- They were descendants of Ham's son Canaan and so were one of the many people groups who were also known as "Canaanites."
- God promised the Israelites that he would help them defeat the Girgashites and other Canaanite people groups.
- Like all the Canaanite peoples, the Girgashites worshiped false gods and did immoral things as part of that worship.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Ham](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:14
- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Joshua 24:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1622

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:14](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, [majesty](#), exalt, obey, [praise](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:24](#); [16:28](#); [16:29](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 4:10; 5:20; 5:25; 5:26; 6:48; 6:49; 9:11; 9:13; 9:26; 9:27; 10:10; 11:2; 11:19; 12:17; 12:18; 12:22; 13:2; 13:3; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:10; 13:12; 13:14; 14:10; 14:11; 14:12; 14:14; 14:15; 14:16; 15:1; 15:2; 15:12; 15:13; 15:14; 15:15; 15:24; 15:26; 16:1; 16:4; 16:6; 16:14; 16:25; 16:26; 16:35; 16:36; 16:42; 17:2; 17:3; 17:16; 17:17; 17:20; 17:21; 17:22; 17:24; 17:25; 17:26; 19:13; 21:7; 21:8; 21:15; 21:17; 21:30; 22:1; 22:2; 22:6; 22:7; 22:11; 22:12; 22:18; 22:19; 23:14; 23:25; 23:28; 24:5; 24:19; 25:5; 25:6; 26:5; 26:20; 26:32; 28:2; 28:4; 28:8; 28:9; 28:12; 28:20; 28:21; 29:1; 29:2; 29:3; 29:7; 29:10; 29:13; 29:16; 29:17; 29:18; 29:20)

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), false god, [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 18:7](#); [18:10](#); [18:11](#); [20:2](#); [21:25](#); [22:14](#); [22:16](#); [28:14](#); [28:15](#); [28:16](#); [28:17](#); [28:18](#); [29:2](#); [29:3](#); [29:4](#); [29:5](#); [29:7](#))

Goliath

Facts:

Goliath was a very tall and very large soldier in the army of the Philistines who was killed by David.

- Goliath was between two and three meters tall. He is often referred to as a giant because of his great size.
- Although Goliath had better weapons and was much bigger than David, God gave David the strength and ability to defeat Goliath.
- The Israelites were declared victorious over the Philistines as a result of David's victory over Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:4-5
- 1 Samuel 17:4-5
- 1 Samuel 21:8-9
- 1 Samuel 22:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1555

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 20:5](#))

good, right, pleasant, better, best

Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: righteous, [prosper](#), [evil](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:34](#); [19:13](#); [21:23](#); [28:8](#); [29:28](#))

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering, [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 2:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:29](#); [18:2](#); [18:6](#))

Greece, Grecian

Facts:

During New Testament times, Greece was a province in the Roman Empire.

- Like the modern-day country of Greece, it was located on a peninsula that is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea, the Aegean Sea, and the Ionian Sea.
- The apostle Paul visited several cities in Greece and established churches in the cities of Corinth, Thessalonica, and Philippi and probably others.
- People who are from Greece are called “Greeks” and their language is “Greek.” People from other Roman provinces also spoke Greek, including many Jews.
- Sometimes the term “Greek” is used to refer to a Gentile.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Corinth, Gentile, Greek, Hebrew, Philippi, Thessalonica)

Bible References:

- Daniel 8:21
- Daniel 10:20-21
- Daniel 11:1-2
- Zechariah 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3120, G16710

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:5](#); [1:7](#))

Ham

Facts:

Ham was the second of Noah's three sons.

- During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Ham and his brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
- After the flood, there was an occasion where Ham was very dishonoring to his father, Noah. As a result, Noah cursed Ham's son Canaan and all his descendants, who eventually became known as the Canaanites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ark, [Canaan](#), dishonor, [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:10
- Genesis 7:13-14
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 10:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2526

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:4](#); [1:8](#); [4:40](#))

Hananiah

Facts:

Hananiah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament.

- One Hananiah was an Israelite captive in Babylon whose name was changed to “Shadrach.”
- He was given a position as a royal servant due to his excellent character and abilities.
- Once Hananiah (Shadrach) and two other Israelite young men were thrown into a fire in a furnace because they refused to worship the Babylonian king. God showed his power by protecting them from being harmed.
- Another man named Hananiah was listed as a descendant of King Solomon.
- A different Hananiah was a false prophet during the time of the prophet Jeremiah.
- One man named Hananiah was a priest who helped lead a celebration during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Azariah, [Babylon](#), Daniel, false prophet, [Jeremiah](#), Mishael)

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:6-7
- Daniel 2:17-18
- Jeremiah 28:1
- Jeremiah 28:5-7
- Jeremiah 28:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2608

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:19](#); [3:21](#); [8:24](#); [25:4](#); [25:23](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [power](#), right hand, honor, [bless](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:10](#); [4:40](#); [5:10](#); [5:20](#); [6:15](#); [6:31](#); [7:29](#); [11:3](#); [11:23](#); [13:9](#); [13:10](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [16:7](#); [18:1](#); [18:3](#); [19:11](#); [20:8](#); [21:13](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:17](#); [22:18](#); [24:19](#); [25:2](#); [25:3](#); [25:6](#); [26:28](#); [28:19](#); [29:5](#); [29:8](#); [29:12](#); [29:16](#); [29:24](#))

Haran

Facts:

Haran was a younger brother of Abram and the father of Lot.

- Haran was also the name of the town where Abram and his family lived awhile on their journey from the city of Ur to the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Haran was a son of Caleb.
- A third man in the Bible named Haran was a descendant of Levi.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Caleb](#), [Canaan](#), [Levite](#), [Lot](#), [Terah](#), [Ur](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:12
- Acts 7:1-3
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 27:43-45
- Genesis 28:10-11
- Genesis 29:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2039

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 23:9](#))

harp, harpist

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), fir, psalm, [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 5:23-24
- Daniel 3:5
- Psalm 33:1-3
- Revelation 5:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G27880, G27890, G27900

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 13:8](#); [16:5](#))

head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: [chief](#), [grain](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:42; 5:15; 5:24; 7:2; 7:3; 7:7; 7:9; 7:40; 8:6; 8:10; 8:13; 8:28; 9:9; 9:13; 9:33; 9:34; 10:9; 11:10; 11:11; 11:15; 11:20; 11:42; 12:14; 12:18; 12:19; 12:20; 12:23; 12:32; 14:15; 15:12; 16:7; 20:2; 23:9; 23:24; 24:4; 24:6; 24:31; 26:21; 26:26; 26:32; 27:1; 27:5](#))

heart

Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:19](#); [12:17](#); [12:33](#); [12:38](#); [15:29](#); [16:10](#); [22:7](#); [22:19](#); [28:2](#); [28:9](#); [29:9](#); [29:17](#); [29:18](#); [29:19](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:26](#); [16:31](#); [21:16](#); [21:26](#); [27:23](#); [29:11](#))

Hilkiah

Facts:

Hilkiah was the high priest during the reign of King Josiah.

- When the temple was being repaired, Hilkiah the high priest found the Book of the Law and ordered that it be brought to King Josiah.
- After the Book of the Law was read to him, Josiah was grieved and caused the people of Judah to worship Yahweh again and obey his laws.
- Another man named Hilkiah was the son of Eliakim and worked in the palace during the time of King Hezekiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Eliakim, Hezekiah, high priest, [Josiah](#), Judah, law, [worship](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2518

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 6:13](#); [6:45](#); [9:11](#); [26:11](#))

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, [Esau](#), foreigner, [Ham](#), [mighty](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:8
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 11:41](#))

Hivite

Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Hamor, [Noah](#), Shechem)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 34:2
- Joshua 9:1-2
- Judges 3:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:15](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: Holy Spirit, [consecrate](#), sanctify, [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:49](#); [9:29](#); [16:10](#); [16:29](#); [16:35](#); [22:19](#); [23:13](#); [23:28](#); [23:32](#); [24:5](#); [26:20](#); [26:26](#); [28:12](#); [29:3](#); [29:16](#))

hope, hoped

Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), confidence, [good](#), obey, [trust](#), word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 2:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:6
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 1:5
- Job 11:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0982, H0983, H0986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G00910, G05600, G16790, G16800, G20700

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 29:15](#))

horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: chariot, donkey, [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 13:7](#))

horseman

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- Yahweh commanded the Israelites not to have many horsemen because having a strong army would cause them to trust their own strength rather than Yahweh in battle.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: chariot, [horse](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:5
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G24600

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 19:6](#))

Hoshea

Facts:

Hoshea was the name of a king of Israel and several other men in the Old Testament.

- Hoshea son of Alah was a king of Israel for nine years during part of the reigns of Ahaz and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.
- Joshua son of Nun was formerly named Hoshea. Moses changed Hoshea's name to Joshua before sending him and eleven other men to spy out the land of the Canaanites.
- After Moses died, Joshua led the people of Israel to take possession of the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Hoshea was a son of Azariah and was one of the leaders of the Ephraimites.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Canaan](#), [Ephraim](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Joshua](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:20
- 2 Kings 15:30
- 2 Kings 17:3
- 2 Kings 18:1
- 2 Kings 18:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1954

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 27:20](#))

house, household

Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshipped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: descendant, house of God, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), house of David, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:55; 4:21; 4:38; 5:13; 5:15; 5:24; 6:31; 6:32; 6:48; 7:2; 7:4; 7:7; 7:9; 7:40; 9:9; 9:11; 9:13; 9:19; 9:23; 9:26; 9:27; 10:6; 10:10; 12:28; 12:29; 12:30; 13:7; 13:13; 13:14; 14:1; 15:1; 15:25; 16:43; 17:4; 17:6; 17:10; 17:12; 17:16; 17:17; 17:23; 17:24; 17:25; 17:27; 22:1; 22:2; 22:6; 22:7; 22:8; 22:10; 22:11; 22:14; 22:19; 23:4; 23:11; 23:24; 23:28; 23:32; 24:4; 24:6; 24:19; 24:30; 25:6; 26:6; 26:13; 26:15; 26:20; 26:22; 26:27; 28:2; 28:3; 28:4; 28:6; 28:10; 28:11; 28:12; 28:13; 28:20; 28:21; 29:2; 29:3; 29:4; 29:7; 29:8; 29:16\)](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), Promised Land, possess)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:18](#))

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), [trespass](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:8](#))

Isaiah

Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Christ](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Jotham](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#), [Uzziah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 1:1
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 1:1
- Mark 7:6
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 4:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:2** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **45:8** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G22680

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:21](#); [25:3](#); [25:15](#); [26:25](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *_Israel_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave _Israel_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *_Israel_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 1:43; 2:1; 2:7; 4:10; 5:1; 5:3; 5:17; 5:26; 6:38; 6:49; 6:64; 7:29; 9:1; 9:2; 10:1; 10:7; 11:1; 11:2; 11:3; 11:4; 11:10; 12:32; 12:38; 12:40; 13:2; 13:5; 13:6; 13:8; 14:2; 14:8; 15:3; 15:12; 15:14; 15:25; 15:28; 16:3; 16:4; 16:13; 16:17; 16:36; 16:40; 17:5; 17:6; 17:7; 17:9; 17:10; 17:21; 17:22; 17:24; 18:14; 19:10; 19:16; 19:17; 19:18; 19:19; 20:7; 21:1; 21:2; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:7; 21:12; 21:14; 22:1; 22:2; 22:6; 22:9; 22:10; 22:12; 22:13; 22:17; 23:1; 23:2; 23:25; 24:19; 26:29; 26:30; 27:1; 27:16; 27:22; 27:23; 27:24; 28:1; 28:4; 28:5; 28:8; 29:6; 29:10; 29:21; 29:23; 29:25; 29:26; 29:27; 29:30)

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was Jacob's ninth son. He was Leah's fifth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Issachar" or "Issachar."
- The meaning of the name is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word meaning "reward, hire."
- The tribe of Issachar settled in central Canaan, southwest of the Sea of Galilee. Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Joshua 17:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G24660

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:1](#); [6:62](#); [6:72](#); [7:1](#); [7:5](#); [12:32](#); [12:40](#); [26:5](#); [27:18](#))

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, [Bilhah](#), deceive, [Esau](#), Isaac, Rebekah, Laban)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:13; 16:17](#))

Japheth

Facts:

Japheth was one of Noah's three sons.

- During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Japheth and his two brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
- Noah's sons are usually listed as, "Shem, Ham, and Japheth." This indicates that Japheth was the youngest brother.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ark, flood, [Ham](#), [Noah](#), [Shem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:4
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:10
- Genesis 7:13-14
- Genesis 10:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3315

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:4](#); [1:5](#))

Jebus, Jebusite

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Ham](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Melchizedek](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:14
- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Judges 1:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:14](#); [11:4](#); [21:15](#); [21:18](#); [21:28](#))

Jehoiada

Facts:

Jehoiada was a priest who helped hide and protect King Ahaziah's son Joash until he was old enough to be declared king.

- Jehoiada arranged for hundreds of bodyguards to protect young Joash as he was proclaimed king by the people in the temple.
- Jehoiada led the people in getting rid of all the altars of the false god Baal.
- For the rest of his life, Jehoiada the priest advised King Joash to help him obey God and rule the people wisely.
- Another man named Jehoiada was the father of Benaiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [Baal](#), [Benaiah](#), [Joash](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 11:4
- 2 Kings 12:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3077

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:22](#); [11:24](#); [12:27](#); [18:17](#); [27:5](#); [27:34](#))

Jehoiakim

Facts:

Jehoiakim was an evil king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah, beginning around 608 B.C. He was King Josiah's son. His name was originally Eliakim.

- The Egyptian pharaoh Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim and made him king of Judah.
- Necho forced Jehoiakim to pay high taxes to Egypt.
- When Judah was later invaded by King Nebuchadnezzar, Jehoiakim was among those who were captured and taken to Babylon.
- Jehoiakim was an evil king who led Judah away from Yahweh. Jeremiah the prophet prophesied against him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Eliakim](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:15-16
- 2 Kings 23:34-35
- 2 Kings 24:1
- Daniel 1:2
- Jeremiah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3079

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:15](#); [3:16](#))

Jehoshaphat

Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a "recorder" for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), false god, [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10-12
- 1 Kings 4:17
- 2 Chronicles 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:17
- 2 Samuel 8:15-18
- Matthew 1:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3092, G24980

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:10](#); [18:15](#))

Jehu

Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
- Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
- King Jehu killed two evil kings, King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
- King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
- King Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
- King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahab, [Ahaziah](#), Baal, Elisha, [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), Jezebel, Joram, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:35
- 1 Kings 16:2
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 10:9
- Hosea 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3058

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:38](#); [4:35](#); [12:3](#))

Jeremiah

Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a "fountain of tears," to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), Judah, [prophet](#), rebel, suffer, well)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:25
- Jeremiah 1:2
- Jeremiah 11:1
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Matthew 27:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:17** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **21:5** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3414, G24080

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:24](#); [12:4](#); [12:10](#); [12:13](#))

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:78
- Joshua 2:1-3
- Joshua 7:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:1** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:5** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G24100

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:78](#); [19:5](#))

Jeroboam

Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of the Israelite's wickedness, God had mercy on them and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: false god, kingdom of Israel, Judah, [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:16-17
- 1 Kings 12:2
- 2 Chronicles 9:29
- 2 Kings 3:1-3
- Amos 1:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **18:9 Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3379

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:17](#))

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:4](#); [3:5](#); [6:10](#); [6:15](#); [6:32](#); [8:28](#); [8:32](#); [9:3](#); [9:34](#); [9:38](#); [11:4](#); [14:3](#); [14:4](#); [15:3](#); [18:7](#); [19:15](#); [20:1](#); [20:3](#); [21:4](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [23:25](#); [28:1](#); [29:27](#))

Jesse

Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an “Ephrathite,” which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a “shoot” or “branch” that would come from the “root of Jesse” and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Boaz](#), descendant, Jesus, [king](#), [prophet](#), Ruth, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 3:32
- Matthew 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G24210

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:12](#); [2:13](#); [10:14](#); [12:18](#); [29:26](#))

Joab

Definition:

Joab was an important military leader for King David throughout David's entire reign.

- Before David became king, Joab had already been one of his loyal followers.
- Later, during David's reign as king over Israel, Joab became the commander of King David's army.
- Joab was also King David's nephew, since his mother was one of David's sisters.
- When David's son Absalom betrayed him by trying to take over his kingship, Joab killed Absalom in order to protect the king.
- Joab was a very aggressive fighter and killed many people who were enemies of Israel.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [David](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:16-17
- 1 Kings 1:7
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 2 Samuel 2:18
- Nehemiah 7:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3097

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:16](#); [4:14](#); [11:6](#); [11:8](#); [11:20](#); [11:26](#); [11:39](#); [18:15](#); [19:8](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#); [19:15](#); [20:1](#); [21:2](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#); [21:5](#); [21:6](#); [26:28](#); [27:7](#); [27:24](#); [27:34](#))

Joel

Facts:

Joel was a prophet who probably lived during the reign of King Joash of Judah. There were also several other men in the Old Testament named Joel.

- The book of Joel is one of twelve short prophetic books in the last section of the Old Testament.
- The only personal information we have about the prophet Joel is that his father's name was Pethuel.
- In his sermon at Pentecost, the apostle Peter quoted from the book of Joel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Joash, Judah, Pentecost)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:33-35
- 1 Samuel 8:1-3
- Acts 2:16
- Ezra 10:43
- Joel 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3100, G24930

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:35](#); [5:4](#); [5:8](#); [5:12](#); [6:33](#); [6:36](#); [7:3](#); [11:38](#); [15:7](#); [15:11](#); [15:17](#); [23:8](#); [26:22](#); [27:20](#))

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: [Canaan](#), Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G24460

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:78](#); [12:15](#); [12:37](#); [19:17](#); [26:30](#))

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Ephraim](#), [Manasseh](#), [Jacob](#), [Rachel](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **8:4** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **8:5** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **8:7** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **8:9 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **9:2** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:2](#); [5:1](#); [7:29](#))

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 7:25-27
- Deuteronomy 3:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 1:3
- Numbers 27:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:4** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:8** "Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G24240

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 7:27](#))

Josiah

Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: false god, [Judah](#), law, Passover, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:3
- Jeremiah 1:3
- Matthew 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2977, G25020

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:14](#); [3:15](#))

Jotham

Definition:

In the Old Testament, there were three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, by not removing the places of idol worship he caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [Ahaz](#), Gideon, Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 26:21
- 2 Kings 15:5
- Isaiah 1:1
- Judges 9:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3147

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:47](#); [3:12](#); [5:17](#))

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:40](#); [15:16](#); [15:25](#); [16:10](#); [16:31](#); [29:9](#); [29:17](#); [29:22](#))

Judah

Facts:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, [Judea](#), [Jacob](#), Leah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:1](#); [9:1](#); [12:16](#); [13:6](#); [21:5](#); [27:18](#); [28:4](#))

Judea, Judah

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, [Edom](#), [Judah](#), Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24530

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:10](#); [4:1](#); [4:21](#); [4:27](#); [4:41](#); [5:2](#); [5:17](#); [6:15](#); [6:55](#); [6:65](#); [9:3](#); [9:4](#); [12:24](#); [28:4](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), judge, judgment day, just, law, [law](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:14](#); [16:33](#); [18:14](#); [23:4](#))

Kedar

Facts:

Kedar was Ishmael's second son. It was also an important city, which was probably named after the man.

- The city of Kedar is located in the northern part of Arabia near the southern border of Palestine. In Bible times, it was known for its greatness and beauty.
- The descendants of Kedar formed a large people group that is also called "Kedar."
- The phrase "dark tents of Kedar" refers to the black goathair tents the people of Kedar lived in.
- These people raised sheep and goats. They also used camels for transporting things.
- In the Bible, the phrase "the glory of Kedar" refers to the greatness of that city and its people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Arabia, goat, Ishmael, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Song of Songs 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6938

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:29](#))

Kerethites

Facts:

The Kerethites were a people group who were probably part of the Philistines. Some versions write this name as "Cherethites."

- The "Kerethites and Pelethites" were a special group of soldiers from King David's army who were especially devoted to him as his bodyguards.
- Benaiah, son of Jehoiada, a member of David's administrative corps, was the leader of the Kerethites and Pelethites.
- The Kerethites remained with David when he had to flee Jerusalem because of Absalom's revolt.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Benaiah](#), [David](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- Zephaniah 2:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3774

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 18:17](#))

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:43](#); [3:2](#); [4:23](#); [4:41](#); [5:6](#); [5:17](#); [5:26](#); [9:1](#); [9:18](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [14:1](#); [14:2](#); [14:8](#); [15:29](#); [16:21](#); [17:16](#); [18:3](#); [18:5](#); [18:9](#); [18:10](#); [18:11](#); [18:17](#); [19:1](#); [19:5](#); [19:7](#); [19:9](#); [20:1](#); [20:2](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#); [21:6](#); [21:23](#); [21:24](#); [24:6](#); [24:31](#); [25:2](#); [25:5](#); [25:6](#); [26:26](#); [26:30](#); [26:32](#); [27:1](#); [27:24](#); [27:25](#); [27:31](#); [27:32](#); [27:33](#); [27:34](#); [28:1](#); [28:2](#); [28:4](#); [29:1](#); [29:6](#); [29:9](#); [29:23](#); [29:24](#); [29:25](#); [29:29](#))

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:23](#); [14:2](#); [17:11](#); [22:10](#); [26:31](#); [28:5](#); [28:7](#); [29:25](#); [29:30](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:12](#); [2:53](#); [5:18](#); [7:11](#); [9:28](#); [12:32](#); [12:33](#); [12:36](#); [14:2](#); [14:15](#); [16:8](#); [17:18](#); [20:1](#); [20:2](#); [20:3](#); [21:2](#); [28:9](#); [29:17](#))

Korah, Korahite

Definition:

Korah was the name of three men in the Old Testament.

Korah was a descendant of Levi and so served in the tabernacle as a priest. He became jealous of Moses and Aaron and led a group of men to rebel against them.

One of the sons of Esau was named Korah. He became a leader in his community.

A third man named Korah is listed as a descendant of Judah.

(See also: [Aaron](#), authority, Caleb, descendant, [Esau](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:34-37
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Psalm 42:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7141

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:35](#); [2:43](#); [6:22](#); [6:37](#); [9:19](#))

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), shepherd)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:7** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:8** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- **48:8** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.

- **48:9** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G07210, G23160

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 29:21](#))

Lamech

Facts:

Lamech was the name of two men mentioned in the book of Genesis.

- The first Lamech mentioned was a descendant of Cain. He boasted to his two wives that he had killed a man for injuring him.
- The second Lamech was a descendant of Seth. He was also the father of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cain, [Noah](#), [Seth](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 4:18-19
- Genesis 4:24
- Genesis 5:25
- Genesis 5:29
- Genesis 5:31
- Luke 3:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3929, G29840

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:3](#))

law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#); [16:40](#); [22:12](#))

Levi, Levite

Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), [Jacob](#), Leah, Matthew)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:1](#); [6:1](#); [6:16](#); [6:19](#); [6:38](#); [6:43](#); [6:47](#); [6:48](#); [6:64](#); [9:2](#); [9:14](#); [9:18](#); [9:26](#); [9:31](#); [9:33](#); [9:34](#); [12:26](#); [13:2](#); [15:2](#); [15:4](#); [15:12](#); [15:14](#); [15:15](#); [15:16](#); [15:17](#); [15:22](#); [15:26](#); [15:27](#); [16:4](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:6](#); [23:14](#); [23:24](#); [23:26](#); [23:27](#); [24:6](#); [24:20](#); [24:30](#); [26:17](#); [26:20](#); [27:17](#); [28:13](#); [28:21](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:8](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:19](#); [21:3](#); [21:23](#))

lots, casting lots

Definition:

In the Bible, a “lot” is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. “Casting lots” refers to the process of using “lots” to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the “lots”) were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the “lots” actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “throwing lots” or “rolling lots.” The translation of “cast” should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made “by lot,” this could be translated as “by casting lots” or “by throwing lots,” etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, [priest](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

Bible References:

- Jonah 1:7
- Luke 1:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 22:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H5307, G28190, G29750

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:54](#); [24:7](#); [24:31](#); [25:8](#); [25:9](#); [26:13](#); [26:14](#))

Maacah

Facts:

Maacah (or Maakah) was one of the sons of Abraham's brother Nahor. Other people in the Old Testament also had this name.

- The city of Maacah or Beth Maacah was located in the far north of Israel, in the region occupied by the tribe of Naphtali.
- It was an important city and was attacked by enemies on several occasions.
- Maacah was the name of several women, including the mother of David's son Absalom.
- King Asa removed his grandmother Maacah from being queen because she had promoted Asherah worship.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asa](#), [Asherah](#), [Nahor](#), [Naphtali](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4601

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:48](#); [3:2](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#); [8:29](#); [9:35](#); [11:43](#); [19:6](#); [19:7](#); [27:16](#))

majesty

Definition:

The term “majesty” or “majestic” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- Daniel 4:36
- Isaiah 2:10
- Jude 1:25
- Micah 5:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G31680, G31720

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:21](#))

Mede, Medes, Media

Facts:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called "Medes."

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Cyrus](#), [Daniel](#), [Darius](#), [Elam](#), [Persia](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:6
- Acts 2:9
- Daniel 5:28
- Esther 1:3-4
- Ezra 6:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4074, H4075, H4076, H4077, G33700

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:5](#))

messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:1](#); [19:2](#); [19:16](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:30](#))

Micah

Facts:

Micah was a prophet of Judah around 700 years before Christ, when the prophet Isaiah was also ministering to Judah. Another man named Micah lived during the time of the judges.

- The book of Micah is near the end of the Old Testament.
- Micah prophesied about the destruction of Samaria by the Assyrians.
- Micah rebuked the people of Judah for disobeying God and warned them that their enemies would attack them.
- His prophecy ends with a message of hope in God, who is faithful and saves his people.
- In the book of Judges, the story is told of a man named Micah living in Ephraim who made an idol out of silver. A young Levite priest who came to live with him stole the idol and other things, and took off with a group of Danites. Eventually the Danites and the priest settled in the city of Laish and they set up that same silver idol to worship.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), Dan, [Ephraim](#), false god, [Isaiah](#), Judah, judge, [Levite](#), [priest](#), [prophet](#), Samaria, [silver](#))

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 26:18-19
- Micah 1:1
- Micah 6:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4318

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:5](#); [8:34](#); [8:35](#); [9:40](#); [9:41](#); [23:20](#); [24:24](#); [24:25](#))

Michael

Facts:

Michael is the chief of all God's holy, obedient angels. He is the only angel who is specifically referred to as the "archangel" of God.

- The term "archangel" literally means "chief angel" or "ruling angel."
- Michael is a warrior who fights against God's enemies and protects God's people.
- He led the Israelites in fighting against the Persian army. In the end times he will lead the armies of Israel in the final battle against the forces of evil, as foretold in Daniel.
- There are also several men in the Bible with the name Michael. Several men are identified as being the "son of Michael"

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: angel, Daniel, [messenger](#), Persia)

Bible References:

- Daniel 10:13
- Daniel 10:21
- Ezra 8:8
- Revelation 12:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4317, G34130

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:13](#); [5:14](#); [6:40](#); [7:3](#); [8:16](#); [12:20](#); [27:18](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:10](#); [5:24](#); [7:2](#); [7:5](#); [7:7](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [7:40](#); [8:40](#); [9:13](#); [9:26](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [11:19](#); [11:24](#); [12:4](#); [12:8](#); [12:21](#); [12:25](#); [12:28](#); [12:30](#); [19:8](#); [26:6](#); [26:31](#); [27:6](#); [28:1](#))

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:9](#); [16:12](#); [16:24](#))

Miriam

Facts:

Miriam was the older sister of Aaron and Moses.

- When she was young, Miriam was instructed by her mother to watch over her baby brother Moses who was in a basket among the reeds of the Nile River. When the pharaoh's daughter found the baby and needed someone to take care of him for her, Miriam brought her mother to do it.
- Miriam led the Israelites in a dance of joy and thanksgiving after they had escaped from the Egyptians by crossing the Red Sea.
- Years later as the Israelites were wandering in the desert, Miriam and Aaron began speaking badly about Moses because he had married a Cushite woman.
- Because of her rebellion in speaking against Moses, God caused Miriam to become sick with leprosy. But later God healed her when Moses interceded for her.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aaron](#), Cush, intercede, [Moses](#), Nile River, Pharaoh, rebel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:1-3
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Micah 6:4
- Numbers 12:2
- Numbers 20:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4813

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:17](#); [6:3](#))

Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term “Moab” refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named “Moab,” who was the son of Lot’s elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a “Moabite woman” because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:46](#); [8:8](#); [11:22](#); [11:46](#); [18:2](#))

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Miriam](#), Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:3](#); [6:49](#); [15:15](#); [21:29](#); [22:13](#); [23:13](#); [23:14](#); [23:15](#); [26:24](#))

mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 7:22](#))

Naaman

Facts:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

- Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
- A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
- Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
- As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
- Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Jordan River](#), leprosy, [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:6-7
- 2 Kings 5:1
- Luke 4:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to **Naaman**, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease.
- **19:15** At first **Naaman** was angry and would not do it because it seemed foolish. But later he changed his mind and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan River.
- **26:6** "He (Elisha) only healed the skin disease of **Naaman**, a commander of Israel's enemies."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5283, G34970

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 8:4](#); [8:7](#))

Nahor

Facts:

Nahor was the name of two relatives of Abraham, his grandfather and his brother.

- Abraham's brother Nahor was the grandfather of Isaac's wife Rebekah.
- The phrase "city of Nahor" could mean "the city named Nahor" or "the city where Nahor had lived" or "Nahor's city."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), Rebekah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:24-27
- Genesis 31:53
- Joshua 24:2
- Luke 3:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5152, G34930

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:26](#))

name

Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:19; 4:9; 4:38; 4:41; 5:24; 6:17; 6:65; 7:16; 7:23; 8:38; 9:44; 11:20; 11:24; 12:30; 12:31; 13:6; 14:4; 14:11; 14:17; 16:2; 16:8; 16:10; 16:29; 16:41; 17:8; 17:21; 17:24; 21:19; 22:9; 23:13; 23:24](#))

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), [Bilhah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:2](#); [6:62](#); [6:76](#); [7:13](#); [12:34](#); [12:40](#); [27:19](#))

Nathan

Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived while David was king over Israel.

- God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
- Nathan rebuked David in spite of the fact that David was the king.
- David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [faithful](#), [prophet](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:29
- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** God sent the prophet **Nathan** to David with this message, "Because you are a man of war, you will not build this Temple for me."
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet **Nathan** to tell David how evil his sin was.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5416, G34810

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 2:36](#); [3:5](#); [11:38](#); [14:4](#); [17:1](#); [17:2](#); [17:3](#); [17:15](#); [29:29](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:17](#); [16:20](#); [16:24](#); [16:31](#); [16:35](#); [17:21](#); [18:11](#))

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile."
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, [Babylon](#), [Hananiah](#), [Mishael](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 1:2
- Daniel 4:4
- Ezekiel 26:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **20:6** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **20:8** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **20:9** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:15](#))

new moon

Definition:

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, [earth](#), festival, horn, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:5
- 2 Kings 4:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 1:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, G33760, G35610

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 27:4](#); [27:14](#); [27:15](#))

Noah

Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: descendant, ark)

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:30-31
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:8
- Genesis 8:1
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **3:4** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **3:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, "You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth." So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5146, G35750

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:4](#))

Obadiah

Facts:

Obadiah was an Old Testament prophet who prophesied against the people of Edom, who were the descendants of Esau. There were also many other men named Obadiah in the Old Testament.

- The book of Obadiah is the shortest book in the Old Testament and tells a prophecy that Obadiah received through a vision from God.
- It is not clear when Obadiah lived and prophesied. It may have been during the periods that Jehoram, Ahaziah, Joash, and Athaliah, reigned in Judah. The prophets Daniel, Ezekiel, and Jeremiah would also have been prophesying during part of this time.
- Obadiah may also have lived at a later time period, during the reign of King Zedekiah and the Babylonian captivity.
- Other men named Obadiah included a descendant of Saul, a Gadite who became one of David's men, a palace administrator for King Ahab, an official of King Jehoshaphat, a man who helped with repairs to the temple during the time of King Josiah, and a Levite who was also a gatekeeper during the time of Nehemiah.
- It could be that the writer of the book of Obadiah was one of these men.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahab, [Babylon](#), [David](#), [Edom](#), [Esau](#), [Ezekiel](#), Daniel, Gad, [Jehoshaphat](#), [Josiah](#), [Levite](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [Zedekiah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:21
- 1 Chronicles 8:38-40
- Ezra 8:8-11
- Obadiah 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5662

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 3:21](#); [7:3](#); [8:38](#); [9:16](#); [9:44](#); [12:9](#); [27:19](#))

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:40](#))

Omri

Facts:

Omri was an army commander who became the sixth king of Israel.

- King Omri reigned for twelve years in the city of Tirzah.
- Like all the kings of Israel before him, Omri was a very evil king who led the people of Israel into more idol worship.
- Omri was also the father of King Ahab.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahab, [Israel](#), [Jeroboam](#), Tirzah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6018

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 7:8](#); [9:4](#); [27:18](#))

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), ordain, [statute](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:32](#); [15:13](#); [22:13](#); [23:31](#); [24:19](#))

oversee, overseer, keeper

Definition:

The term "overseer" refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people. In the Bible, often the term "keeper" means "overseer."

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his "flock."
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms "overseers," "elders," and "shepherds/pastors" are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be "supervisor" or "caretaker" or "manager."
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God's people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "spiritual supervisor" or "someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers" or "person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church."

(See also: church, [elder](#), pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 3:2
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G19830, G19840, G19850

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:21](#); [23:4](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:18](#))

people, people group

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, [nation](#), tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 5:25; 10:9; 11:2; 13:4; 14:2; 16:2; 16:8; 16:20; 16:24; 16:26; 16:28; 16:36; 16:43; 17:6; 17:7; 17:9; 17:10; 17:21; 17:22; 18:14; 19:7; 19:11; 19:13; 20:3; 21:2; 21:3; 21:5; 21:17; 21:22; 22:18; 23:25; 28:2; 28:21; 29:9; 29:14; 29:17; 29:18)

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means "people of the sea."

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, [David](#), Ekron, Gath, Gaza, [Goliath](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:4
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 56:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:12](#); [10:1](#); [10:2](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [10:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:14](#); [11:15](#); [11:16](#); [11:18](#); [12:19](#); [14:8](#); [14:10](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [14:16](#); [18:1](#); [20:4](#); [20:5](#))

Phinehas

Facts:

Phineas was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One of Aaron's grandsons was a priest named Phinehas, who strongly opposed the worship of false gods in Israel.
- Phineas saved the Israelites from a plague that Yahweh had sent to punish them for marrying Midianite women and worshiping their false gods.
- On several occasions Phinehas went with the Israelite army to destroy the Midianites.
- The other Phinehas mentioned in the Old Testament was one of the evil sons of Eli the priest during the time of the prophet Samuel.
- Phinehas and his brother Hophni were both killed when the Philistines attacked Israel and stole the Ark of the Covenant.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [Jordan River](#), [Midian](#), [Philistines](#), [Samuel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:4
- Ezra 8:2
- Joshua 22:13-14
- Numbers 25:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6372

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:4](#); [6:50](#); [9:20](#))

power, powerful, powerfully

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [strength](#), Holy Spirit, Jesus, [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Colossians 1:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 1:25
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 4:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 3:21
- Psalm 80:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G14110, G14150, G17540, G17560, G18490, G18500, G21590, G24780, G24790, G29040, G31680

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:11](#); [16:28](#))

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:25](#); [16:36](#); [23:5](#); [25:3](#); [29:13](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:1](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [declare](#), good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G12290, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:15](#); [19:17](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:10](#); [9:2](#); [9:10](#); [9:30](#); [Notes](#); [13:2](#); [Notes](#); [15:11](#); [15:14](#); [15:24](#); [Notes](#); [16:6](#); [16:39](#); [18:16](#); [Notes](#); [23:2](#); [Notes](#); [24:2](#); [24:6](#); [24:31](#); [27:5](#); [28:13](#); [28:21](#); [29:22](#))

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), [power](#), ruler, Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 7:40](#); [12:21](#); [12:28](#); [12:34](#); [13:1](#); [15:22](#); [15:25](#); [19:3](#); [19:16](#); [19:18](#); [21:2](#); [22:17](#); [23:2](#); [24:5](#); [24:6](#); [25:1](#); [26:26](#); [27:1](#); [27:3](#); [27:5](#); [27:22](#); [27:31](#); [27:34](#); [28:1](#); [28:21](#); [29:6](#))

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”[⚡]
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:1](#); [25:1](#); [29:29](#))

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [good](#), fruit, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:18](#); [5:24](#); [7:2](#); [7:5](#); [7:7](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [7:40](#); [8:40](#); [9:13](#); [10:12](#); [11:22](#); [12:21](#); [12:25](#); [12:28](#); [12:30](#); [22:11](#); [22:13](#); [26:6](#); [26:7](#); [26:8](#); [26:9](#); [26:30](#); [26:31](#); [26:32](#); [28:1](#); [29:23](#))

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [bow](#), [fear](#), [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:29](#); [21:21](#); [29:20](#))

Rabbah

Definition:

Rabbah was the most important city of the Ammonite people.

- In battles against the Ammonites, the Israelites often attacked Rabbah.
- Israel's King David captured Rabbah as one of his last conquests.
- The modern-day city Amman Jordan is now where Rabbah used to be located.

(See also: [Ammon](#), [David](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:1
- 2 Samuel 12:26
- Deuteronomy 3:11
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Jeremiah 49:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7237

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 20:1](#))

raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, [appoint](#), exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:11](#); [11:20](#))

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:21](#); [21:24](#))

Rehoboam

Facts:

Rehoboam was one of the sons of King Solomon, and he became the king of the nation of Israel after Solomon died.

- At the beginning of his reign, Rehoboam was severe with his people, so ten of the tribes of Israel rebelled against him and formed the “kingdom of Israel” in the north.
- Rehoboam continued as king of the southern kingdom of Judah, which consisted of the remaining two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Rehoboam was a wicked king who did not obey Yahweh, but worshiped false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: kingdom of Israel, Judah, [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10
- 1 Kings 11:41-43
- 1 Kings 14:21
- Matthew 1:7

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:5** After Solomon died, his son, **Rehoboam**, became king. **Rehoboam** was a foolish man.
- **18:6** **Rehoboam** answered foolishly and told them, “You thought my father Solomon made you work hard, but I will make you work harder than he did, and I will punish you more harshly than he did.”
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against **Rehoboam**. Only two tribes remained faithful to him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7346, G44970

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 3:10](#))

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:44](#); [1:45](#); [1:46](#); [1:47](#); [1:48](#); [1:49](#); [1:50](#); [3:4](#); [11:10](#); [12:31](#); [12:38](#); [17:14](#); [18:14](#); [19:1](#); [23:1](#); [28:4](#); [29:22](#); [29:28](#))

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” also implies that there were other people who did not remain or were not left over.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 9:12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Genesis 45:7
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 4:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G26400, G30050, G30620

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:43](#); [12:38](#))

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- Something that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 22:9](#); [22:18](#); [23:25](#); [28:2](#))

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:12](#))

return, turn back

Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 19:5](#); [20:3](#); [21:20](#); [21:27](#))

Rimmon

Facts:

Rimmon was the name of a man and of several places mentioned in the Bible. It was also the name of a false god.

- A man named Rimmon was a Benjamite from the city of Beeroth in Zebulun. This man's sons murdered Ishbosheth, the crippled son of Jonathan.
- Rimmon was a town in the southern part of Judah, in the region occupied by the tribe of Benjamin.
- The "rock of Rimmon" was a place of safety where the Benjamites went to escape from being killed in a battle.
- Rimmon Perez was an unknown location in the Judean wilderness.
- The Syrian commander Naaman spoke of the temple of the false god Rimmon, where the king of Syria worshiped.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Benjamin](#), [Judea](#), [Naaman](#), [Syria](#), [Zebulun](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 4:5-7
- Judges 20:45-46
- Judges 21:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7417

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:32](#); [6:77](#))

robe, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0145, H0155, H0899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G17460, G20670, G24400, G47490, G40160, G55110

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:27](#))

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 2:6
- Leviticus 19:3
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 2:27
- Matthew 12:2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:5** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:3** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G43150, G45210

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:32; 23:31](#))

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: ash, [camel](#), goat, humble, [mourn](#), repent, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 1:8-10
- Jonah 3:5
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G45260

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 21:16](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), false god, fellowship offering, [freewill offering](#) peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:23](#); [23:29](#); [29:21](#))

Samuel

Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Hannah, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 1:19
- 1 Samuel 9:24
- 1 Samuel 12:17
- Acts 3:24
- Acts 13:20
- Hebrews 11:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8050, G45450

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 6:28](#); [6:33](#); [7:2](#); [9:22](#); [11:3](#); [26:28](#); [29:29](#))

sanctuary

Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: [holy](#), Holy Spirit, [holy](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [tax](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Amos 7:13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:3
- Hebrews 8:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:1
- Psalms 78:69

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4720, H6944, G00400

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 22:19](#); [28:10](#))

Saul (OT)

Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 9:1
- 2 Samuel 1:1-2
- Acts 13:22
- Psalm 18:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:1 Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **17:4 Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**.
- **17:5** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G45490

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:48; 1:49; 4:24; 5:10; 6:24; 8:33; 9:39; 10:2; 10:3; 10:4; 10:5; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:11; 10:12; 10:13; 11:2; 12:1; 12:2; 12:19; 12:23; 12:29; 13:3; 15:29; 26:28](#))

scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 4:5
- Luke 7:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 1:22
- Mark 2:16
- Matthew 5:19-20
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G11220

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:55](#); [18:16](#); [24:6](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: children, descendant)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:13](#); [17:11](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:39](#); [10:13](#); [10:14](#); [13:3](#); [14:8](#); [15:13](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [21:3](#); [21:30](#); [22:19](#); [26:31](#); [28:9](#))

servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Definition:

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), [works](#), [obey](#), [house](#), [lord](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560
- (Enslave) H3533, G26150

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 2:34; 2:35; 6:32; 6:49; 12:28; 16:4; 16:13; 17:4; 17:7; 17:17; 17:18; 17:19; 17:23; 17:24; 17:25; 17:26; 17:27; 18:2; 18:6; 18:7; 18:13; 19:2; 19:3; 19:4; 19:19; 20:8; 21:3; 21:8; 22:5; 23:24; 23:26; 23:28; 23:32; 24:19; 25:1; 25:6; 26:8; 27:26; 29:1; 29:7)

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 3:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Philippians 1:1-2
- Romans 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G00370, G00380, G00400, G08730

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:14](#); [23:13](#); [25:1](#))

Seth

Facts:

In the book of Genesis, Seth was the third son of Adam and Eve.

- Eve said that Seth was given to her in place of her son Abel, who was murdered by his brother Cain.
- Noah was one of Seth's descendants, so everyone who has lived since the time of the Flood is also a descendant of Seth.
- Seth and his family were the first people to "call on the name of the Lord."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abel, Cain, [call](#), descendant, [ancestor](#), flood, [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:1
- Luke 3:36-38
- Numbers 24:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8352, G45890

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 1:1](#))

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, [Isaiah](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 19:5](#))

Shem

Facts:

Shem was one of Noah's three sons, all of whom went with him into the ark during the worldwide flood described in the book of Genesis.

- Shem was the ancestor of Abraham and his descendants.
- The descendants of Shem were known as "Semites"; they spoke "Semitic" languages such as Hebrew and Arabic.
- The Bible indicates that Shem lived nearly 600 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), Arabia, ark, flood, [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:10
- Genesis 7:13-14
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 10:31
- Genesis 11:10
- Luke 3:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8035, G45900

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:4](#); [1:17](#); [1:24](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 18:10](#); [18:11](#); [19:6](#); [21:22](#); [21:24](#); [22:14](#); [28:14](#); [28:15](#); [28:16](#); [28:17](#); [29:2](#); [29:3](#); [29:4](#); [29:5](#); [29:7](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#); [21:8](#); [21:17](#))

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bathsheba, [David](#), [Israel](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 1:7-8
- Matthew 6:29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:3** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:4** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G46720

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:5](#); [3:10](#); [6:10](#); [6:32](#); [14:4](#); [18:8](#); [22:5](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:9](#); [22:17](#); [23:1](#); [28:5](#); [28:6](#); [28:9](#); [28:11](#); [28:20](#); [29:1](#); [29:19](#); [29:22](#); [29:23](#); [29:24](#); [29:25](#); [29:28](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: descendant, [ancestor](#), Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:17; 1:19; 1:23; 1:28; 1:31; 1:32; 1:33; 1:34; 1:35; 1:36; 1:37; 1:38; 1:39; 1:40; 1:41; 1:42; 1:43; 1:44; 1:46; 1:49; 2:1; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:10; 2:16; 2:18; 2:21; 2:23; 2:25; 2:27; 2:28; 2:30; 2:31; 2:32; 2:33; 2:34; 2:42; 2:43; 2:45; 2:47; 2:50; 2:52; 2:54; 3:1; 3:2; 3:9; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:16; 3:17; 3:19; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 3:24; 4:1; 4:2; 4:4; 4:6; 4:7; 4:8; 4:13; 4:15; 4:16; 4:17; 4:18; 4:19; 4:20; 4:21; 4:24; 4:25; 4:26; 4:27; 4:34; 4:35; 4:37; 4:42; 5:1; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:8; 5:11; 5:14; 5:15; 5:18; 5:23; 6:1; 6:2; 6:3; 6:16; 6:17; 6:18; 6:19; 6:20; 6:21; 6:22; 6:23; 6:24; 6:25; 6:26; 6:27; 6:28; 6:29; 6:30; 6:33; 6:34; 6:35; 6:36; 6:37; 6:38; 6:39; 6:40; 6:41; 6:42; 6:43; 6:44; 6:45; 6:46; 6:47; 6:49; 6:50; 6:51; 6:52; 6:53; 6:54; 6:56; 6:57; 6:61; 6:62; 6:63; 6:64; 6:65; 6:66; 6:70; 6:71; 6:77; 7:1; 7:2; 7:3; 7:4; 7:7; 7:8; 7:10; 7:11; 7:12; 7:13; 7:14; 7:16; 7:17; 7:19; 7:20; 7:21; 7:23; 7:25; 7:26; 7:27; 7:29; 7:30; 7:31; 7:33; 7:34; 7:35; 7:36; 7:38; 7:39; 7:40; 8:3; 8:6; 8:10; 8:12; 8:16; 8:18; 8:21; 8:25; 8:27; 8:30; 8:34; 8:35; 8:37; 8:38; 8:39; 8:40; 9:3; 9:4; 9:5; 9:6; 9:7; 9:8; 9:11; 9:12; 9:14; 9:15; 9:16; 9:18; 9:19; 9:20; 9:21; 9:23; 9:30; 9:32; 9:36; 9:40; 9:41; 9:43; 9:44; 10:2; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:12; 10:14; 11:6; 11:11; 11:12; 11:22; 11:24; 11:26; 11:28; 11:30; 11:31; 11:34; 11:35; 11:37; 11:38; 11:39; 11:41; 11:42; 11:43; 11:44; 11:45; 11:46; 12:1; 12:3; 12:7; 12:14; 12:16; 12:18; 12:24; 12:25; 12:26; 12:29; 12:30; 12:32; 14:3; 15:4; 15:5; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:15; 15:17; 16:13; 16:38; 16:42; 17:9; 17:11; 17:13; 18:10; 18:11; 18:12; 18:15; 18:16; 18:17; 19:1; 19:2; 19:3; 19:6; 19:7; 19:9; 19:11; 19:12; 19:15; 19:19; 20:1; 20:3; 20:5; 20:7; 21:20; 22:5; 22:6; 22:7; 22:9; 22:10; 22:11; 22:17; 23:1; 23:3; 23:6; 23:8; 23:9; 23:10; 23:11; 23:12; 23:13; 23:14; 23:15; 23:16; 23:17; 23:18; 23:19; 23:20; 23:21; 23:22; 23:23; 23:24; 23:27; 23:28; 23:32; 24:1; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:5; 24:6; 24:20; 24:21; 24:22; 24:23; 24:24; 24:25; 24:26; 24:27; 24:28; 24:29; 24:30; 24:31; 25:1; 25:2; 25:3; 25:4; 25:5; 25:9; 25:10; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 25:17; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:25; 25:26; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 26:1; 26:2; 26:4; 26:6; 26:7; 26:8; 26:9; 26:10; 26:11; 26:14; 26:15; 26:19; 26:21; 26:22; 26:24; 26:25; 26:28; 26:29; 26:30; 26:32; 27:1; 27:2; 27:3; 27:5; 27:6; 27:7; 27:9; 27:10; 27:14; 27:16; 27:17; 27:18; 27:19; 27:20; 27:21; 27:22; 27:24; 27:25; 27:26; 27:29; 27:32; 27:34; 28:1; 28:5; 28:6; 28:8; 28:9; 28:11; 28:20; 29:1; 29:19; 29:22; 29:24; 29:26; 29:28)

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person's spirit was closely related to the concept of a person's breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah." Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person's attitude or emotional state, such as "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives."
- Sometimes this term can be translated as "wind" when referring to the simple movement of air or "breath" when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:26](#); [9:24](#); [12:18](#); [28:12](#))

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:12](#); [22:13](#); [28:7](#))

storehouse

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), [dedicate](#), [famine](#), [gold](#), [grain](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Psalms 33:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0214, H0618, H0624, H4035, H4200, H4543, G05960

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 26:20](#); [26:22](#); [26:26](#); [27:25](#); [27:27](#); [27:28](#); [28:12](#); [29:8](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 19:12](#); [19:13](#); [21:4](#); [22:13](#); [26:8](#); [28:7](#); [28:10](#); [28:20](#); [29:2](#); [29:12](#); [29:14](#))

stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel

Definition:

The terms "stronghold" and "fortress" both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. A "citadel" is a fortress inside a city. The term "fortified" describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- "Stronghold" or "fortress" could be translated as "securely strong place" or "strongly protected place."
- The term "fortified city" could be translated as "securely protected city" or "strongly built city."
- Another figurative meaning for the term "stronghold" referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as "false strongholds."
- This term should be translated differently from "refuge," which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: false god, false god, refuge, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:4
- 2 Kings 8:10-12
- 2 Samuel 5:8-10
- Acts 21:35
- Habakkuk 1:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0490, H0553, H0759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H6877, H7682, G37940, G39250

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 29:1](#); [29:19](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 10:4](#); [21:5](#); [21:12](#); [21:27](#); [21:30](#))

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), altar of incense, [ark of the covenant](#), [temple](#), tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 1:2-5
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 7:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G46330, G46340, G46360, G46380

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:32](#); [6:48](#); [16:39](#); [17:5](#); [21:29](#); [23:26](#))

Tarshish

Facts:

In biblical times, Tarshish was a port city situated on the Mediterranean Sea. The specific location of the city is unknown. Also, the Old Testament mentions two different men named Tarshish.

- The city of Tarshish was a prosperous port city with ships that carried products to buy, sell, or trade. The Bible states that King Solomon kept a fleet of ships stationed at Tarshish.
- The Old Testament prophet Jonah boarded a ship bound for the city of Tarshish instead of obeying God's command to go preach to Nineveh.
- One of Japheth's grandsons was named Tarshish.
- Tarshish was also the name of one of the wise men of King Ahashuerus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Esther, [Japheth](#), Jonah, Nineveh, Phoenicia, [wise men](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:2-5
- Isaiah 2:16
- Jeremiah 10:9
- Jonah 1:3
- Psalms 48:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8659

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:7; 7:10](#))

teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: instruct, teacher, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- John 7:14
- Luke 4:31
- Matthew 4:23
- Psalms 32:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G13170, G13210, G13220, G20850, G26050, G27270, G31000, G23120, G25670, G38110, G49940

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 25:7](#))

temple, house, house of God

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Terah

Facts:

Terah was a descendant of Noah's son Shem. He was the father of Abram, Nahor and Haran.

- Terah left his home in Ur in order to go to the land of Canaan with his son Abram, his nephew Lot, and Abram's wife Sarai.
- On the way to Canaan, Terah and his family lived for years in the city of Haran in Mesopotamia. Terah died in Haran at the age of 205.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), [Haran](#), Lot, Mesopotamia, [Nahor](#), Sarah, [Shem](#), [Ur](#))

Bible References:

Genesis 11:31-32

- 1 Chronicles 1:24-27
- Luke 3:33-35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8646, G22910

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 1:26](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- In some places in the Old Testament, “Testimony” refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God’s law more broadly.
- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- Ways to translate “Testimony” could include, “the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands” or “God’s law” or “God’s commands” or “the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:28](#))

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, winnow)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:7
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 2:35
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Ruth 3:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G02480

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 13:9](#); [21:15](#); [21:21](#); [21:22](#))

threshold, doorway

Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), tent)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:17-19
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Isaiah 6:4
- Proverbs 17:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4670, H5592

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:19](#))

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, [power](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:12](#); [22:10](#); [28:5](#); [29:23](#))

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:33](#); [6:39](#); [27:1](#); [28:1](#))

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:15](#); [21:8](#); [29:30](#))

tremble, stagger, shake

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:9](#))

trespass

Definition:

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [iniquity](#), [sin](#), [transgress](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 2:13
- Ephesians 2:1
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 5:17
- Romans 5:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0816, H0817, H0819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G02640, G39000

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 9:1](#); [10:13](#))

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 9:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 6:2
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G45360, G45370, G45380

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:24](#); [15:28](#); [16:6](#))

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, [faithful](#), true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#))

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), the sea, Phoenicia, Sidon)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 3:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G51830, G51840

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:1](#))

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, [know](#), wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:22](#); [22:12](#); [25:8](#); [27:32](#); [28:9](#))

Ur

Facts:

Ur was an important city along the Euphrates River in the ancient region of Chaldea, which was part of Mesopotamia. This region was located in what is now the modern-day country of Iraq.

- Abraham was from the city of Ur and it was from there that God called him to leave to go to the land of Canaan.
- Haran, the brother of Abraham and father of Lot, died in Ur. This was probably a factor that influenced Lot to leave Ur with Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), Chaldea, Euphrates River, [Haran](#), Lot, Mesopotamia)

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0218

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 11:35](#))

Uriah

Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

- Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
- David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
- To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
- Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), Bathsheba, [David](#), [Hittite](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:5
- 2 Samuel 11:3
- 2 Samuel 11:26-27
- Nehemiah 3:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:12** Bathsheba's husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of David's best soldiers. David called **Uriah** back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But **Uriah** refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent **Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed.
- **17:13** After **Uriah** was killed, David married Bathsheba.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0223, G37740

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 11:41](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:4](#); [21:2](#); [21:10](#))

watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:19](#); [10:13](#); [12:29](#); [22:13](#); [26:16](#); [28:8](#); [29:18](#))

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), chaff, grain, [seed](#), [thresh](#), winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G46210

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:20](#))

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:40](#); [27:27](#))

wise men, advisor

Definition:

The term “wise men” simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term “wise men” often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king’s royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

- Sometimes the term “wise men” is explained in the text as “prudent men” or “men with understanding.” This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The “wise men” who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes “wise men” also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called “magi,” which is often translated as “wise men,” since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “wise men” could be translated using the term “wise” or with a phrase such as “gifted men” or “educated men” or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When the term “wise men” simply means people who are wise, the word “wise” should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Babylon](#), Daniel, divination, magic, [Nebuchadnezzar](#), ruler, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 2:1-2
- Daniel 2:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G46800

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 22:15](#))

work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G20410

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#); [11:22](#))

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5

- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:5** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 2:3; 6:15; 6:31; 6:32; 9:19; 9:20; 9:23; 10:13; 10:14; 11:2; 11:3; 11:9; 11:10; 11:14; 11:18; 12:23; 13:2; 13:6; 13:10; 13:11; 13:14; 14:2; 14:10; 14:17; 15:2; 15:3; 15:12; 15:13; 15:14; 15:15; 15:25; 15:26; 15:28; 15:29; 16:2; 16:4; 16:7; 16:8; 16:10; 16:11; 16:14; 16:23; 16:25; 16:26; 16:28; 16:29; 16:31; 16:33; 16:34; 16:36; 16:37; 16:39; 16:40; 16:41; 17:1; 17:4; 17:7; 17:10; 17:16; 17:17; 17:19; 17:20; 17:22; 17:23; 17:24; 17:26; 17:27; 18:6; 18:11; 18:13; 19:13; 21:3; 21:9; 21:10; 21:11; 21:12; 21:13; 21:14; 21:15; 21:16; 21:17; 21:18; 21:19; 21:22; 21:24; 21:26; 21:27; 21:28; 21:29; 21:30; 22:1; 22:5; 22:6; 22:7; 22:8; 22:11; 22:12; 22:13; 22:14; 22:16; 22:18; 22:19; 23:4; 23:5; 23:13; 23:24; 23:25; 23:28; 23:30; 23:31; 23:32; 24:19; 25:3; 25:6; 25:7; 26:12; 26:22; 26:27; 26:30; 27:23; 28:2; 28:4; 28:5; 28:8; 28:9; 28:10; 28:12; 28:13; 28:18; 28:19; 28:20; 29:1; 29:5; 29:8; 29:9; 29:10; 29:11; 29:16; 29:18; 29:20; 29:21; 29:22; 29:23; 29:25)

Zadok

Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [David](#), [Jotham](#), [Nehemiah](#), [reign](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 1 Kings 1:26-27
- 2 Samuel 15:24-26
- Matthew 1:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6659, G45240

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:8](#); [6:12](#); [6:53](#); [9:11](#); [12:28](#); [15:11](#); [16:39](#); [18:16](#); [24:3](#); [24:6](#); [24:31](#); [27:17](#); [29:22](#))

Zechariah (OT)

Facts:

Zechariah was a prophet who prophesied during the reign of King Darius I of Persia. The Old Testament book of Zechariah contains his prophecies, which urged the returning exiles to rebuild the temple.

- The prophet Zechariah lived during the same time period as Ezra, Nehemiah, Zerubbabel and Haggai. He was also mentioned by Jesus as the last of the prophets who were murdered during Old Testament times.
- Another man named Zechariah was a gatekeeper at the tent of meeting during the time of David.
- One of King Jehoshaphat's sons who was named Zechariah was murdered by his brother Jehoram.
- Zechariah was the name of a priest who was stoned by the people of Israel when he rebuked them for their idol worship.
- King Zechariah was the son of Jeroboam and he reigned over Israel for only six months before being murdered.

(Translation Suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Darius, Ezra, [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jeroboam](#), Nehemiah, [Zerubbabel](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 5:1-2
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Zechariah 1:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2148

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:7](#); [9:21](#); [9:37](#); [15:18](#); [15:20](#); [15:24](#); [16:5](#); [24:25](#); [26:2](#); [26:11](#); [26:14](#); [27:21](#))

Zedekiah

Facts:

Zedekiah, son of Josiah, was the last king of Judah (597-587 B.C.). There are also several other men named Zedekiah in the Old Testament.

- King Nebuchadnezzar made Zedekiah king of Judah after capturing King Jehoiachin and taking him away to Babylon. Zedekiah later rebelled and as a result Nebuchadnezzar captured him and destroyed all of Jerusalem.
- Zedekiah, son of Kenaanah, was a false prophet during the time of King Ahab of Israel.
- A man named Zedekiah was one of those who signed an agreement to the Lord during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahab, [Babylon](#), [Ezekiel](#), kingdom of Israel, Jehoiachin, [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), Judah, [Nebuchadnezzar](#), Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:15-16
- Jeremiah 37:1-2
- Jeremiah 39:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6667

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:15](#); [3:16](#))

Zephaniah

Facts:

Zephaniah, son of Cushi, was a prophet who lived in Jerusalem and prophesied during the reign of King Josiah. He lived during the same time period as Jeremiah.

- He rebuked the people of Judah for worshipping false gods. His prophecies are written in the book of Zephaniah in the Old Testament.
- There were several other men in the Old Testament named Zephaniah, most of whom were priests.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:18
- Jeremiah 52:24-25
- Zechariah 6:9-11
- Zephaniah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6846

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 6:36](#))

Zerubbabel

Facts:

Zerubbabel was the name of two Israelite men in the Old Testament.

- One of these was a descendant of Jehoiakim and Zedekiah.
- A different Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, was the head of the tribe of Judah during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah, when Cyrus king of Persia released the Israelites from their captivity in Babylon.
- Zerubbabel and the high priest Joshua were among those who helped rebuild the temple and altar of God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [captive](#), Cyrus, Ezra, high priest, [Jehoiakim](#), [Joshua](#), [Judah](#), Nehemiah, Persia, [Zedekiah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:19-21
- Ezra 2:1-2
- Ezra 3:8-9
- Luke 3:27-29
- Matthew 1:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2216, H2217, G22160

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 3:19](#))

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, [Jebusites](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:5
- Amos 1:2
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 76:1-3
- Romans 11:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 11:5](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Scott Bayer
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Dan Dennison
Jamie Duguid
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary
Leonard Smith
Suzanna Smith
Tim Span
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Maria Tijerina
David Trombold, M. Div.
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Kailey Gregory
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College
Leonard Smith
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
David Trombold, M. Div.
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)

Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)

Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)

Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)